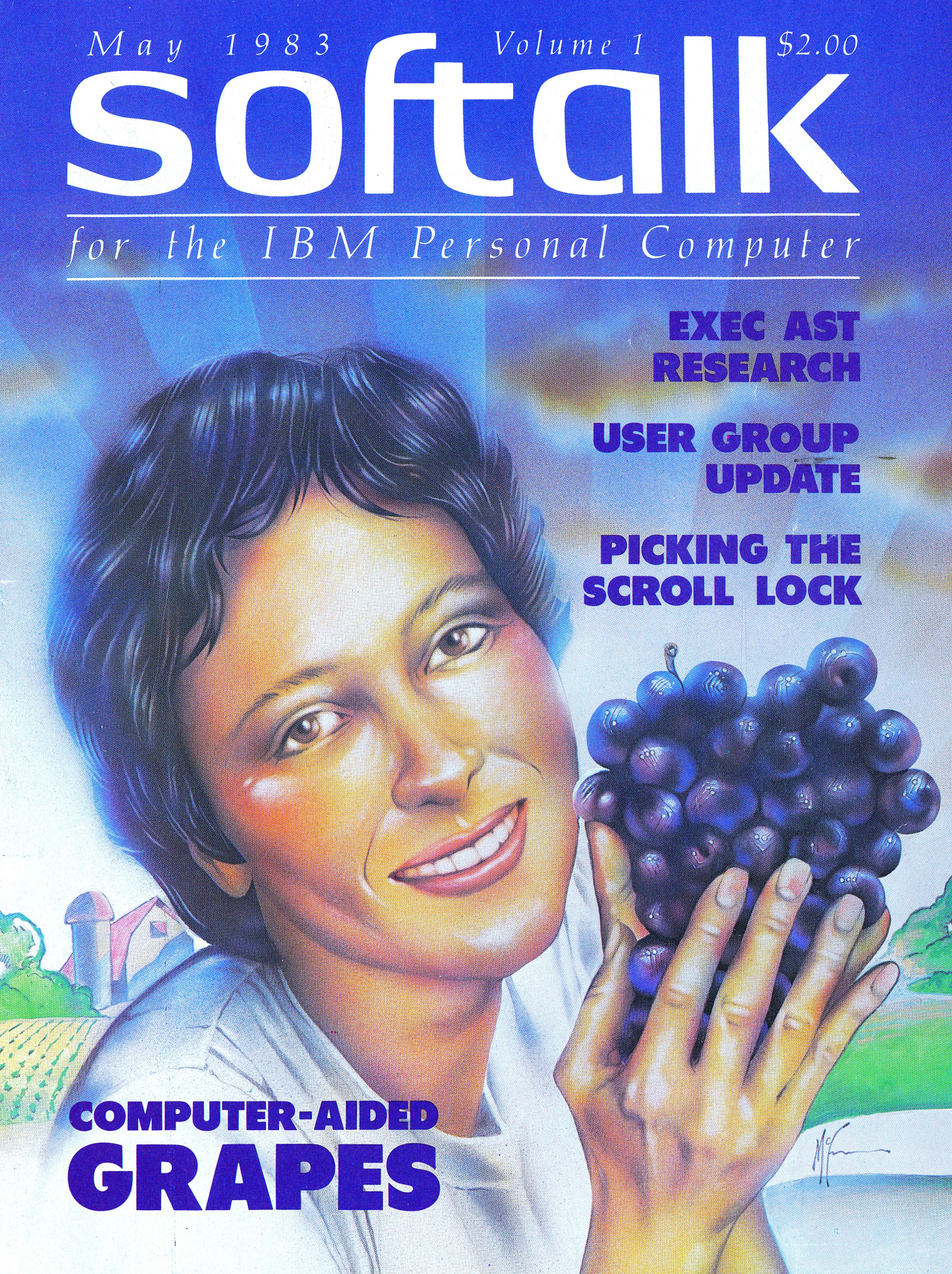
May 1983 Volume 1 $2.00

softalk

for the IBM Personal Computer



EXEC AST RESEARCH

USER GROUP UPDATE

PICKING THE SCROLL LOCK

COMPUTER-AIDED GRAPES

MONITORIASIS

DIAGNOSIS: ACUTE MONITORIASIS — A RECENTLY ISOLATED DISEASE UNIQUE TO OWNERS OF INFERIOR QUALITY MONITORS.

SYMPTOMS: Headaches, blurred vision, incessant twitching and squinting. CAUSE: Continued usage of monitors with poor resolution. DOSAGE: Take one Princeton Graphic Monitor, mix well with your IBM Personal Computer for crisp, well-defined characters shown in 16 brilliant colors adding clarity and life to every presentation. ACTIVE INGREDIENTS: NEC .31mm dot pitch that gives up to 690 dots horizontal resolution for sharply defining each color character and eliminating bleed-through; non-glare black matrix; 80 characters x 25 lines for more information displayed at one time. CAUTION: Due to consistently clearer visual displays, extended usage of this product may become habit forming. USE ACCORDING TO DIRECTIONS — The Princeton Graphic Monitor (PGS HX-12) — Truly a sight for sore eyes.

For order information, contact:

Computer-Mate, Inc.

1006 Hampshire Lane, Richardson, Texas 75080
Dallas (214) 669-9370 · Texas Residents (800) 442-4006
Out of State (800) 527-3643 · Dealer inquiries welcome.

Softalk

for the IBM Personal Computer

Features

Exec AST Research
How three enterprising young men gambled on IBM and won.
David Hunter 22

Tapping the Scroll-Lock Key
Ever wonder what that thing is for? Here's a program that releases the hidden power at hex 417.
John Socha 38

The Grapes of Nass
After fourteen years at IBM, Mel Nass has swapped the computer lab for the vineyard; but he's still out standing in his field.
Michael Ferris 66

User Group Update
A new roundup of pc user groups: where, when, and why.
JoAnn Levy 86

Personality:
The author of Spinnaker Software's *Snooper Troops* programs leads his young students into an exciting future.
Roe R. Adams III 94

Pascal Extended (Part II)
More on IBM Pascal's advanced features: super arrays and address pointers.
Dara Pearlman 111

The Eighth West Coast Computer Faire
Softalk goes to the zoo 128

Departments

Contest 2
Crosstalk 4
Contest Winners 11
Questions and Answers, by Nancy Andrews 14
System Notebook, by Alan Boyd 17
Pascal from Begin to End, by Bruce Webster and Deirdre Wendt 29
Beginners' Corner, by Craig Stinson 34
Marketalk News 51
The Right To Assemble, by Ray Duncan 57
The Profit Plot, by Jack Grushcow 62
The Basic Solution, by Joe Juhasz 75
Boards and Buses, by Steve Schmitt 81
Tradetalk 98
Marketalk Reviews 101
Newspeak 120
Bestsellers 131

In Next Month's Softalk

Exec ComputerLand . . . more Pascal extensions . . . Military contingency planning on the pc . . . How Basic stores floating-point numbers . . . and more.

Index of Advertisers

Advanced Business Software 21
Advanced PC Systems 123
Amdek Corp. 73
Artificial Intelligence Research Group 69
Aspen Software 90
AST Research ..... Cover 4
Banbury Books 107
Beaman Porter 78
Boise Computer 18
Bourbaki Inc. 9
BPS Inc. 8
Cameo Electronics 27
Cdex Corporation 24
Compu-haus 17
Computer Case Company 29
Computer-Mate ..... Cover 2
Computer Related Services 106
Continental Software 15
Creative Computer Products 92
Cypher 79
Datasmith 118
Davidson & Associates 11
Designer Software 84
Digisoft Computers 70
Digital Engineering Group 65
DP Computer Services 124
Ensign Software 42
Execuware 103
Fiberbilt 20
Financial Software 105
Financier 48
FriendlySoft ..... Cover 3
Funk Software 53
Gore Enterprises 126
Great Lakes Industries 26
Harper Business Systems 63, 81
Hercules Computer Technology 43
Hi Tech Computer Services 113
Howard W. Sams Company 6
IDE Associates 46–47
Indigo Data Systems 122
Individual Software 110
Innovative Software 68, 119
Intelligent Software 33
The Iron Interface Group 61
Joseki Computer Corporation 19
Laboratory Microsystems 108
Lifetree Software 37
Lighthouse Distributing 125
Lotus Development 40
MediSoft 49
Memory Technologies 93
Mentor 28
Microcomputer Business Ind. 115
Micro Investment Systems 102
Micro Lab 130
Micro Ware 91
Morgan Computing 50
MPI 85
Multi-Tech Systems 60
NF Systems Ltd. 10
Norell Data Systems 56
Northeast Expositions 58–59
Peter Norton 14
Opt-Tech Data Processing 71
Orchid Technology 45
Orion Software 104
PC Goodie 25
Pegasus Software 121
Persoft Inc. 36
Personal Computer Accessories 98
Plantronics/Frederick Electronics 116
Professional Software 12–13
Quadram Corporation 31
Quality Computer Services 82
RoseSoft 80
Satori Software 99
Scion Corporation 3
Screen Data Corporation 57
ScreenPlay 30
Sierra On-Line 109
SimSoft Inc. 114
SJB Distributors 127
Sof/Sys Inc. 55
Softalk 35
SoftCraft 75
SoftDesign 44
Softrend 117
Software Arts 100
The Software Link 32
SSR Corporation 131
StarLogic 72
STB Systems 5
StorWares 41
Symmetric Software 89
Systech 132
Systemics 88
Systems Management Associates 83
Tayco Business Forms 120
Techland Systems 96
Transtar 16
Triplanet 77
United Computer 7
Vertex Systems 112
VM Personal Computing 74
Westico 76

Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer

Editor	Craig Stinson
Art Director	Kevin McKeon
News Editor	Michael Ferris
Features Editor	JoAnn Levy
Newspeak Editor	David Hunter
Copy Editor	Cordell Cooper
Crosstalk Editor	Tommy Gear
Proofreaders	Harry McNeil, Betsy Barnes
Guest Reviewer	Bruce Churchill
Contributing Editors	
Assembly Language	Ray Duncan
Basic	Joe Juhasz
Financial Modeling	Jack Grushcow
Hardware	Steve Schmitt
Pascal	Bruce Webster, Deirdre Wendt
Questions and Answers	Nancy Andrews
Special Assignments	John Socha
System Software	Alan Boyd
Art Production	Don Robertson
Art Assistants	Michael G. Pender, Tim Durr, Lucas McClure

Softalk Publishing Inc.

Chairman	John Haller
Publisher	Al Tommervik
Editor-in-Chief	Margot Comstock Tommervik
Senior Art Director	Kurt Wahlner
Associate Publisher	Mary Sue Rennells
Director of Operations	Three Tyler
Accounting	Evelyn Burke
Accounting Assistants	Mary Milam, Carla Swanson
Book Sales	Lois Mencsik
Circulation	
Trial Subscriptions	Hal Schick, Deirdre Booth, Laurie O'Connell, Marsha Stewart, Laurie Berger
Paid Subscriptions	Pam Kelley, Connie Mastelotto, I. K. Frasca
Dealer Sales	Judy Weinstein, Dan Yoder
Back Issues	Ron Rennells
List Maintenance	Pat Adams, Cliff Martinez
Systems	Sam Pawley
Advertising Coordinator	Linda McGuire
West Coast Sales	Mike Antich Softalk 11160 McCormick Street Box 60 North Hollywood CA 91603 (213) 980-5074
East Coast Sales	Ian Ross Paul McGinnis Advertising Sales 898 Broadway Massapequa, NY 11758 (212) 490-1021
Midwest and Rocky Mountain Sales	Ted Rickard John Sienkiewicz John Bollweg Kevin Sullivan Market/Media Associates 435 Locust Road Wilmette, IL 60091 (312) 251-2541

Cover photo by Kevin McKeon.

Composition by Photographics, Hollywood, California. Printing by Volkmuth Printers, Saint Cloud, Minnesota.

IBM and Personal Computer are trademarks of International Business Machines, Armonk, New York.

Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer. Volume 1, Number 12. Copyright © 1983 by Softalk Publishing Inc. All rights reserved. ISSN: 0733-2173. *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer* is published monthly by Softalk Publishing Inc., 11160 McCormick Street, North Hollywood, CA 91601; telephone (213) 980-5074. Second-class postage pending at Saint Cloud, Minnesota, and additional mailing offices.

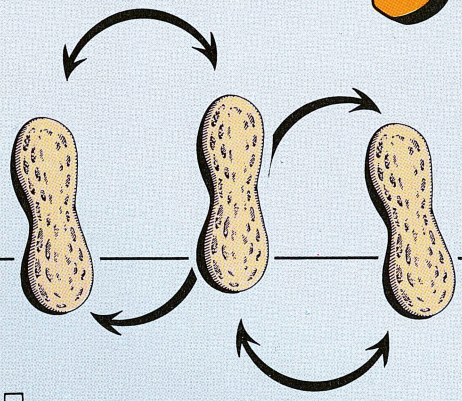
Postmaster: Send address changes to Softalk/IBM, Box 60, North Hollywood, CA 91603.

Subscriptions: Complimentary trial subscription to all owners of IBM Personal Computers in the USA. If you own a pc, but you aren't receiving *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer*, send your serial number and mailing address to Softalk/IBM Circulation, Box 60, North Hollywood, CA 91603. Non-pc owner subscriptions: $24 per year. Back issues (from June 1982): $3. *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer* is totally independent of International Business Machines.

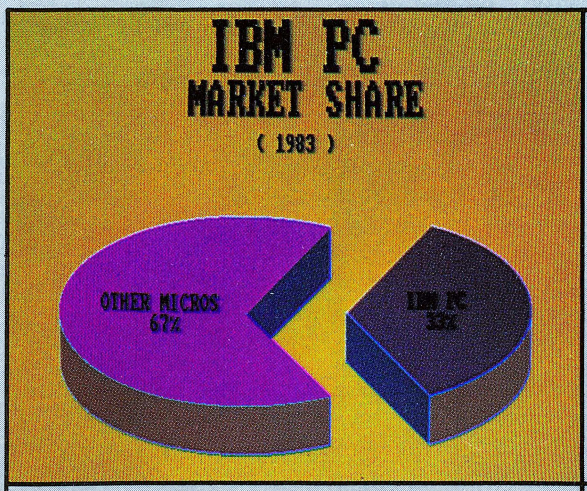
Problems? If you haven't received your *Softalk* by the fifteenth of the month, or if you have other problems with your subscription, Hal Schick can help out. Call (213) 980-5074.

Moving? Send new address and old to Softalk/IBM Circulation, Box 60, North Hollywood, CA 91603; telephone (213) 980-5074.

USER GROUP SCRAMBLE



Hex Boso _ □ _ □ _ _ _
Pam Socce _ _ _ □ _ _ □ _
Calder Crantomo _ □ _ _ □ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ □
Pat Lumik _ □ _ _ _ _ _ □
Ronnie Stilitout _ □ □ □ _ _ _ _ _ □ _ _ _ □ □
Carl Cegem _ _ _ _ _ _ □ _ _
Sol Luproc _ _ □ □ _ _ _ _ _
Wym Fuzroz □ _ _ _ _ □ _ □ _
Rupert Lamont Sexcop □ □ _ _ □ _ _ _ _ _ _ □ _ □ _ _ _ _
Lillian L Begg _ □ _ □ _ _ _ _ _ _ □ _
What people discussed:
_ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

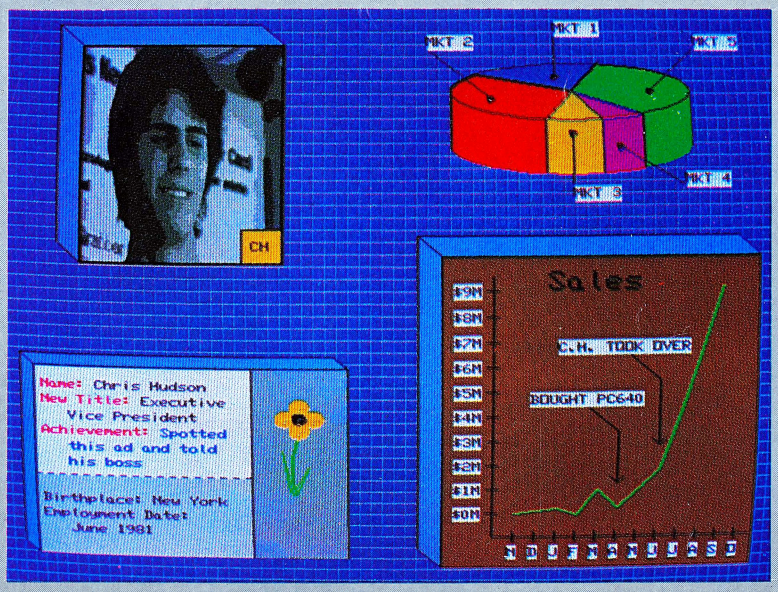


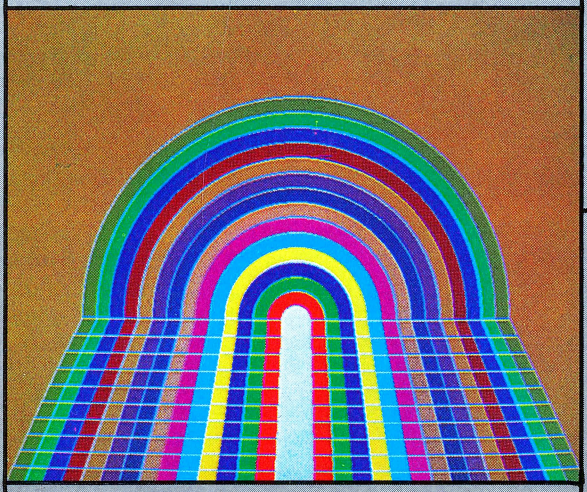
At Last!

Now there's a

640 x 480 Professional Color Graphics Board for the IBM PC...

Unretouched photos shot from 13" screen with Canon AE-1 SLR at f5.6, 1 sec. using Kodachrome 25 film





with

Dynamite Software!

Introducing

The PC640 Professional Color™ System

640 x 480, 16 out of 4096 color hardware, the HALO* software library of 58 graphics primitives, and the Cheetah* Fast Track end-user business graphics software system

THE GOODS

Package 1 $1595
The PC640 board, the HALO* software, User's Manual, video cable

Package 2 $2495
Package 1 + Cheetah* Fast Track (turns your PC into a full business graphics workstation)

(High-res color CRTs also available)

*HALO is a trademark of Media Cybernetics, Inc.; Cheetah is a registered trademark of CENTEC Corp.

from **SCION** Corporation
Your leader in color graphics
12310 Pinecrest Road
Reston, Virginia 22091
(703) 476-6100
TWX: 710-833-0684

crosstalk

On Guard

Space Guardian by Omric for the IBM pc is the worst game I have obtained for my computer. It is not even worth the disk it's stored on. I don't know why it got such a good review in the September issue.

The two big problems with the game are mentioned in the review. One is that the game has too much random damage from moving. This destroys any strategy in the game by making the game a total function of luck. I think the author has never heard of user-definable parameters.

The other major problem is that the initial setup is much too random. Once I ended up with few aliens, lots of star bases, and plenty of time; the next game was just the reverse. I have played many different versions of *Star Trek*, none of them with these problems; this version is the worst.

Except for these two major flaws, I think the game is pretty nice. If it were not for those two problems, the game would be one of the best.

David L. Brownfield, Iowa City, IA

The manufacturer responds:

The galaxy of *Space Guardian* is a dangerous place to play in. Nothing can be taken for granted. If a player insists on flying around the galaxy with the ship's shields down or at a very low level, he has to be willing to face the consequences. All the stars, for example, have their own unique gravitational fields; if you pass right next to one, pass between two of them, or perhaps try to navigate through one, the starship *Guardian* just might get damaged.

In *Space Guardian*, each game is unique. If a game setup appears too easy, try increasing the difficulty level (there are three) or ask for a new game. Just because a game looks easy doesn't mean a player is a master at efficiently completing the assigned mission. And the only way to get rated is to complete the mission successfully. *Space Guardian* was not programmed to be easy or hard; it was designed to present the player with ever-changing situations. If you want to play the same game every time, always win, fly through stars, never miss with a torpedo, and have the ship navigate for you, then do not play *Space Guardian*. If you are looking for a challenge and some fun, then *Space Guardian* is the game for you. Life, anyone?

Mark F. Stuart, Omric Corporation, Chaplin, CT

Reviewer's Disclaimer

I have written several reviews of software for *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer* over the past few months. In general, I have agreed with editorial changes introduced into my manuscripts by the magazine. They have usually clarified points, corrected my errors, and improved the readability of my articles.

Unfortunately, the modifications of my review of *ProKey* and *Keynote* in the April issue altered my manuscript to such an extent that I no longer feel that the review represents my work. In addition to stylistic changes, alterations of my emphasis and errors of fact were introduced. Issues that I had attempted to present clearly (such as merging operations and the importance of input fields in *ProKey)* ended up incompletely explained and improperly emphasized. Because of the usual deadline pressures, I did not see the revisions of the manuscript before it went to press.

For the record, I feel that both *ProKey* and *Keynote* are programs of major significance for the pc. While my personal preference is for *ProKey*, because of its ease of use and its ability to define keyboard input fields, either program is an excellent investment. I use them constantly, and feel crippled when inappropriately designed applications software prevents their use.

I want to emphasize that this review is an exception to the usual state of affairs in my dealings with *Softalk*. I am willing to stand behind any other review in these pages that carries my initials.

Burton L. Alperson, Los Angeles, CA

Not Easy to Him

EasyWriter czar Bill Baker is right when he says, "People have higher expectations for products with the IBM label." But he's wrong imagining that version 1.1 cleared up version 1.0's problems. Here's the latest blunder.

EasyWriter 1.1's manual instructs the user to format his disk before making his one permitted copy—leading any rational person to expect that his 320K drives and a "format b:/s" will produce a 320K double-sided copy disk. What you don't learn, until it's too late, is that *EasyWriter 1.1*'s backup.bat files *reformat* your disk with a "format b:/s/1"—unnecessarily forcing it to become a single-sided 160K disk. When you try to add your spelling checker to *EasyWriter 1.1*, there's not enough room.

Perhaps Bill Baker feels this is good business, that the continual shuttling of *EasyWriter 1.1* and your spelling checker surely will greatly shorten the life of your only permitted copy of *EasyWriter 1.1*. Baker is wrong. Not only will I never buy another copy-protected program, I'll not even buy another with the word "Easy" in its title.

One expects better of IBM, but when I asked my ComputerLand to exchange my faulty disk for others with this obvious blunder corrected, the store claimed that its dealer hot line said, "No way."

Charlie Blair, Townsend, TN

The manufacturer responds:

Since the release of *EasyWriter 1.0* by IBM I've been on a personal campaign to find all of the people who have any remaining difficulties with *EasyWriter*. I am happy to report that this is the first letter in three months now with *EasyWriter 1.1* concerns.

First let me say that our company policy is that the customer is always right and is our reason for being in business. We have committed a large portion of our company's resources to customer service and training, and we do not wish any angry dollars in our bank account.

If this reader believes that I don't know and appreciate the trouble copy protection puts on the user of our product, then he is mistaken. I do. *EasyWriter 1.1* is the only product in our family of twelve products that is copy-protected. I hope that this letter represents an isolated case.

Along with this letter are two copies (one backup) of *EasyWriter 1.1* with a copy of *EasySpeller* already on the disks. Please convey my apologies to this reader. To my knowledge, no one who contacts our company has ever gotten a "No way" response. My hope is that IBM's customer service is the same.

Bill Baker, president, Information Unlimited Software, Sausalito, CA

Numbers Game

I think I have found a bug in the Basic supplied with DOS 2. The print statement

PRINT 1,2,3,4,5,6,7

prints five numbers on a line. If print zones are fourteen characters wide, and the display is eighty characters wide, you would expect six numbers on a line. That is what the Basic supplied with DOS 1.1 printed. Furthermore, the corresponding Lprint statement in all versions of Basic prints six numbers on a line.

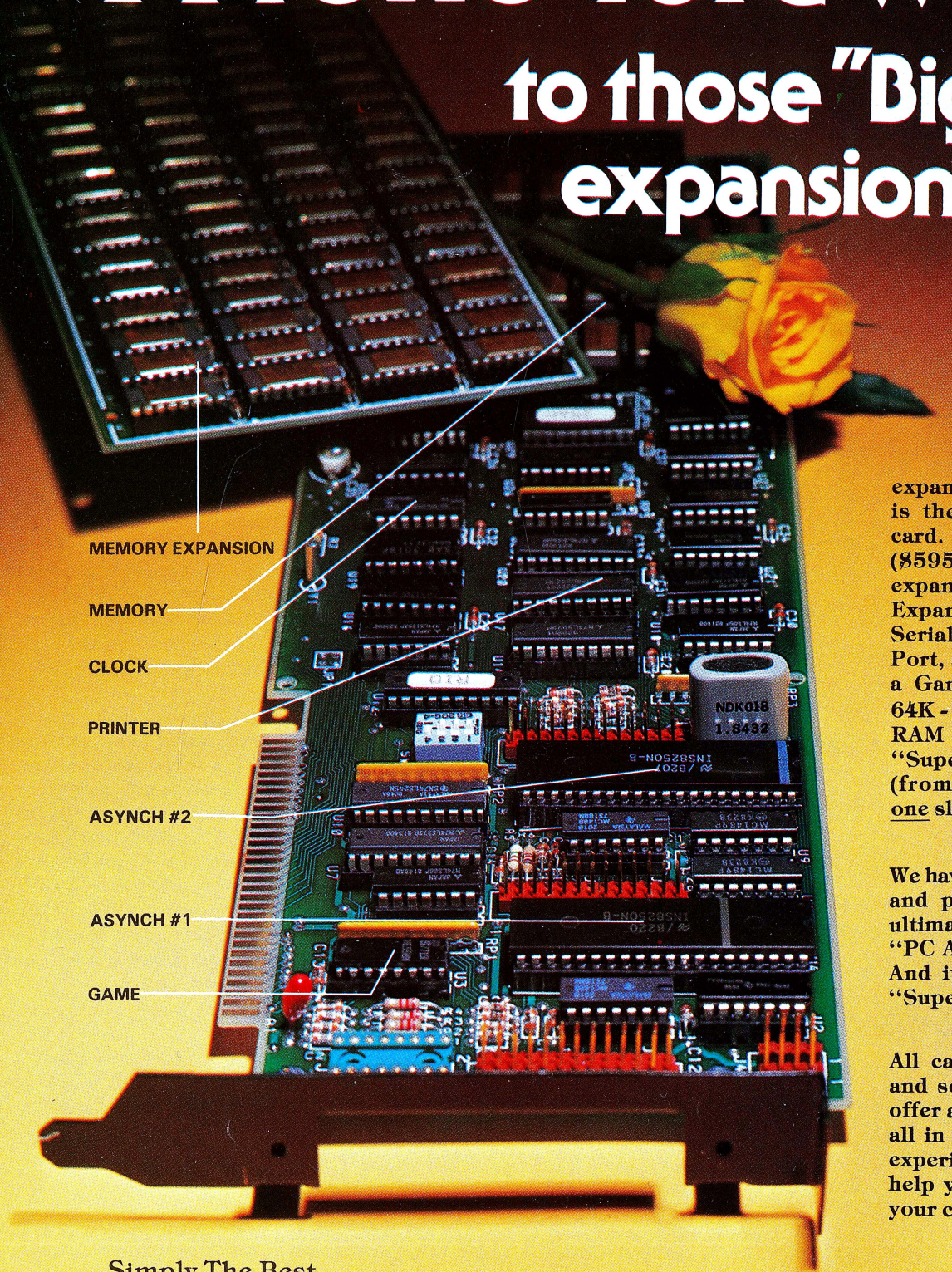
Michael Trombetta, Manhasset, NY

Unearthing the Data

My computer was purchased primarily for the purpose of doing geological research with an end view of preparing computer-generated maps and establishing and main-

A fond farewell...

to those "Big Blue" expansion blues.



If you use an IBM PC™, you know the limitations of five expansion slots. Our solution is the STB "Super RIO"™ card. You'll get 64K - 256K ($595 - $975) of user-expandable RAM, a Memory Expansion Port, two RS-232 Serial Ports, a Printer / SASI Port, a Clock / Calendar, and a Game Port. An additional 64K - 512K of user-expandable RAM can be added with the "Super RIO Piggyback" card (from $349). And all in one slot!

We have merged disk emulation and print spooling into the ultimate productivity program: "PC Accelerator™" ($79.95). And it's yours free with the "Super RIO."

All cards are IBM hardware and software compatible and offer a one-year warranty. It's all in the cards. We have the experience and technology to help you get the most out of your computer.

Simply The Best.

STB SYSTEMS, INC.

1701 N. Greenville • Suite 703
Richardson, Texas 75081 • 214/234-8750

DEALER INQUIRIES INVITED

• IBM is a trademark of International Business Machines

taining a geological-geophysical database for my own use in regional geological studies.

Consequently I would appreciate seeing some articles on CAD-type applications, particularly on computer-generated interactive contouring, and also more information on database management.

I have purchased *dBase II* toward that end but am not at all sure it will be ultimately adequate for my needs, though it seems to be a good place to start.

While I appreciate the importance of word processing and accounting as well as general business graphics, and use them all myself, I find that there seems to be very little microbase software readily available for the ultimate goals I have in mind. If any readers have any suggestions in this regard I would appreciate hearing them.

H. L. Albaugh, Abilene, TX

List Command

I would like to make a suggestion. At the end of each article authors should include a summary list of points covered that can be held out of the article for ready reference.

George T. Wohl, Philadelphia, PA

Drive To Subscribe

I have just received my first copy of *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer* and find your publication excellent. Your magazine is perfect for me in that it explains technical details regarding the IBM pc thoroughly and clearly.

Other pc publications, though perhaps more commercially attractive, lack the information you provide so capably that allows people to actually use their computers, instead of just reading about random, unrelated events in the marketplace. I am informing three of my friends who have IBM pcs about your publication; I am sure they will be interested in becoming subscribers.

Larry Ellis, Wheeling, IL

NOW THERE'S A PROGRAM THAT MAKES RATES RIGHT, TABLES TANGIBLE, PAYMENTS PERFECT AND YOU SMART.

Sams does it again with a new software program that makes frustrating financial calculations a breeze. FINANCIAL FACTS literally transforms your IBM® PC, or Apple® computer including the new IIe® into a sophisticated financial computer you can use in business or at home.

With FINANCIAL FACTS, you access 19 common calculations that let you figure depreciation, amortization, interest rates, annuities, loan payments, and more.

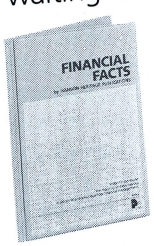
You can forget all those complicated formulas because FINANCIAL FACTS does all the figuring for you. Just punch in the necessary information and immediately you have the answers you need.

Bankers can use FINANCIAL FACTS to calculate loans or annuities. Car dealers can use it to help customers arrange financing. Businessmen and private investors will find it helpful for comparing investment opportunities.

You can't find a financial program that offers you more than FINANCIAL FACTS. And at a price of only $59.95.

So what are you waiting for? Get smart with FINANCIAL FACTS today! To find your nearest dealer or to order, call 800-428-3696 or 317-298-5566 and ask for Operator 382. In Canada, contact Lenbrook Industries, Ltd., Scarborough, Ontario.

APPLE No. 26099
IBM No. 26126
Either One $59.95



SAMS BOOKS AND SOFTWARE

Howard W. Sams & Co., Inc.
4300 West 62nd Street, P.O. Box 7092, Indianapolis, IN 46206

Apple IIe is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc.
IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines, Inc.

AD382

Takin' It Easy

Several issues back a reader wrote to Crosstalk suggesting a way of underlining words in *EasyWriter 1.1* with a "dot-user" command. Either the scheme was not clearly explained, or it doesn't work on my system. I would appreciate it if someone could explain this scheme more clearly or if an alternate method could be described.

I am also looking for a way to print superscripts. Here are a few of my own tricks: for italics type control-O escape-4 to enable, and control-O escape-5 to disable. If you want subscripts, type control-O escape-S to enable, and control-O escape-H to disable. I would appreciate seeing any other "tricks" readers might come up with that are not documented in the *EasyWriter* manual.

Randolph Madera, Forest Park, IL

I am writing about a problem that I'm sure others have encountered, and perhaps solved. I'm hoping a fellow reader will respond with the solution to my challenge.

I recently purchased an IBM pc and I'm using *EasyWriter II*. It works fairly well, except that I can't use any of the special fonts that the program is supposed to be capable of. I am using the program with a C. Itoh 8510A printer. Any light that can be shed on this situation would be greatly appreciated.

John Totten, Livermore, CA

Friend of a Friend

A friend of mine lent me a copy of *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer* and I really liked it. For a neophyte, the articles in Beginners' Corner are particularly informative.

Margot Harrison,
Hilton Head Island, SC

Marching Forward

I would like to say that I just got through reading the entire March issue, and I think it's wonderful. Please stay the way you are, instead of going the route of mass merchandising, dozens of bingo cards per issue, bad puns, and so forth.

As a comment to fellow readers, I'd like to say that disk emulator software is one of

☐ VISISCHEDULE ☐ SUPERCALC ☐ VISICALC ☐ WORDSTAR ☐ D.B. MASTER ☐ MULTI PLAN ☐ VISIFILE ☐ dBASE II ☐

☐ ZORK II ☐ CENTIPEDE ☐ STAR RAIDERS ☐ DEADLINE ☐ CANYON CLIMBER ☐ PREPPIE ☐ WIZARDRY—SCENARIO I ☐ SUBMARINE COMMANDER ☐ AZTEC

RENT SOFTWARE BEFORE YOU BUY!

from our

SOFTWARE RENTAL LIBRARY

You can now RENT the most popular software available for just 20-25%* of Manufacturers' Retail Price

- Eliminate the risk—rent first!
- 100% of rental fee applies toward purchase
- Rentals are for 7-days (plus 3 days grace for return shipping)
- No Membership Fees

Now currently available for:

Apple	IBM, PC	Standard CP/M
Eagle	TRS-80 II	Xerox 820
Northstar	Osborne	Heath/Zenith 89
	Franklin	

REMEMBER, THESE ARE NOT DEMOS, BUT ORIGINAL UNRESTRICTED SOFTWARE PROGRAMS

(complete with manuals in original manufacturers' packages)

To Immediately Order, or for more information:

UNITED COMPUTER CORP.
Software Rental Library
Culver City, California

Toll Free CALL 1-800 992-7777
In California CALL 1-800 992-8888
In L.A. County CALL 1-213 823-4400

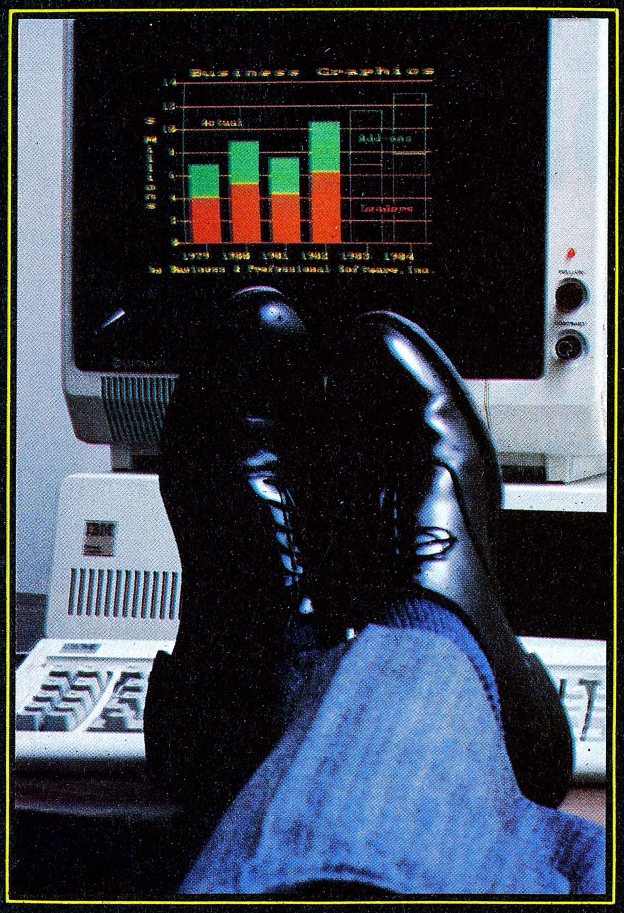
MasterCard | AMERICAN EXPRESS | VISA

*Plus postage and handling.

☐ VOLKSWRITER ☐ DATA PERFECT ☐ FILE MANAGER 80 + ☐ SCREENWRITER PROFESSIONAL ☐ PFS: GRAPH ☐ THE SENSIBLE SPELLER ☐ VISITREND/PLOT

☐ FROGGER ☐ CHOPLIFTER ☐ GORF ☐ DAVID'S MIDNIGHT MAGIC ☐ EASTERN FRONT (1941) ☐ ZORK I ☐

Relax.



BPS BUSINESS GRAPHICS™

for the IBM® PC

Seeing Answers Without Staring at Numbers.

Discover what your data really means.

With BPS Business Graphics you can analyze your data better by charting it. You can see trends, compare performance to projections, and find patterns that printouts often hide.

Chart the data you already have.

You can graph data directly from the programs you already use, including VisiCalc®, SuperCalc™, Multiplan™, and dBase II™—even from word-processing documents—and you won't have to retype a single number.

See the answers instantly.

BPS Business Graphics quickly gives you professional-looking graphs in a wide variety of formats, so you can make colorful presentations on your monitor. And since the program works with more than forty popular printers and plotters, you can get high-quality paper copies of your graphs, and even overhead transparencies.

Business Graphics is a trademark and BPS is a registered trademark of Business & Professional Software, Inc.
IBM and VisiCalc are registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation and VisiCorp, respectively.
SuperCalc, Multiplan, and dBase II are trademarks of Sorcim Corporation, Microsoft Corporation, and Ashton-Tate, respectively.
© 1983 Business & Professional Software, Inc.

To learn more about BPS Business Graphics, see your nearest IBM PC dealer or call us at (800) DIALBPS or (617) 491-3377.

Business & Professional Software, Inc. 143 Binney Street Cambridge, Massachusetts 02142 USA

the nicest enhancements for the pc, one that quickly sets it apart from lower-memory machines such as the Apple II. Before you buy a memory expansion card, be sure to try out the emulator program that comes with it, to make sure that it is easy to install and use. When you are looking for applications packages, you should take into consideration whether a package is copy-protected (such as *VisiCalc*) or not (such as *WordStar*). As far as I know, there is no way to use a copy-protected program in a disk emulator, because you must use *copy* or *diskcopy* commands to load the program into the pseudodisk.

This may not seem to be such a grave limitation initially, but as one becomes used to the luxury of a pseudodrive, working directly from a physical disk seems more annoying.

Kenneth Nichols, Tucker, GA

A Two-Buffer Job?

I was truly pleased to see the article, "Attack of the Printer Bug," by John Socha in the March issue. I've been plagued by this problem for several months and the fix works beautifully on my parallel printer.

I am wondering if Socha or some other enterprising individual could apply the same technique to a printer on the serial port. I have a letter-quality printer with a 2K buffer on a serial port. After the buffer fills and drops CTS, the system (DOS) drops a character every 0.68 seconds. When running at 1200 baud and typing at 10 cps, I lose 244 characters for every 2,000 characters sent. I've had my dealer and IBM Boca Raton involved, but their responses essentially were "too bad." I have gotten around the problem by inserting a 64K hardware print buffer in-line, but I'm sure other people must be experiencing similar problems. It seems wasteful using two buffers in series to get the job done.

Carl Baker, Waukesha, WI

Picture Books

I have books and articles on Apple graphics. However, I have problems translating Apple graphics into IBM graphics. Could anyone recommend a list of books and articles that would help me with my problems?

Akira Kikuchi, Detroit, MI

Spectrum of Help

As a neophyte computer user who not so long ago thought that RAM was a four-legged animal with big horns that lived in the mountains, that serial was a weekly television show, and memory was something you lost when you got older, I want to take the time to bring attention to the Spectrum Software Company of Sunnyvale, California. I purchased *Personal Finance Master (PFM)* and not only received a powerful, useful program, but individual attention and help. If any of your readers are considering the purchase of a software program to handle their finances, either at home or in a small business, I strongly suggest that they try Spectrum Software's *PFM*. It is exceptionally easy to use and has a multitude of features that are highly advantageous. The accompanying documentation is clearly and concisely written, and if necessary the company will politely and cordially help you over the phone.

Allen F. Natella, Alamogordo, NM

Tools of the Logic Trade

I enjoy *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer*, but I find that some subjects I'm interested in are not covered by any articles currently running. I suggest you present articles on what I refer to as "universal logic." By this I mean, for example, explaining how to write your own report writer. The so-called fourth-generation languages all can take any sort fields interactively and do *if* tests, totals, and so forth. The average programmer in a third-generation language faces restrictions (are they real or imagined?) that make it impossible to get more powerful constructs. This seems true in the code I've seen, at least in Cobol, Fortran, Basic, PL/1, Mark IV, and others.

Let me explain what I mean. Is there a way, in a third-generation language, to have more than one variable containing, not data values, but other variable names? Does one have to use assembly language to construct on-the-fly multiple *if* tests in compiled languages? In general, what are the best ways to code, and how can novice programmers get better?

These are the topics I'd like to see covered. Have I missed the articles that address these matters, or are they logical trade secrets?

Howard Schneider, Babylon, NY

How 'Bout. . . .

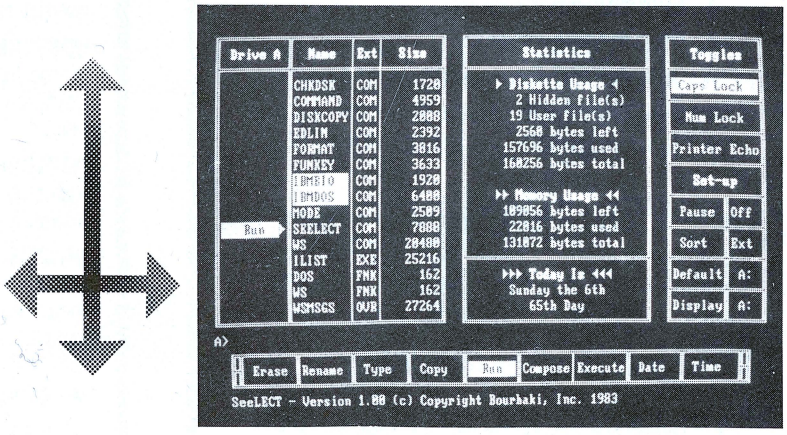
Here are some things I would like to see in future issues. For one, I have an early model IBM with two single-sided disk drives. Let's see an article on how to upgrade, particularly since IBM has come out with the new XT. At this time, the range of accessories is downright bewildering.

Another useful article would be on database managers or electronic filing systems. I have VisiCorp's *VisiFile* which is good up to a point. What more can I get out of, say, *dBase II*? The *VisiFile* package does not include backup disks. One program disk has a bug. The program sticks at forty-seven fields. Consequently, everything comes to a halt until VisiCorp can send out a replacement. Very annoying.

G. K. Hicks, Saint Ann, Jamaica ▲

SEELECT

DIRECTORY COMMANDER for the IBM PC



SEELECT replaces the DOS prompt with an interactive command system that eliminates the need to type commands and/or filenames to the command line. File loading and program execution are done by positioning **SEELECT**'s scrolling FILE and COMMAND CURSORS, and pressing <ENTER>. Controlled by the arrow keys, the CURSORS are easy to use "pointers." Unique "1 Line" Batch Command feature allows you to transfer several commands/files to the command line and then execute them as a batch file.

Suggested Retail
$79.95

by Bourbaki Inc.™

P.O. Box 2867, Boise, ID 83701, (208) 342-5849

NEW VERSION

FileMaster™ 2.0

a high performance, low cost data management system

Do you want:

- ★ Organized Information
- ★ Better utilization of your computer
- ★ Easy to use programs

Do you need:

- ★ A variety of data stored
- ★ Several different reports from your data
- ★ Customer Lists, Personnel Lists, Client Lists
- ★ All this without programming

With FileMaster:

- ★ Create files with user defined descriptions
  - — 32 files
  - — 36 fields
  - — 65 characters/alpha or 16 characters/numeric
- ★ Sort and/or Select records on any field/fields
- ★ Select records with comprehensive selection criteria
- ★ Print columnar reports
- ★ Print mailing labels
- ★ Subtotal and Total report columns
- ★ Print reports on screen or printer
- ★ Interchange DIF (VISICALC®) files

FileMaster can be used for a wide range of applications. Ease of use features include uncrowded screens and single character commands. FileMaster's simplicity and function provide performance and productivity.

All you need to Master information on your IBM PC.

Minimum System — 96K, 80 Column CRT, 1 Diskette Drive (2 preferred)

Only $125.00

Trademark of Data Base Decisions

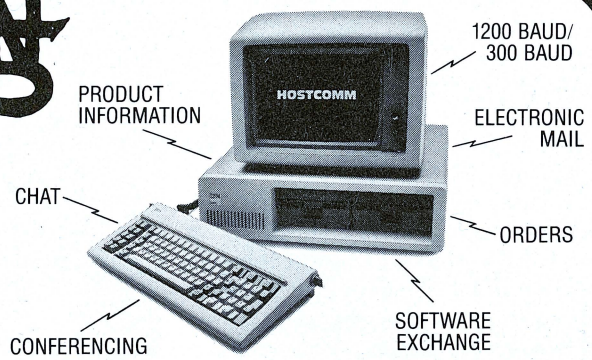
N. F. SYSTEMS, LTD.

P. O. BOX 76363, ATLANTA, GA 30358

404-252-4146—DATA 404-252-3302—VOICE

Add $2.50 Postage & Handling

MASTERCARD/VISA *CATALOG AVAILABLE*



HOSTCOMM

by JANADON

The Complete Host Communications System for The IBM Personal Computer

★ FEATURES

- ★ Full upload/download facility for ASCII files
- ★ Automatic 300/1200 baud operation
- ★ Three level password protection, full operator support
- ★ Run BASIC programs remotely from terminal or computer
- ★ Use as a personal communication system
- ★ Easy to set-up, unattended operation

$170.00

ADD-ON FEATURES FOR HOSTCOMM

PCE-MAIL — Allow users to leave messages and correspondence for others. Password required. Extensive help files are provided. **$80.00**

CONFERENCING — Make your host the most popular in town. Choose 12 topics for discussion. Both PCE-MAIL and CONFERENCING can use the same menu. **$80.00**

HOSTCOMM UTILITIES I — A series of 4 programs to help the Sysop maintain the system. Compute transmission times, alter menus, track files. **$49.95**

HOSTCOMM UTILITIES II — Programs to allow users to switch download directories and to examine and/or list system files. **$49.95**

ORDERTRANS — Provide callers with information about your products and services, giving them the ability to order online. A must for Retailers. **$39.95**

★ MINIMUM SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- ★ 128 K System unit, 320 KB Diskette Storage (1 or 2 drives)
- ★ PC DOS 1.0 or 1.1
- ★ Video display (40 or 80 characters)
- ★ Asynchronous communications adapter, printer
- ★ Hayes Smartmodem 300 or 1200™

N. F. SYSTEMS, LTD.

P. O. BOX 76363, ATLANTA, GA 30358

404-252-4146—DATA 404-252-3302—VOICE

Add $2.50 Postage & Handling

MASTERCARD/VISA *CATALOG AVAILABLE*

CONTEST WINNERS

The count-the-hearts contest in the February issue did what any good contest oughta do—frustrate, baffle, confuse, and entertain. All we asked you to do was "count the ♥bugs," but, from the tone of most entries, that was too much to ask.

Do you mean the red and yellow ones, or just the black? Do clusters count as one bug? What about the illustration on page 58? Do I count the ones on page 2? Honestly, such nitpicking. Never have so many been so cranky about so little that means so much!

The magic number we were looking for was 412. The lowest number submitted was an anemic 68, and the highest number was a whopping 490. Three hundred was a favorite. Congrats to the small percentage of you who fearlessly and boldly scrawled the winning three digits and nothing else. The random-number generator sends its love, along with a check for $100, to Linda S. Wilson (Austin, TX).

For the rest of you beautiful losers, here's how it all shook down: Yes, the big red hi-res heart on page 2 counted, as did the entire number of hearts on that page. No, the airbrush illustration of the dissected heart didn't count. Yes, there is a Santa Claus. No, the earth goes around the sun.

"Don't count its appearance on this page" referred only to the word *love* spelled out, and not to the bugs on the page. Seriously, folks, when we indent and make a new paragraph, we mean it.

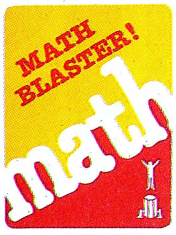
Several of you found nine occurrences of the word *love*, including the word spelled backwards on pages 17 and 111. That was even more than we found, but then we don't think backwards as some of you do. However, Jim DeFrisco (Fremont, CA) beat that number by one. His ten nets him $50.

The old brute-force entry scheme was attempted by Scott Ulrich (Sepulveda, CA). He submitted a separate slip of paper for each number from 200 to 400. That trick never works!

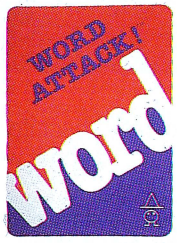
Carolee Kime (Grants Pass, OR) submitted her entry on a post card from the Royal Crest Inn. Dear Carolee: Do they place a *Softalk* in every room? Please confirm.

Well, that's all the bucks we have to hand out this month. Next issue will feature the ten limericks from the Rhyme Tyme contest, from which you get to choose the grand winner. ▲

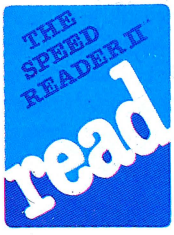
Educational Software That Works



2 disks $49.95



2 disks $49.95



2 disks $69.95

We believe that children have an innate curiosity . . . a natural desire to learn, to discover, to understand. Our software was designed with this in mind. Even traditionally tedious subjects like math, reading, and vocabulary building are easily mastered. Why? Because our software makes children want to learn. And when they want to learn, the results are FANTASTIC!

We know our software WORKS because we developed and tested it in the classroom. Let our software WORK for your children too!

For the Apple and IBM PC.*

Ask your dealer.

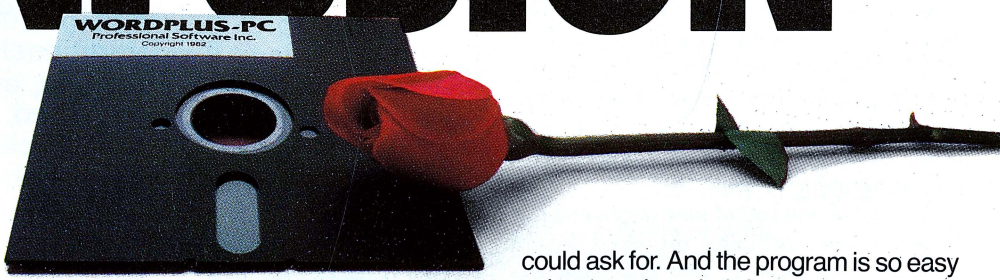
davidson & associates

6069 Groveoak Place #12
Rancho Palos Verdes, CA 90274

MasterCard and Visa cardholders may call collect to order:
(213) 378-7826 / (213) 378-3995

*Apple and IBM are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc. and International Business Machines, Corp.

ANNOUNCING THE END OF WORD PROCESSOR CONFUSION



It's one confusing business, choosing a word processor. All those companies assuring you theirs is the most fantastic one of all. And leaving you to cut through all the smoke and hopefully whittle them down to the best one for you.

Well, we can help. If you'll just invest the next three minutes reading this, we'll tell you about a word processor that makes picking the right one a real breeze.

FIRST, A WARNING. There are two things you must do when evaluating any word processor. First, be careful. It's no secret that many of today's claims about being easy to learn and use just don't stand up to careful comparison. Watch carefully for complicated codes and programs that require "training sessions." Secondly, be selective. Buy a word processor you can use on a daily basis, not one that requires another "training session" when someone goes on vacation. In other words, be very careful to select the word processor that's absolutely the best and easiest to use. Which is what we'll now introduce you to.

WHY ONE WORD PROCESSOR MAKES THE MOST SENSE OF THEM ALL. Meet WordPlus-PC. It's the advanced, "user-oriented" software package that turns your IBM-PC computer into a word processor equipped with the sophisticated capabilities of far larger, more expensive systems.

THE REMARKABLE WORDPLUS-PC STORY. In a nutshell, it's this. WordPlus-PC was designed from the ground up to be the very latest in word processing technology. It has all the important features you could ask for. And the program is so easy to learn and use it defies comparison with other software.

HOW WE CAN BE SO SURE OF OURSELVES. We're Professional Software, a leader in word processing software with over 30,000 customers contentedly churning out letters and documents around the world on personal and business computer systems. We know precisely what a top quality word processor must do. And we've studied all the shortcomings of our competitors. That's how WordPlus-PC came to be the easiest-to-use word processor ever.

ALL THE FEATURES YOU'D EXPECT.

WordPlus-PC is both powerful and versatile. Its long list of major functions includes movement of paragraphs, global search-and-replace, and creation of multiple "boilerplate" and personal letters with the touch of a few buttons. There are 3-line headers and footers and automatic page numbering. When you underline or boldface words as you type, WordPlus-PC displays them in that form on the screen. You can merge information created by popular spread sheet programs. You'll create personal letters quickly and easily, or merge name and address information from other programs. You can easily create standard layouts for preprinted forms and use WordPlus-PC to prepare invoices or quotations. For large corporate customers, WordPlus-PC has the capability to merge information from files created by the firm's mini or mainframe computer. You can even type new documents while the system is printing other ones. And you'll find WordPlus fully compatible with virtually all popular ASCII letter-quality and dot matrix printers.

A BREEZE TO LEARN AND USE.

With WordPlus-PC's easy-to-use documentation, you'll be using your word processor right from the first minute. After an hour, you'll feel at home with all the basic functions and ready to explore the more sophisticated ones. After a few hours you'll put the manual away. There are never any complicated or confusing codes to memorize or look up. Rather, the screen's "message area" reminds you how to do what you want. WordPlus-PC's unique keyboard color coding makes things even easier. And whenever there's a question, simply press the HELP function to get back on track.

ALL THE HELP YOU NEED VIA TOLL-FREE PHONE.

Learning something new goes best when you have encouragement, reassurance and answers to questions. That's how WordPlus-PC helps you learn. In addition to the help you'll get from your dealer, we're ready to assist you when you call our special toll-free number and talk to one of our carefully trained advisors. This service is available at no charge during the 90 days following receipt of your user registration card. It's all part of Professional Software's total commitment to customer service and support.

SEE WORDPLUS-PC FOR YOURSELF AT YOUR COMPUTER DEALER.

Call us today. We'll answer all your questions. And we'll give you the name of the Professional Software dealership nearest you. Then go witness WordPlus-PC in action. Because once you're sitting in front of WordPlus-PC you'll quickly see where all our confidence and enthusiasm come from. After all, you already own the best personal computer. The best word processor is only $395. So call us today.

GUARANTEE

Professional Software Inc. guarantees its WordPlus-PC customers:

1. Free telephone assistance for 90 days after receipt of customer registration card.
2. Free updated program diskette if any software improvements are made within 90 days of purchase.

CALL US TOLL FREE:
1-800-343-4074

Professional Software Inc.

51 Fremont Street, Needham, MA 02194 Telephone (617) 444-5224

Dealer, distributor, OEM manufacturer, and corporate inquiries are invited. Call us at (617) 444-5224.
WordPlus-PC is a trademark of Professional Software Inc.
Specifications are subject to change without notice.
WordPlus-PC was designed and written by Andres Escallon.

QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

by Nancy Andrews

Q: I've entered the Basic scroll program (Questions and Answers, February 1983), but alas—I can't get it to work. I've proofread it and even changed the &h07 to &h06 to reverse the scroll direction, but nothing seems to work (or maybe I don't know what it's supposed to do when it does work). Here are my questions. What is it supposed to do? What are the ranges of the variables? Are there typos in that program? If not, what am I doing wrong?

What I'm really looking for is a way to set up a split screen of two independently scrolled windows—one to display data received on the modem and one to display data to be transmitted. I've got the tech manual, the MC6845 CRT Controller spec sheet, and the software to do everything but the split screen. Any help you can give would be greatly appreciated.

Emile F. Alline, Jr.

A: What the scroll program is supposed to do is move the text on the screen window specified by your parameters up or down the number of lines indicated in your length parameter. In the example in the February issue, the length was 6, so the text in the window should scroll down six lines.

Ranges for parameters for an eighty-column screen are

ULR: 1 to 25
ULC: 1 to 80
LRR: 1 to 25
LRC: 1 to 80

Length: not greater than the size of the window.

We're not aware of typos in the Basic version of the scroll program, but the assembly language subroutine has a few errors.

The subroutine should be named SCROLL, not SUBRT. Line 8, MOV BP, SP, should be moved to line 3, directly following PUSH BP.

Before the subroutine return, registers should be popped in this order: SI, DX, CX, BX, AX, BP.

If this still doesn't work for you, send a printout of your program to Q&A, Softalk/IBM, Box 60, North Hollywood, CA 91603, and we'll see what we can do.

There is no hardware available to set up your split screen, so the solution will have to be a software one. You can do it in Basic if speed isn't critical, and the easiest way to approach the problem would be to divide the screen horizontally. When you write a character on the screen, you will need to specify the x and y coordinates, as well as a third coordinate—the screen to which you're writing.

The scroll routine will be helpful (should you get it to work), but you will need to develop logic to generate the scroll. You will need to look at each character as you write it to the screen. If the character is a carriage return and the cursor is on the bottom line of either window, you will need to call the scroll subroutine to scroll the information in that window, so there will be room for the incoming characters. You may choose to have it scroll one line up so your new information will always be on the last line of either window.

Q: I have two questions.

Before I bought my IBM pc I had a TRS-80 and was able to peek using Basic to see which pixels were turned on. Can I do that with the pc in medium-res? If yes, where do I look?

I've written a game that fires rockets. The fastest way to fire the rockets is to press the space bar repeatedly. This is faster than holding it down and waiting for the automatic repeat. What I would prefer is to eliminate the delay before the automatic repeat and thus save my keyboard from too much abuse by anxious children. Do you know how to do this?

Dick Rafoth

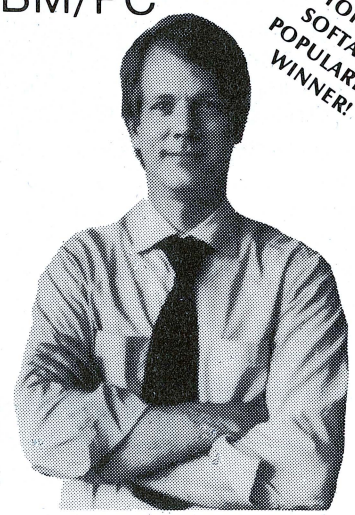
A: Yes, you can peek at the screen buffer. To do this you need to start at location B8000. The even-numbered lines (starting with the top line of the screen, line 0) are in the first 8K block, and the odd lines are in the second 8K block (beginning at location BA000). There are four pixels per byte, or two bits to specify each pixel. If the two bits both contain zeros, that indicates that the pixel holds the background color—or, in other words, is turned off. The other combinations, 01, 10, and 11, each indicate one of the three foreground colors of whichever palette you're using. To peek at the

The Norton Utilities™ POWER TOOLS™ for the IBM/PC

Your data is in *danger!*

if you don't have the file recovery routines *UnErase* and *FileFix* just two of the incredibly useful *Norton Utilities*

File recovery:
UnErase - recovers erased files
FileFix - repairs damaged files
Diskette display:
DiskLook - complete disk displays and maps
Diskette patching and modifying:
SedMod - easy changes to diskettes
Hidden file control:
FileHide - interactive hidden file control
BatHide - automatic hidden file control
Time control:
Timemark - displays date, time, elapsed time
Screen control:
ScrAtr - sets DOS to work in any colors
Reverse - work in black on white
Clear — clears the screen for clarity
Diskette file sorting:
FileSort - keeps files by date or name
DiskOpt - speeds diskette access
Sound:
Beep - sounds a tone to alert you
File printing:
Print - prints files



TOP 30 SOFTALK POPULARITY WINNER!

IBM buys The Norton Utilities again and again. Shouldn't you buy a set?
Available from ComputerLand, other dealers, and directly from me for $80:
Peter Norton 2210 Wilshire Blvd. #186E Santa Monica, CA 90403

"Norton's many utilities have received almost **universal praise**, and have become **an industry standard**. No home should be without them." —**New York PC Club**

first byte of the screen buffer, enter the following:

```
10  DEF SEG = &HB00
20  PRINT HEX$(PEEK(0)) 'Look at first location in this
    segment
```

Translate the result of this program from hex to binary, and you'll be able to tell what's going on in the first four pixels of the graphics screen. For example, suppose the program produces the hex number 54. Hex 54 is equal to 01010100 in binary. That would mean that the first three pixels have foreground color number 1 and the fourth pixel is off (set to the background color). For a more detailed orientation to the graphics screen buffer, see "The ABCs of IBM Graphics," by George Bohannon (March 1983).

A simpler way to examine selected pixels is to use Basic's *point* function. If *point(x,y)* equals 0, then the pixel at coordinates x,y is in the background color. If it equals 1, 2, or 3, then a foreground color is indicated. The *point* function returns a value of −1 if your x or y coordinate is out of bounds.

As for your second question, when a key on the pc is pressed, the keyboard sends a distinct scan code to the system unit; a different scan code is sent when the key is released. That's just what you need: As long as the "release" scan code has not been received, your program knows that the key is still pressed. Unfortunately, there is no convenient way to access those scan codes directly from Basic (or Pascal or most other higher languages either, for that matter), since routines in the ROM BIOS convert them into their ASCII representations before Basic can get to them. The way to access the scan codes directly is to do an end run around the ROM BIOS keyboard routines. That requires intercepting interrupt 10—the interrupt generated by the keyboard—and redirecting it to a routine of your own, most likely in assembler. This is exactly how John Socha's program Scrollk (see page 38 of this issue) works. (If you're interested in giving this method a try, you should also know that the IBM ROM BIOS routines are found on page A-23 of the *Technical Reference* manual, and various buffer areas are found on pages A-2 and A-3.)

Fortunately, there's an easier way out. The current status of a few special keys—left shift, right shift, alt, ctrl, ins, caps lock, num lock and scroll lock—is stored in two memory locations which *can* be accessed by Basic. (We're assuming that's what your program is written in; the concept should be workable in any language that can access absolute memory locations.)

The status of each of these keys is represented by one or two bits in these memory locations. For example, the least significant bit (LSB) of location 417 (at data segment 0) represents the state of the *right* shift-lock key. When that bit is a 1, the shift key is depressed; otherwise, the key is released.

Here's a sample Basic program that continuously reads and displays the state of the right shift key:

```
100  DEF SEG=&H0
110  MASK = &H1                ' Mask value to isolate LSB
120  A=PEEK(&H417) AND MASK
130  A$=INKEY$                 ' A dummy statement
140  PRINT A
150  GOTO 120
```

As you can see from running the program, the bit is updated with no apparent delay, so the program should be more than fast enough for real-time applications such as yours. Figure 1, at the top of page 41, details the functions represented by the byte at 417; the functions for the byte at 418, with the mask value necessary to isolate each bit shown in parentheses, are insert depressed (&H80); caps lock depressed (&H40); num lock depressed (&H20); scroll lock depressed (&H10).

Notice that some of the bits reflect the current state of the key, whereas others toggle each time the key is pressed. If you want, the mask can be altered so that various combinations can be simultaneously detected. ▲

The Home Accountant:™ It can cover your assets.

If you're concerned about your money, it's important to know not only where your assets are but whether they're working for you.

By tracking up to 200 different budget categories,* 5 different checking accounts and all the credit cards you can carry, The Home Accountant will let you know where you stand on any given day. It will even print your checks, your net worth statements and financial statements.

Additionally, full-scale color graphics of actual vs. budgeted expenses give you an instant overview of your financial condition.

The Home Accountant can save you enough time and money to more than justify its cost. And the experts agree:

"Of the five [home financial] programs reviewed here THE HOME ACCOUNTANT is the most thorough and powerful. Considering how much it can do, it's remarkably easy to use."
—**Softalk**, Apple, April, 1982.

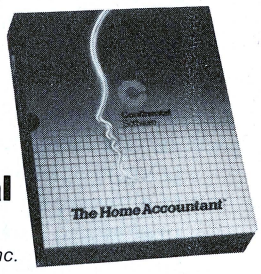
"Personal-finance programs, have for the most part, a manual file system. Only THE HOME ACCOUNTANT is fully automatic."
—**Popular Science**, December 1982.

"The program itself does just about everything you'd ask of a personal finance package."
—**Popular Computing**, November, 1982.

THE HOME ACCOUNTANT. The #1 bestselling personal finance program in the world.

Available for: Apple II, IBM Personal Computer, Atari 400/800, Osborne, TRS-80 Model III, Commodore VIC 64.

*Actual budget capacities will vary with each computer.

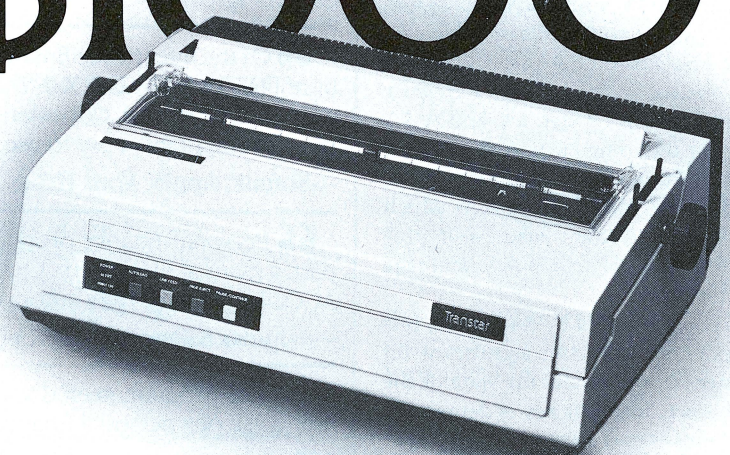


Continental Software
A Division of Arrays, Inc.

Continental Software, 11223 South Hindry Ave.
Los Angeles, CA 90045, (213) 417-8031.

The Home Accountant is a registered trademark of Continental Software. Apple II is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. IBM Personal Computer is a registered trademark of IBM Corp. Atari 400/800 are registered trademarks of Atari, Inc., a division of Warner Communications, Inc. Osborne is a registered trademark of Osborne Computer Corp. TRS-80 Model III is a registered trademark of Tandy, Inc. Commodore VIC 64 is a registered trademark of Commodore Business Machines, Inc.

Is 42 seconds worth $1000?



The new Transtar 130 daisy wheel printer generates a full-page letter in 78 seconds. The least expensive 40 cps printer does it in 36. Only 42 seconds difference...for twice the price.

At only $895, the Transtar 130 letter-quality printer makes speed its only compromise. Shannon-text rated at 16 cps, the Transtar 130 gives you better printing quality than any 40 cps printer. It allows you the full range of word-processing functions such as proportional spacing, superscript, subscript, underscoring and a true boldface. The 130 is "plug and go" compatible with the best-selling word processing packages. It's quiet: only 65dB. It's durable. It boasts a unique new autoload feature that automatically loads paper to one of four preselected positions with the touch of a button. And, as if that weren't enough, its end-user warranty runs a full six months—twice that of most of its competitors.

Affordable and loaded with all the features of printers costing twice as much, the Transtar 130 letter-quality printer retails for less than $900. But it's up to you: Is 42 seconds really worth $1000?

Transtar

Box C-96975, Bellevue, Washington 98009

SYSTEM NOTEBOOK

by Alan Boyd

As we saw last month, DOS 2.0 has several new features. One of the most functional is the ability to construct customized hierarchical directories, which allow better use of larger disk storage devices and more efficient distribution of storage space between different users and different tasks.

This ability is not unique to DOS. Bell Labs's Unix operating system for minicomputers—and, more appropriately, the Microsoft version of that operating system for microcomputers (and DOS's big brother), Xenix—both have it. What is new is that DOS 2.0 is the first mass-market microcomputer operating system with such a capability.

A limitation of the CP/M operating system for the eight-bit micros using the Intel 8080 or the Zilog Z-80 microprocessor was its inability to work with large storage devices. To address a high-capacity Winchester-type disk drive under CP/M, users had to treat the physical device as a set of smaller "logical devices," pretending there was no large disk but rather a string of smaller devices, each with its own directory and none interacting with others.

The size of each component device had a fixed upper limit, which required users to break down large files into several smaller ones to distribute across the various logical drives—messy at best and not very workable for users accumulating large amounts of data.

Under DOS 2.0, breaking down a large disk drive into several components is an option. Users can construct numerous directories on a single drive, regardless of drive size. Logical device size, which is not fixed, is entirely up to the user.

To look at this somewhat novel situation through an example, suppose that you use your pc for word processing, database management, and as a remote terminal on an information network. Suppose also that it is connected to a Winchester-type hard disk containing all the word processing program and data files, database management files, communications files, and DOS command files lumped together in a single directory. Confusion would reign. DOS 2.0 can create several directories, organized by function or by any design you wish.

A master directory, called the *root* directory, allows access to any of the functional directories. In our example, the root directory contains four subdirectories, one for each of the functional categories of our files:

		Root	
DOS command files	**Word processing programs**	**Database management programs**	**Communications programs**

Each subdirectory is given a name, following the same rules for standard DOS file names; up to eight characters are allowed, plus a three-character extension set off by a period. Like file names, directory names should reflect the nature of the contents and should be short, since you will type the names often.

We'll name our four example subdirectories System, WP, DB, and Term. Our directory structure is relatively simple, so we won't use extensions. They would be useful for a more complex directory structure, especially if several people used the system to perform similar tasks. In such a situation, task names could define directory names, and extensions could identify the directory owners.

Once these directories are created (we'll step through the actual process in a moment), a listing of the root directory (still by use of the internal *dir* command) shows:

```
        Volume in drive B has no ID
        Directory of B:\
COMMAND   COM   17503   1-28-83   5:23p
SYSTEM    <DIR>         2-21-83   3:15p
WP        <DIR>         2-21-83   4:10p
DB        <DIR>         2-21-83   4:35p
TERM      <DIR>         2-21-83   4:50p
     5 File(s)   150528 bytes free
```

As you can see, DOS clearly marks subdirectories.

If we logged on to a subdirectory, we would then see its contents listed. Suppose *WordStar* is our word processing program and we have copied *WordStar*'s program files in the WP directory. If we logged on to that directory, the *dir* command would produce something like this:

DATAMATE

...a *truly* all-purpose DATABASE MANAGER for **IBM PC** users.

A system that adapts easily to most any form including mailing list, inventory control and general information management.

- fewer management problems: multiple files per disk, no practical limitation on file content
- menu driven commands plus full use of **IBM** function keys
- cost effective: priced lower than comparable systems, free updates, adaptability
- custom applications available from author, assured compatability
- **DATAMATE...**TOTAL PACKAGE including manual, back-up disk, and sample data disk for $299.95.

Compu-Haus

1840 NW 50th Terr.
Kansas City, MO. 64151

TO ORDER, CALL 816-741-2669

Also available for the Osborne 1.

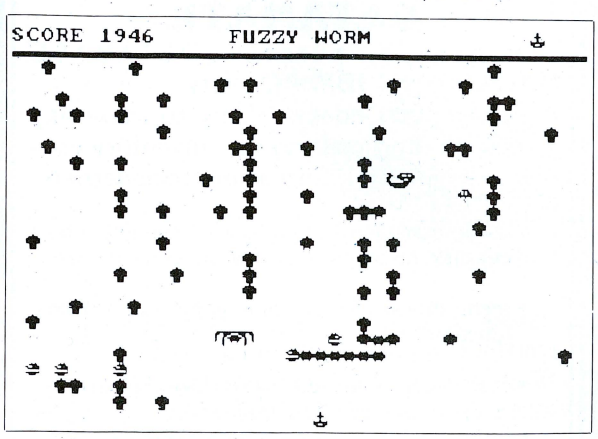
```
Volume in drive B has no ID
Directory of B:\wp
.            <DIR>          2-21-83    4:10p
..           <DIR>          2-21-83    4:10p
WS       COM    20864       1-01-80    12:04a
WSOVLY1  OVR    41216      11-15-82
WSOVLY2  OVR    28160      11-15-83
        5 File(s)    59904 bytes free
```

As you can see, all files associated with *WordStar* are in the same directory. The two entries that appear to be directories—represented by the single and double periods—will be explained later. For now, consider them part of the overhead required to maintain a hierarchical directory structure.

Suppose we have three classes of documents to maintain under *WordStar*—memos, letters, and program listings. When these files become too numerous to list on the screen with the *dir* command, we can create three more subdirectories, one for each class of file. Then, in addition to the *WordStar* program files, we will have three subdirectories (or, in this case sub-subdirectories), named Memos, Letters, and Programs, and our WP directory listing will look like this:

```
Volume in drive B has no ID
Directory of B:\wp
.            <DIR>          2-21-83    4:10p
..           <DIR>          2-21-83    4:10p
WS       COM    20864       1-01-80    12:04a
WSOVLY1  OVR    41216      11-15-82
WSOVLY2  OVR    28160      11-15-82
LETTERS  WS     <DIR>       2-21-83    5:51p
MEMOS    WS     <DIR>       2-21-83    5:53p
PROGRAMS WS     <DIR>       2-21-83    5:54p
        6 File(s)    58880 bytes free
```


FUZZY WORM $29.95



FUZZY WORM is an absolute must for everyone who enjoys fast action arcade games. The object of the game is to destroy all of the FUZZY WORMS while avoiding the DROPPERS and the deadly SPIDER. Bonus points can be earned by shooting the FIREBALLS which occasionally make their way onto the screen.

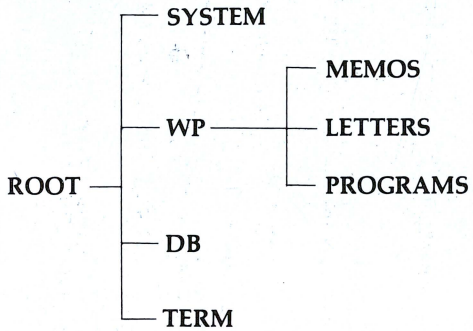
The game is loaded with features
- Extra SHOOTERS are awarded for high scores
- The sounds are fantastic and can be turned ON OFF during the game
- The TOP 10 scores are saved on the disk
- Each succeeding level gets faster and more challenging
- Works with all displays Monochrome, TV, B&W, Color, RGB
- Requires an IBM-PC with at least 64K memory and 1 disk drive

BOISE COMPUTER
2417 BANK DRIVE
SUITE 11
BOISE, IDAHO 83705

VISA

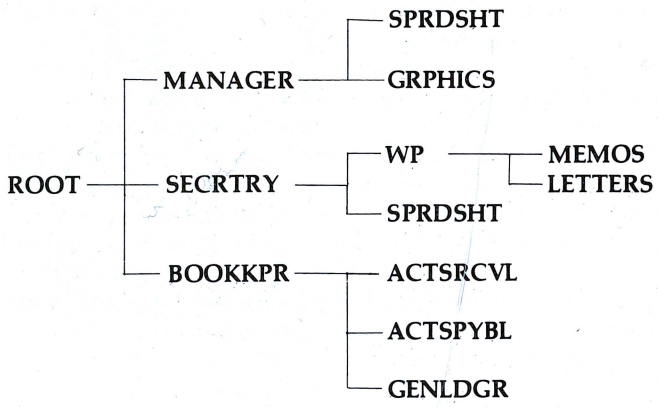
Telephone order line for Bank Card Sales
(208) 344-7202

We now have this logical hierarchical file structure:



The nesting of directories could go on and on, getting more complex with each iteration. Constructing a directory hierarchy requires a balance between function and complexity, a balance dependent on the demands of the task the computer performs.

Hierarchical directories are especially useful for computers with more than one user. In an office, for instance, a manager, secretary, and bookkeeper could each have their own subdirectory in the root directory, with their own separate hierarchy of directories under it, which would help keep the file system structured and uncluttered. Such a directory hierarchy might look like this:



Notice that the manager and the secretary both have directories named Sprdsht. The manager might use her directory to create and store master models, transferring completed models to the secretary's spreadsheet directory for completion or inclusion in reports.

How does the system tell the two directories apart? The answer lies in the *pathname*—the path through the directory structure, starting at the root, that would be traversed to find the correct directory. Pathnames are strings of directory names separated by the backslash character, "\". For example, the pathnames of the two like-named directories in our example are represented by \manager\sprdsht and \secrtry\sprdsht respectively. The difference between the two pathnames is, obviously, that one begins with \manager\ and the other \secrtry\ to differentiate the two and indicate the path divergence required to reach the two directories.

Now that we've seen how directory structures look and how they can be used, let's look at the relevant new DOS commands. Foremost of these is *mkdir*, which creates new directories.

Mkdir is an internal DOS command, so you don't have to copy it to each directory in which you want to create subdirectories. And, like several other DOS commands, it has a pseudonym—*md*. Once familiar with the system, you'll find it convenient to use the short form. Until then, stick to the full name, because it is more representative.

Our first example had four subdirectories leading off the root—one each for system files, word processing files, database files, and

communications files. Before you create these directories, the new medium must be formatted with the *format* command, which creates the root directory.

That done, you create a new directory simply by typing *mkdir dirname*, where *dirname* is the name you are assigning the new directory. DOS spins the disk for a few seconds, creating the segments necessary to maintain the new directory. Issue the *dir* command again and you'll see the new directory indicated in the listing by a <DIR>. It's that simple.

As an example, let's create a new directory called Level1 under the root directory of a newly formatted disk. Before doing so, our *dir* listing might look like this:

```
Volume in drive B has no ID
Directory of B:\
File not found
```

After we type *mkdir Level1*, our listing will look something like this:

```
          Volume in drive B has no ID
          Directory of B:\
LEVEL1        <DIR>      2-21-83        7:32p
          1 File(s)  174592 bytes free
```

We are still in the root directory. To move to the next level in the hierarchy—named Level1 in our example—we use the next new command, *chdir*. This internal DOS command changes the current, or working, directory. It is the means by which we move up, down, and around the hierarchical directory system.

For our example, we issue the command *chdir Level1* to move down the hierarchy to the newly created directory. Once in the new directory, you should see something like this if you issue the *dir* command again.

```
          Volume in drive B has no ID
          Directory of B:\Level1
.             <DIR>      2-21-83        7:32p
..            <DIR>      2-21-83        7:32p
          2 File(s)  174592 bytes free
```

Notice that the *dir* command lists only the contents of the current directory. It does not list files in the root, or parent, directory. Notice also the "Directory of" message on the second line. In the root directory, this message reads "Directory of B:\". Here, in the next level of the hierarchy, it reads "Directory of B:\Level1" to show the pathname of the current, or active, directory.

Let's create another level of the hierarchy by opening another new directory, this time within the \Level1 directory—a sub-subdirectory. While in the \Level1 directory, type *mkdir Level2* and then type *dir* to list the current directory. You should see something like this:

```
          Volume in drive B has no ID
          Directory of B:\Level1
.         < DIR >      2-21-83        7:32p
..        < DIR >      2-21-83        7:32p
LEVEL2    < DIR >      2-21-83        7:42p
          3 File(s)  174080 bytes free
```

We have just created another level to the directory structure. We can now move down it by typing *chdir Level2*. Do so and list the new directory by typing *dir*. The screen should now display something like this:

```
          Volume in drive B has no ID
          Directory of B:\Level1\Level2
.             <DIR>      2-21-83        7:42p
..            <DIR>      2-21-83        7:42p
          2 File(s)  174080 bytes free
```

Go one more level by creating a new directory called Level3, then move down to that directory. Type *dir* and it will look something like this:

```
          Volume in drive B has no ID
          Directory of B:\Level1\Level2\Level3
.             <DIR>      2-21-83        7:50p
..            <DIR>      2-21-83        7:50p
          2 File(s)  173568 bytes free
```

And so on.

This little exercise shows clearly that the *dir* command under DOS 2.0 does not necessarily list all files on the disk. You will see only a listing of the files on the current directory; any files on that directory with <DIR> appended are other directories on the disk. DOS commands with some sort of file-dependent action associated with them will work only with the files in that directory.

This may seem like a step backward, since we have lost some universality of many DOS functions. This is not the case. The creation of subdirectories will make sense to users with large-capacity disk drives, such as Winchester-type hard disks. It may also perform some useful functions for those of us with floppy disks.

Before making a case for or against creating a hierarchical disk directory structure, we need to look at those functions that allow us to move rapidly from one directory to another. First, though, let's put some confusing semantics to rest. We've been introduced to the concept of a tree structure and seen that, like a real tree, it has a root. Our tree, however, has its root at the top, and we talk about subdirectories as being *below* the root—sort of an inverted tree. Consequently, when we talk about moving *down* through the hierarchy, we mean that we are moving away from the root directory and farther into the directory structure. When we move up, we move toward the root.

That said, let's look again at our example. We created a very simple hierarchy:

PICK-N-PACK

"As soon as I saw the size reduction of almost 50%, I was sold..."

JACK CRONE, Publisher/Editor, Personal Computer Age Magazine

Our Packer program takes an IBM Basic program and compresses it for less size and faster speed. On the same disk, we also give you Pick-A-Menu. PC Age Magazine said, "Easy, elegant menus...the documentation supplied is clear and easy to use... Joseki has produced two very practical utilities, either of which is worth the price being charged for the pair."

The exact amount of compression and speed improvement will vary with each program, but even simple programs can have run times cut in half and 50% size reductions. This is a "must have" utility for Basic programmers.

Programs require an IBM PC with 64K of memory, disk, and IBM DOS, 80 & 40 column displays supported. Unsecured diskette. Both Basic and machine language versions of Packer supplied.

PRICE: $29.95

Direct mail, add $2 shipping. CA residents add sales tax. MasterCard and Visa accepted.

See your dealer or order direct from:

JOSEKI COMPUTER CORPORATION

Dept. 123, 2604 Artesia Blvd., Suite 5
Redondo Beach, CA 90278.

24-hour answer machine for orders at (213) 374-3251.

Copy of Joseki Limited Warranty available on request.
Dealer inquiries invited.

Root	**(\)**
Level1	**(\Level1)**
Level2	**(\Level1\Level2)**
Level3	**(\Level1\Level2\Level3)**

We saw that we can move down through the hierarchy one step at a time with the *chdir* command, but we can go farther and faster by using this command in other ways.

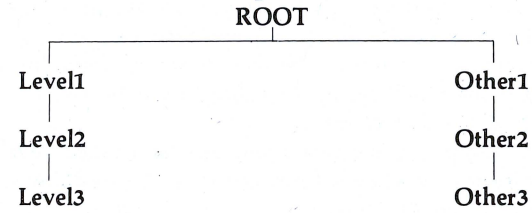
Whenever a new directory is opened, DOS 2.0 creates two files—designated by . <DIR> and .. <DIR>— and lists them in the directory. These files assist movement up and down the tree structure. The first one—the . —is DOS's shorthand for the current, or working, directory, the one on which the system is currently logged. To enter DOS commands that access the current directory, you need not enter the entire pathname; simply use the convenient shorthand method. We'll find out more about this abbreviation in months to come.

The other abbreviation—the .. —indicates the parent directory, the one immediately above the working directory. In our example, the directory \Level1\Level2 is the parent directory of the directory \Level1\Level2\Level3, and the directory \Level1 is the parent of \Level1\Level2—similar to a family-tree structure.

The .. abbreviation is particularly useful for moving up a level in the hierarchy. For example, if we were currently logged on to the directory \Level1\Level2\Level3 and entered the command *dir* .., we would see a listing of directory \Level1\Level2. If we issued the command *chdir* .., we would pop up to the parent directory, \Level1\Level2. If we entered the same command again, we would pop up to directory \Level1.

In addition to using *chdir* with these abbreviations, we can use it with a complete pathname specification. For example, if we are in directory \Level1\Level2\Level3 and want to climb up two levels to the \Level1 directory, we enter the command *chdir \Level1*. To back out completely, we can enter the command *chdir* \, the shorthand for the root directory.

To demonstrate a somewhat more elaborate use for the *chdir* command, create the following directory structure:



Now, to move to one of the extremities, type

chdir \Level1\Level2\Level3

and then move randomly around the tree by using the *chdir* command with a full pathname. Try

chdir \Other1\Other2\Other3

and verify your move to the correct directory by listing it with the *dir* command.

We haven't elaborated on the backslash, so let's do that.

If we were in directory \Level1 and entered the command

chdir Level2\Level3

with no backslash preceding Level2, we would still move to the appropriate directory. If you enter a pathname without a preceding backslash, DOS assumes you want to move relative to the current directory. Begin a pathname with a backslash and DOS assumes you're specifying an absolute pathname—one that begins at the root directory. When given a relative pathname—one without a preceding backslash—DOS essentially creates the absolute pathname by adding the specified pathname to the absolute pathname of the current working directory.

To illustrate this, go to the directory named Level1, enter the command

chdir Level2\Level3

and then type *dir* to verify that you're in directory \Level1\Level2\Level3, a relative move. Next, return to the \Level1 directory by typing

chdir \Level1

and then enter the command

chdir Other1\Other2\Other3

You should get the error message "Invalid directory," because DOS was looking for a relative offset from the current directory. In other words, it attempted to find the directory that lay along the hypothetical and, in this case, nonexistent, pathname \Level1\Other1\Other2\Other3.

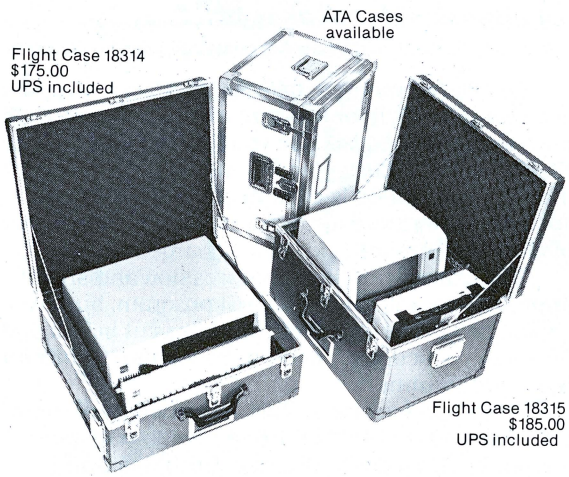
This feature, useful if you are in a directory and want to move one or more levels in the hierarchy, eliminates entering the entire pathname; only the relative offset need be entered. If we are in directory \Level1 and want to move to directory \Level1\Level2\Level3, then instead of entering *chdir \Level1\Level2\Level3*, we would enter the simpler form, *chdir Level2\Level3*.

Interesting and useful, too, is the bare-bones version of the *chdir* command, which prints the full pathname of the current working directory. For example:

B: \Level1\Level2\Level3

Tree-structured directories, although very useful with large storage devices, incur penalties in storage-requirement overhead and file-access time. Whenever you create a new directory, you add to the complexity of the filing system. Conversely, the intelligent use of hierarchical file systems, which allow users to structure directory systems to their individual needs, takes advantage of many operations that work best within such a system. Next month, we'll take a look at the advantages and disadvantages of this new capability. ▲

How IBM Packs a PC...



When an IBM'er needs to travel with the PC, they use a Fiberbilt case. Need we say more?

....

Toll Free: 800 847-4176 (Outside NYC Area)

Fiberbilt 601 West 26th Street New York, N.Y. 10001 212 675-5820 (NYC Area)

No More "Out of Memory."

. . . You can pay hundreds of dollars for a spreadsheet program, only to discover it requires hundreds more for extra memory.

. . . You can waste money and time buying a limited function system that's inadequate for your needs.

Consider these factors, then make your choice:

Virtual Memory Techniques of Calc-86 accommodate large amounts of data. The section of spreadsheet you are working on is automatically placed into computer main memory from disk memory. This happens so fast it will appear that the entire spreadsheet—no matter how large—is in the computer's memory.

Calc-86 gives you a worksheet limited in size only by available disk space. *You save the cost of buying additional memory.*

Thirty-three Functions for formula evaluation make Calc-86 comparable to the functionality of VisiCalc® and SuperCalc®.

Calc-86's Twenty-one Help Screens in clear, user friendly form provide you with explanations of the commands right on screen. A comprehensive manual with complete tutorial is also included.

Eight Window Capability allows you to see the effects of your entries and manipulate multiple sections of the spreadsheet. Moving from one window to another is as easy as pressing the tab key.

Merge any part of one worksheet into any part of another with Calc-86.

English Commands displayed by Calc-86 avoid confusion. They help you feel comfortable and immediately confident.

Fail-Safe, No Risk Guarantee. Examine the Calc-86 Manual. You are free to return the package with the disk unopened within 15 days of receipt for a complete, no questions asked refund.

Only Calc-86 incorporates all of these features at a practical price. Call or write today. *This is a limited offer at this special price.*

$95

Calc-86™

Available for IBM PC DOS or CP/M-86®
Requires IBM PC DOS 1.1 or above, 64 k memory and 2 drives
CP/M-86® version available June 83

ADVANCED BUSINESS SOFTWARE, INC.

4801 Cottage Grove Rd.
Madison, Wisconsin 53716 (608) 222-5035

Master Card and Visa accepted, COD add $3. We pay shipping.
Wisconsin Residents add 5% Sales Tax.

IBM Personal Computer is a trademark of International Business Machine Corp.
CP/M-86 is a registered trademark of Digital Research.
VisiCalc is a registered trademark of VisiCorp.
SuperCalc is a registered trademark of Sorcim.

The Calc War

Has Just Begun!

AST Research's three founders: Tom Yuen, Safi Qureshey, and Albert Wong. The three share the responsibilities of running AST, which is experiencing convulsive growth reflected in astronomical sales figures. In less than a year the firm has increased personnel from four employees to more than seventy, moved twice, and increased its production output by several hundred percent.

Exec AST: AMBITION, SKILL, AND TIMING

by David Hunter

Heard any good fairy tales lately?

Like once upon a time, two guys from Hong Kong and one from Pakistan, with no external funding, started selling expansion boards for the IBM pc, and less than two years later they're expecting annual sales to be in eight figures?

Well, if all goes according to plan, that's the story from AST Research in Irvine, California. Three ordinary guys with a lot of intelligence and guts saw an opportunity, took a chance, and are now laughing their way to the bank.

"We lucked out," says Tom Yuen, AST's vice president of marketing. He's kidding, right? We all know there's no such thing as luck in the pc market, right?

Multimillion-dollar sales figures rarely result from a series of casual events. When they do, it usually implies that somewhere along the line a chance was taken and fate intervened.

AST Research took one big chance, if you could call it that, at the outset: It put its faith in IBM. It was one of the first independent vendors on the scene when IBM announced the Personal Computer in late 1981.

Tied for First. Yuen is proud of the fact that AST was one of the first three companies to advertise hardware add-on products for the pc in *Byte* magazine's January 1982 issue. The other two companies were Tecmar and Datamac. That first ad was a fairly conservative one-third-page, black-and-white affair—typical of a young company.

Perhaps it seems like good luck to Yuen, all that has happened since that first ad, but was putting faith in IBM really taking a chance? Haven't we learned yet?

Albert Wong, Safi Qureshey, and Tom Yuen are the A, the S, and the T of AST Research. They are young, healthy, and witty—a

Dumasesque trio of high-tech adventurers. The three are equal partners and the driving force behind AST's success.

Albert Wong was born in Hong Kong and has been in the United States since 1969. Since he was nine, Wong has enjoyed tinkering with electronic equipment, particularly ham radios. He's always had a practical, methodical quality that he's carried into his professional career at companies like Datum and Technology Marketing. His knack for paying attention to details makes Wong perfect for his present position as AST's vice president in charge of production.

Tom Yuen also comes from Hong Kong, although he met Wong in the early seventies when they were both attending Orange Coast College in Southern California. Yuen is friendly and outgoing, with a lively sense of humor. He also has an impressive high-tech resume. His knowledge and personality make him well suited to the position of vice president in charge of marketing.

Safi Qureshey left his native Pakistan for America eleven years ago. He received the Bachelor of Science degree in electrical engineering from the University of Texas and worked at Computer Automation, a minicomputer firm, and later at Telefile. Qureshey is good at looking ahead, weighing options, and forming strategies. As AST's president, he's in charge of finance and product development.

Three Friends. When he graduated from the University of California at Irvine with a Bachelor of Science degree in electrical engineering, Tom Yuen went to work first for Hughes. Later, he became a senior engineer at Sperry Univac. Yuen met Qureshey while working at Computer Automation, and a friendship sprang up between the two. Yuen had remained friends with Wong since their college days.

"We all had similar ambitions," says Yuen. "We had creative talents and similar working experiences. We had all done design engineering on minicomputers."

Wong, Qureshey, and Yuen got together one day in 1980 and decided to start a consulting firm. They met in Yuen's house and formed AST Associates. One of their major contracts was with an East Coast firm for "a state-of-the-art local area network," says Yuen. It involved a fourteen-megabyte central computer and broadband communications in a connecting radius of thirty-five miles.

From this successful project and others, Wong, Qureshey, and Yuen culled forty thousand dollars of working capital and made plans to enter a different kind of market. In the summer of 1981, they brainstormed a plan to produce expansion boards for the IBM Personal Computer.

With their own money, the three contracted an outside firm to fabricate the bare circuit boards. Originally, most of the soldering and assembling of components onto the boards was done by the three, until those tasks too were subcontracted to an outside firm. Eventually, the ratio of outside to in-house assembly became fifty-fifty, which is how it remains today.

AST initially offered four products: a 64K-256K parity-checked memory board, an asynchronous communications board, a wire-wrap development kit, and a multiprotocol communications card. They first shipped product around Christmas of 1981. Sales for the first month were two thousand dollars. Yuen says, "Each month it just kept doubling."

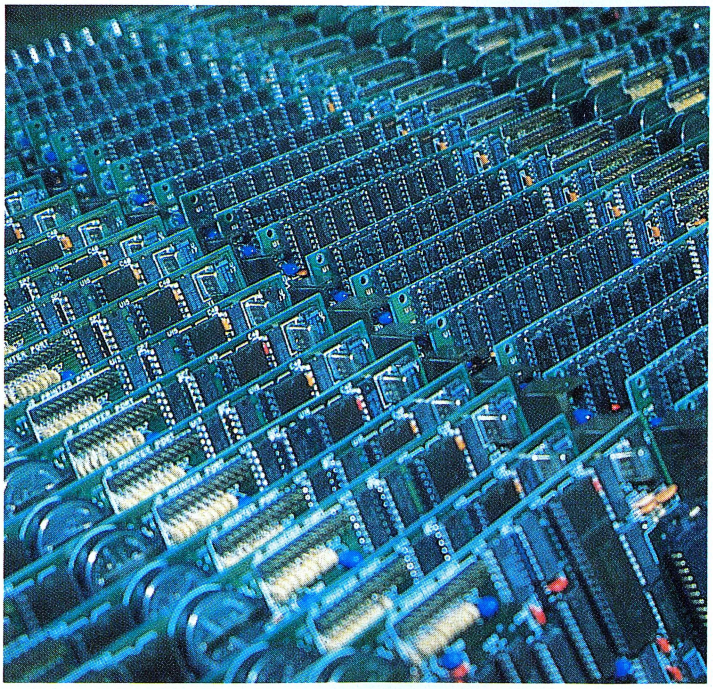
Make Room, Make Room. Until the middle of last year, AST Research (the name was changed from AST Associates late in 1981) consisted of only four people working out of a seven-hundred-sixty-square-foot suite of offices. Fueled by fantastic sales, AST expanded, moved into twenty-seven hundred square feet, hired engineers, and looked at different possibilities of where to go next.

Standard 64K multifunction boards were well on their way to reaching a comfortable market price umbrella of $595. Everybody and his brother was jumping into expanded memory products. It was time to diversify.

Wong, Qureshey, and Yuen focused on communications, believing their collective knowledge of networking and minicomputers would facilitate that logical move. With an experienced and competent group of engineers, AST has released three advanced communications products to date, with more on the way.

According to Yuen, the executive or manager who wants to use a pc to talk to a host computer is the prime target for AST's Advanced Communication Card, AST-3780, and AST-SNA. AST-3780 is a slick IBM 2780/3780 RJE station emulator, allowing the transfer of files between a host computer and the IBM pc. AST-SNA is a powerful package that lets your pc emulate an IBM 3274 Model 51C control unit and is multifunctional—expandable to include IBM 3270 single display station emulation, IBM 3270P cluster option (which allows the attachment of three additional pcs as 3278 devices), and IBM 3770 batch communications terminal emulation.

AST's current communications offerings are the first moves into what Wong calls "more sophisticated products." Requiring software support, expert documentation, and aggressive marketing, products like AST-3780 and the AST-SNA family are a big step up from extra memory and multifunction boards.



AST ships upward of eight thousand boards a week, and that figure keeps rising. All boards go through a rigorous routine of testing and retesting at AST's in-house production department.

The Magic Number. AST's present product strategy identifies three basic areas: communications, multifunction cards, and "other enhancements." The last area's products are the DiskPlus, a hard disk host adapter for Tallgrass Technologies and Corvus Systems, and Expansion Memory, a basic 64K to 256K extra memory card with two software programs, *SuperDrive* and *SuperSpool*.

SuperDrive and *SuperSpool*, an electronic disk emulator program and printer spooling program respectively, are included with all of AST's multifunction cards (MegaPlus, I/O Plus, and Combo-Plus) and are also sold separately. As with everything else they have done so far, AST is providing quality support for these products. Qureshey and Dennis Sonosky (manager of software development) are responsible for that area.

cdex™

Training Programs Make Using Personal Computers Easy.

Cdex™ Training Programs are available for:

The VisiCalc® Program
The WordStar™ Program
The SuperCalc™ Program
The EasyWriter II™ Program

The IBM® Personal Computer
The Apple® *IIe* Personal Computer

Understanding Personal Computers and Their Applications
Managing Your Business with the 1-2-3™ Program
Managing Your Business with the MULTIPLAN™ Program

Even the best application programs and personal computers still take a considerable amount of time to learn how to use.
That is. . .until now!

Cdex Training Programs are computer-assisted training programs that make learning straight-forward and efficient. In an hour, you can master the material on the Cdex disks and begin using the intended product.

It's tough to learn about computers from a book. That's why all Cdex Training Programs are on disk and are:

Highly Interactive...
Creating a dialogue with you and serving as your personal tutor.

Completely Self-paced...
You set your own learning time.

Graphically Oriented...
Remember, a picture is worth a thousand words.

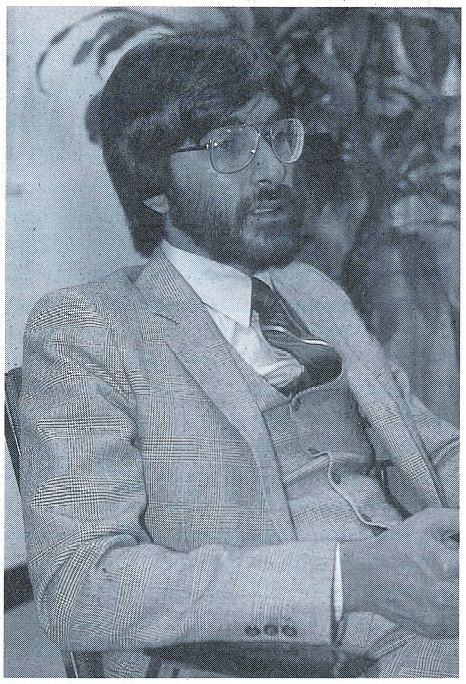
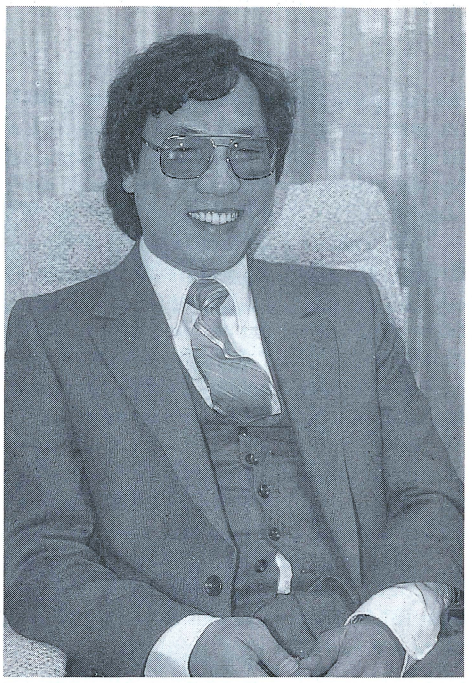
Usable Now and Later...
Clear and concise training and reference programs for the first-time or experienced user.

Cdex Training Programs run on the same Apple® II Plus, Apple® *IIe* or IBM® Personal Computer as your other programs. See how effective a Cdex Training Program can be; ask your dealer for a demonstration.

Cdex™ Training Programs
We make it easy.

cdex™

Cdex Corporation
5050 El Camino Real
Los Altos, CA 94022
415 964 7600

Tom Yuen, AST's vice president in charge of marketing: "We keep our eyes keen on IBM." Safi Qureshey, president, responsible for finance and product development: "We're always looking at growth opportunities, but we want to maintain a high level of expertise." Albert Wong, vice president in charge of production: "We believe in keeping the company in the United States and giving jobs back to Americans."

Four months ago, AST's astronomical growth had forced it to move from the twenty-seven-hundred-square-foot location to its current eleven-thousand-square-foot home in an Irvine industrial park. All three founders know that this arrangement is also temporary; they're now looking for an additional forty thousand square feet. If all goes according to plan, manufacturing will move in two months, with the rest of the company following in a month.

A great deal of AST's future rides on the efficiency with which it gets product to market. Almost half of its current facilities are taken up by the production area, where cards are assembled, disassembled, reassembled, tested, retested, and shipped out the door when deemed reliable.

A walk through AST's current/temporary headquarters reveals a company in convulsive growth. Two-thirds of the offices look settled, with the others waiting for whole groups of people to occupy them. The marketing and sales departments seem in good shape, as well as the technical and postsales support groups.

The manufacturing and testing area is housed in one large room. AST receives the half-assembled boards from its subcontractors and finishes assembling all the components in-house. In the case of a product like ComboPlus, all of the various optional functions, such as the IBM-compatible asynchronous port, the parallel printer port, and the battery-backed clock, are assembled on the board.

Diagnosing Burnouts. AST custom-built its own burn-in racks, which are capable of handling over eight hundred boards a day. The cards are burned in with all their functions and then put through a series of steps before they reach the shipper. First, they must survive a rigorous round of testing at full function with IBM's diagnostic program and then AST's own diagnostic program. If the card is performing properly, it is then modified—functions are physically removed, depending on the customer needs. (Unused components are saved and become option kits, already burned in and tested.) After the unwanted components are removed, the card goes through one more round of diagnostics tests before shipping.

This kind of efficiency, while achieving industry-standard quality control, is something that Wong, Qureshey, and Yuen are very proud of. Manufacturing is an advanced science, and making the jump in less than a year from seven hundred sixty square feet and ten cards a week to eleven thousand square feet, thirty-four in-house manufacturing personnel, and three hundred cards a day is hazardous. The flow of components and parts must be kept tight and reliable. AST's situation is pretty solid at the moment. Wong says that the company has an open credit line with most of its suppliers.

Another aspect of AST's operations that all three are proud of is

GET ORGANIZED

LOCATE FILES AT A GLANCE

Easy to use program features:

- Automatic labelling — just put disk in drive
- Prints files *alphabetically* in columns
- Automatically selects correct type width
- Uses any printer

LABEL KIT
PC DISK ORGANIZER

ONLY $59.95

REQUIRES: IBM*PC, PC DOS & printer

KIT INCLUDES:

- program disk
- 300 hard-to-find 5" pin feed labels
- complete documentation

SEND CHECK OR MONEY ORDER TO:
PC GOODIE COMPANY, Dept. A
15445 Ventura Blvd., Suite 10
Sherman Oaks, CA 91413
(213) 995-8565

Please add $3.00 for shipping and handling. CA residents add $3.90 sales tax
Allow 2-3 weeks for personal checks to clear
Sorry, no C.O.D.

VISA & MASTERCHARGE WELCOME

*IBM is a registered trademark of IBM Corporation

the company's dealer-support services. AST has a conference room for instructing local and visiting dealers. One way the company instructs dealers is through videotape demonstrations. AST currently has six videotapes that it has sent to pc dealers around the country, often with a VCR unit. Yuen says the project has been well received.

"We believe a picture is worth a thousand words when you're trying to explain a product to a dealer," says Yuen. But words are still useful in specific situations. Every eight weeks, AST publishes a newsletter for dealers that explains how to tackle particular problems—like how to connect a certain printer.

Four for the Show. AST premiered four new products at the spring Comdex in Atlanta. According to Yuen, half were communications products and half were multifunction products. One multifunction card features a built-in FCC-approved 1200-baud modem, among other things. Another card, at its maximum, includes a clock, a parallel and a serial port, and a game controller.

In the communications area, AST is hoping to release soon an IBM 5251 terminal emulation program, which allows a pc to talk with IBM's System 34 and System 38 host computers. AST's engineers are working hard right now on various projects, with local-area networking and a turnkey hookup card, both hardware and software, among the most pressing.

Wong, Qureshey, and Yuen are all concerned about the state of the marketplace, as good businessmen should be. Yuen believes that "the present confusion" is traceable to three basic problems. First, there is confusion among dealers and users about what will and will not work with the XT. Second, there is an ever-present lack of knowledge among dealers and customers about what new products can really do. Third, major price slashing has confused both dealers and customers alike.

here's a neat idea!

A DESK-TOP PRINTER STAND FOR YOUR MICRO-COMPUTER SYSTEM

Great Lakes Industries, Inc. offers a well-designed and constructed desk-top printer stand that allows you to store your paper beneath your micro-computer printer. These quality stands allow the paper to feed neatly and evenly, and fit a variety of printers as shown below. Our stands are made from attractive bronze-tone acrylic with smooth, polished edges and corners.

MODEL	IDEAL FOR THESE PRINTERS	DIMENSIONS	UNIT PRICE 1-3	UNIT PRICE 4-+
E5700A	IBM and EBSON MX-80, OKIDATA, etc.	15"w. x 12"d. x 4"h.	$29.95	$25.50
E5700B	EBSON MX-100, CENTRONICS, etc.	23"w. x 12"d. x 4"h.	$39.95	$33.95
E5700C	ZENITH Z-125, H-25, etc.	24"w. x 16"d. x 4"h.	$59.95	$49.95

Prices quoted in U.S. funds. Add $3.00 each for shipping and handling. Shipping for non-U.S.A. customers will be determined at time of filling order.

Great Lakes Industries, Inc. P.O. Box 450, Mt. Clemens, MI 48046

☐ Check enclosed
☐ Visa
☐ MasterCard

MODEL	QUANTITY	PRICE	TOTAL

Account No. _____ Interbank No. _____ Exp. Date _____

Signature _____ Phone _____

Company Name _____

Address _____

City, State, Zip _____

Charge Orders — Call (800) 742-3673
In Michigan Call, (313) 468-1438

AST was lucky, where other multifunction card manufacturers were not. Their cards needed only slight modification to fit into the XT's reduced slot spacing and narrower brackets. According to Yuen, they've modified some of the memory mapping but haven't had to upgrade the baseboard.

AST is now shipping upward of eight thousand boards a month, but the company is still suffering from the image of being new and therefore inexperienced. "The user wants to go with who has been in the market longest—which we have," says Yuen. "They want warranty support and quality, which we also have."

The Image Makers. With the help of an advertising department, AST should whip its image problems in short order, although it's far from invisible in the marketplace now. The company placed slick three-page spreads—that are thoroughly professional-looking and informative—in several industry magazines. Still, AST, like any company in a free economy, is at the mercy of market trends. Currently, AST is reacting to Quadram's price reduction of the Quadboard, a direct competitor with AST's ComboPlus and MegaPlus.

"We have no choice but to lower our price too," says Wong. "There are too many start-ups confusing the market right now and it hurts everybody. Quadram is feeling that and is trying to regain its market share. Tecmar is probably in a similar situation. You're going to see extremely aggressive pricing this year."

Yuen feels that "the market is ready to establish a leader. There was a strong demand for our product at the old price level. We'll lower our price to meet Quadram's and, hopefully, they're paving a way to make AST the leader."

Employee and employer relations are of paramount importance to AST's three top execs. Employees are given incentives, such as insurance and stock options. No one is expected to work late, but no one is discouraged from doing that either. Yuen says that AST has had zero employee turnover, excepting those who left for noncompany-related reasons, such as moving away from the area.

Qureshey says the hardest thing is to lay off an employee, because then it is not the employee's fault. AST is being careful to run a tight operation, not overhiring just to lay off workers later. "We were all employees of other companies ourselves, and know how that can feel," Qureshey says.

"People wonder why we don't go overseas, where labor is cheaper, to manufacture our products," says Wong. "We believe in keeping the company in the United States and giving jobs back to Americans. I think our efficiency is higher."

Chance of a Lifetime. AST is over the $1.5-million-a-month sales mark and it goes up a little more each month. Yuen says projected sales for the year should reach $30 million. And they only started shipping product seventeen months ago. What's the trick? Taking a chance.

"We keep our eyes keen on IBM," says Yuen. "We intend to grow with them in this evolving market and its mobile target." On the one hand, IBM is notoriously slow to deliver product, which is why a whole slew of hardware add-on companies have sprung up. On the other hand, IBM is aggressive in the marketplace and independent vendors have to react fast.

"If you can't adapt fast enough, you're out," Yuen explains. "The ability to make fast decisions and implement changes in a timely fashion is something that doesn't work in a large corporate environment."

The combined characteristics of AST's three founders have made the company an undisputed success. The multifunction-board market may be a bit rocky, but AST is off and running in the communications field. Wong, Qureshey, and Yuen are either geniuses or very lucky. It's more likely the former, because since when is it taking a chance to trust IBM? ▲

CAMEO

HARD DISK SYSTEMS . . .

GOOD NEWS FOR . . .

IBM

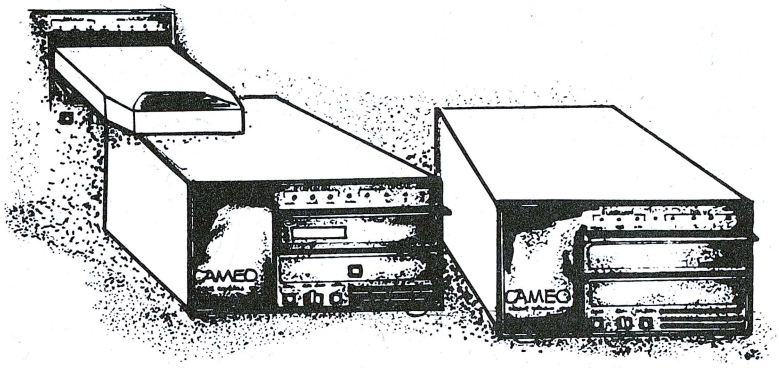
COMPAQ™

EAGLE

VICTOR

AND OTHER LOOK-ALIKE PERSONAL COMPUTER OWNERS!

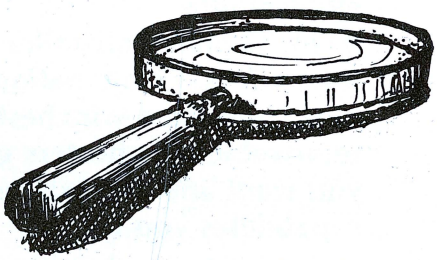
- Cameo Subsystems, with fixed and removable winchesters, offer large capacity, high performance hard disk systems for single user high capacity applications and multiple user applications.
- The Cameo Controller can support up to four drives. Combinations of either 40 megabyte fixed winchesters or 10 megabyte removable winchesters gives you the flexibility you want and the expansion and back up capabilities you need.
- 10 to 160 megabytes on line
- Up to eight computers can be tied into one disk system
- Computers need not all be of the same kind
- The fastest disk system now being offered in the microcomputer world — in single or multiple user configurations
- Many user friendly extra features (most are found on no other hard disk system) ensure reliability in business oriented operations
- Competitive prices
- For more information and pricing|contact your Cameo Dealer or call:



- **CAMEO ELECTRONICS, INC.**
  1626 Clementine
  Anaheim, Ca. 92802
  (714) 535-1682
  TLX 183009 CAMEO ANH
- **CAMEO EUROPE**
  Postfach 227
  8120 Weilheim
  West Germany
  TEL 08802-691
  TLX 59903 CAMEO D

The Trade Marks and Logos of the computer companies referred to above are owned by them respectively and are not the property of CAMEO ELECTRONICS, INC.

If you're looking for productivity from your IBM, you're looking in the wrong place.



Your computer reads disks, not paper.

This magazine may be very interesting to you, but it doesn't mean a thing to your computer . . . because it's in a form your machine can't understand.

So when you see that interesting routine or program, you've got two choices: forget it, or sit there and type it in. If you've ever been through that frustrating, error-prone process, you know why so much good information never gets used.

At MENTOR Computer Services, we think paper is fundamentally the wrong medium to deliver information for your IBM-PC. That's why we created MENTOR magazine. It comes on disk, so you have the information where it really counts: inside your machine.

But that's just the first step. To get real productivity, the power that's latent in your micro has to be tapped by effective software.

That's why you bought some of the best programs you could find . . . like WordStar,† Visicalc,†† 1-2-3 .†††

Consider this, though. Those programs are really languages — better ways to talk to your machine. Give those programs the right instructions, and your PC will do tasks you never thought possible!

We feel that's the real key to productivity: providing the information that unlocks the potential of the software you've invested in.

That's why a large part of each issue consists of programs, procedures, and routines that can be used directly by the important software packages. Experts in every major aspect of computer operation — from hardware to business — will provide you with information that you can copy from the disk, and use right then and there!

MENTOR will enable software producers to furnish you with usable information on their products—applications, enhancements and updates that come right from the source. Selected issues will also include demo versions of major software packages. That way you won't have to rely on someone else's opinion — you can watch that software in action right on your own machine.

The cost? Just $19.97 per issue. If you subscribe now, you'll receive the first six issues for only $99.

Become a charter subscriber to MENTOR, by filling in the coupon, or calling our toll free number.

Call TOLL FREE 1-800-227-3900.
In California, 1-800-632-2122.

Mail to: MENTOR
533 Sutter St., Suite 914
San Francisco, CA 94102

☐ Enroll me as a charter subscriber. I've enclosed $99 for the first six issues.

☐ Send me the first issue. I've enclosed $19.97

I'll pay by

☐ VISA / MasterCard ☐ Check / Money Order

Name _____
Company _____
Address _____
City/St. _____ Zip _____
Card # _____ Exp _____
Signature _____

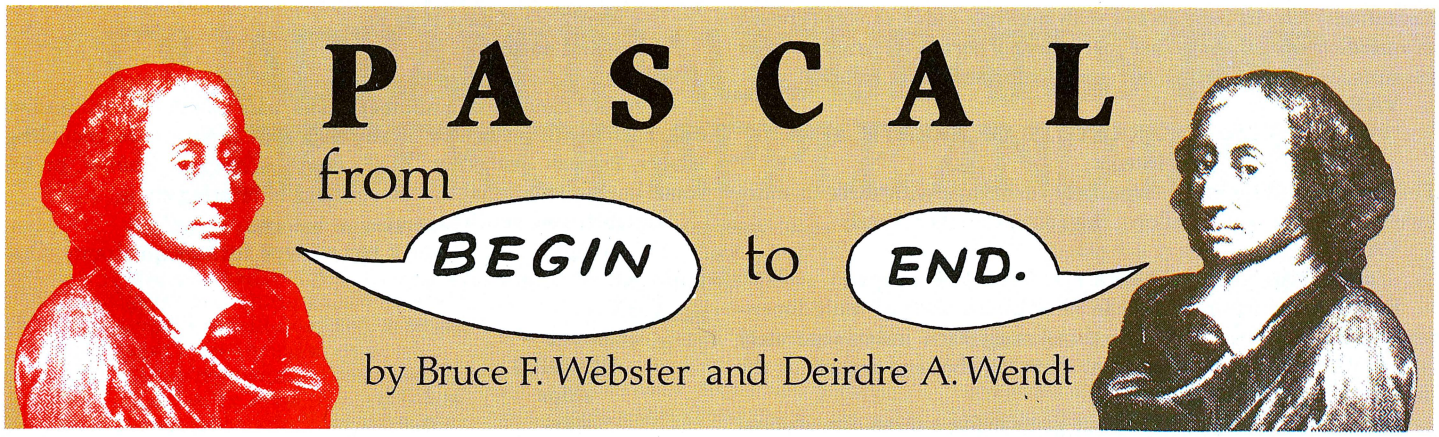
MENTOR®*
. . . the magazine on disk

† WordStar is a trademark of Micropro Corp.

†† Visicalc is a trademark of Visicorp.

††† 1-2-3 is a trademark of Lotus Development Corp.

* registered trademark of MENTOR Computer Services



Well, we lied. Last month, we said this column would be all about files. It became obvious, though, that we really need to talk about a few other things first. So instead of files, we are going to discuss advanced data structures ("advanced" meaning anything not covered so far).

In earlier columns, you've learned about Pascal's four predefined data types—*integer*, *real*, *boolean*, and *char*—as well as user-defined enumerated data types (EDTs). (You will remember that the types *integer*, *boolean*, and *char*, and all EDTs, are collectively known as *scalar* data types.) A variable of one of these types can hold only one value at a time. For example, if we define:

```
VAR
  index          : integer;
```

then *index* has only one specific value at any moment. However, there are situations where you'd like a structure of some sort to hold multiple values, not necessarily of the same type. That's where the advanced data structures come in.

This month we'll give a simple introduction to the three standard data structures: arrays, records, and sets. We'll explain what they are and show how they're used. Next month we'll dig deeper into the fancy stuff.

Arrays. Let's suppose that we are writing a computer game that involves finding and destroying enemy starships. Our playing area is an 8-by-8 grid. Each square in the grid is called a quadrant (don't ask why). Each quadrant contains 0 or more stars, 0 or more enemy ships, and 0 or 1 starbase. Now, with what you've learned in previous columns, how would you represent the grid?

Tough, huh? Now you see why you need arrays. Simply put, an array is a collection of variables of identical type, each one of which may be referenced by a unique index value. For example:

```
VAR
  list           : ARRAY[1..10] OF integer;
```

The array *list* is a collection of ten integer variables—namely, list[1], list[2], list[3], list[4], list[5], list[6], list[7], list[8], list[9], and list[10]. You can use any of those ten variables anywhere you could use any integer variable. Furthermore, the index value doesn't have to be a literal value ('1' through '10'); it can be any expression that resolves to the integer range 1..10. For example, the statement

```
FOR index := 1 TO 10 DO
  list[index] := 0;
```

would set each of those ten variables to 0.

An array definition takes the form

ARRAY[index range] OF data type;

The *index range* can be an implicit or explicit subrange of any scalar data type (*integer*, *char*, *boolean*, EDT)—subject, of course, to implementation restrictions. For example, it is extremely unlikely that you would want to define

```
VAR
  bigarray   : ARRAY[integer] OF char;
```

since that would allocate space for some sixty-five thousand-plus characters (the implied subrange being −32,768..32767 for most microcomputers). Implicit subranges are usually used with EDTs; for example:

```
TYPE
  days          = (sun,mon,tues,wed,thur,fri,sat);
VAR
  regular       : ARRAY[mon..fri] OF integer;
  overtime      : ARRAY[days] OF integer;
  present       : ARRAY[days] OF boolean;
```

The array *regular* has an explicit index range (mon..fri), while the arrays *overtime* and *present* both have an implicit index range (sun..sat).

computer case company
comp case
NOW TOLL FREE
800-848-7548

• IB501 & IB502

Attaché style cases for carrying and protecting a complete computer set-up. Constructed of the highest quality luggage material with saddle stitching. Will accommodate equipment in a fully operational configuration along with manuals, working papers and disks. Never a need to remove equipment from case. Simply remove lid, connect power and operate.

• IB501	IBM Personal Computer	$129
• IB502	IBM Monitor	99
• P401	Paper Tiger Printer (440/445/460)	99
• P402	Centronics 730/737/739	89
• P403	Epson MX70 or MX80	89
• P404	Epson MX100	99
• P405	IDS 560 or Prism Printer	109
• CC80	Matching Attaché Case (5")	85
• CC90	Matching Attaché Case (3")	75
• CC91	Matching Accessory Case	95

computer case company
5650 INDIAN MOUND CT. COLUMBUS, OHIO 43213 (614) 868-9464

The data type of an array can be any data type—*integer, boolean, char, real,* EDT, *array, record, set, pointer,* or even (in some implementations) *file*. In fact, arrays with multiple index ranges (known as *multidimensional arrays*) are just arrays of arrays (of arrays...). For example, we might define our game information as follows:

```
VAR
  stars,ships,bases   : ARRAY[1..8] OF ARRAY[1..8] OF
                        integer;
```

This can get a little tiring, especially for arrays with three or more index ranges, so Pascal allows the following shorthand:

```
VAR
  stars,ships,bases :   ARRAY[1..8,1..8] OF integer;
```

By the same manner, we can refer to elements of multidimensional arrays in two ways: by bracketing each index separately (stars[3][2]) or by bracketing all of them together and separating the indexes with commas (stars[3,2]).

Here's another solution for our game using a three-dimensional array:

```
TYPE
  quaditem          = (stars,ships,bases);
VAR
  sector : ARRAY[1..8,1..8,quaditem] OF integer;
```

Now we would refer to the number of stars in quadrant 3—2 as sector[3,2,stars]. This is a nice approach, but suffers a little from overkill. For example, we're using an integer variable with over sixty-five thousand possible values to tell whether or not there is a base in a given quadrant. One solution would be to create a separate array of type *boolean* for bases; another would be to use records. Let's look at the latter.

Records. The *record* data structure is massively useful, if handled correctly. It allows you to glue together a lot of different data types into a single structure. The basic definition of a record is:

```
RECORD
  < ident1 > : < data type >;
  < ident2 > : < data type >;
  . . . and so on . . .
END;
```

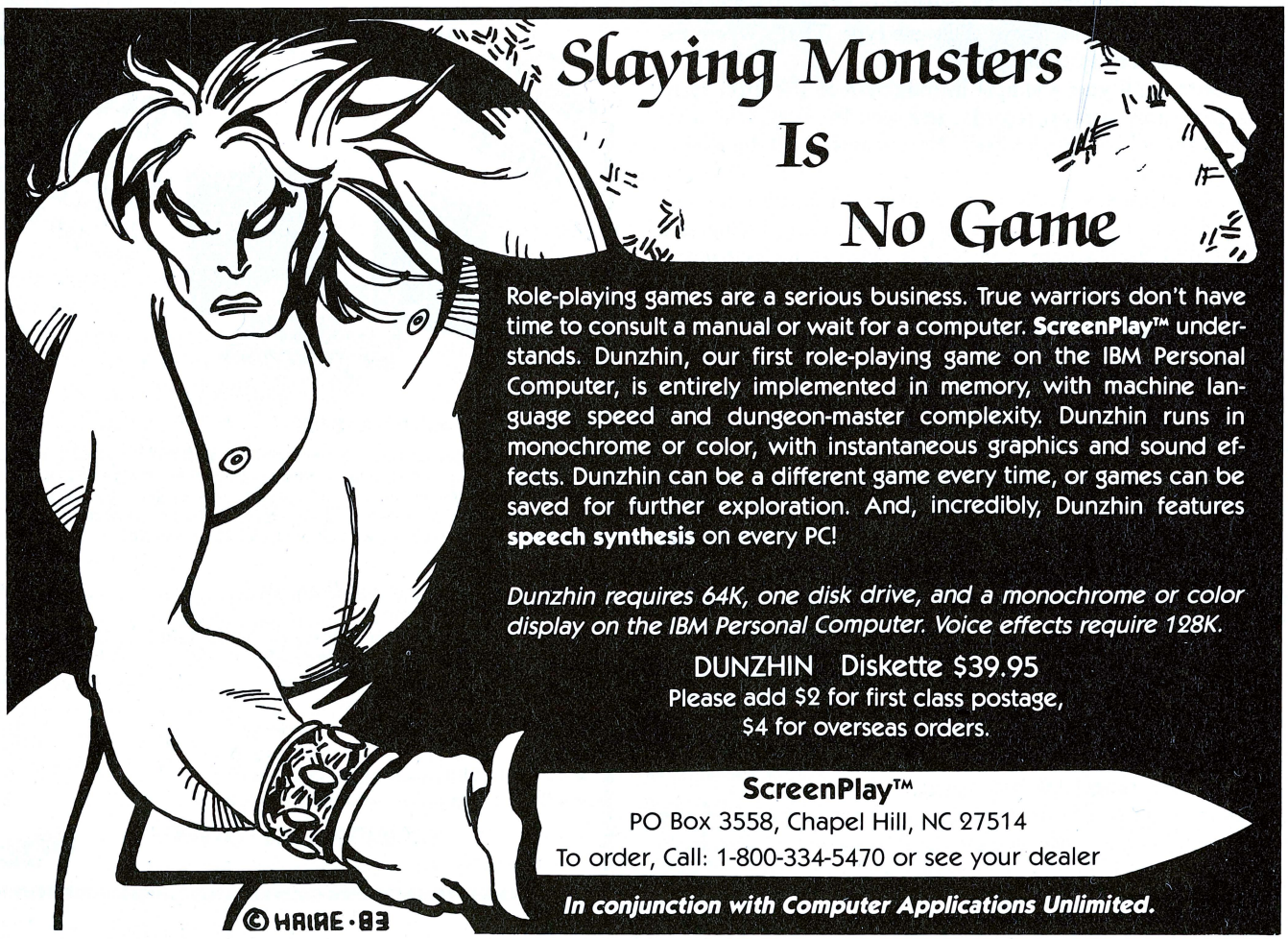
A record consists of a number of *subfields* (ident1, ident2, and so on). Each identifier can be of any data type or structure, including *integer, boolean, real, char,* EDT, *array, record, set, pointer,* or (in some implementations) *file*. A subfield is referred to as

variablename.subfieldname

For example, let's define a record type for our quadrants. One approach we might take is:

```
TYPE
  quadrant =
    RECORD
      ships        : 0..15;
      stars        : 0..9;
      base         : boolean
    END;
VAR
  sector           : ARRAY[1..8,1..8] OF quadrant;
```

Note well that *ships, stars,* and *base* are *not* elements of an enumerated data type as they were in the last array example; they are subfield identifiers for the record type *quadrant*. Accordingly, we would refer to the number of stars in quadrant 3—2 as sector[3,2].stars. Note also that in setting up this record, we've restricted the possible values of the subfields *stars* and *ships* to a very small subrange of integers, and we've changed *base* into a boolean variable. We thus avoid two problems: (1) having our variables take on legal but nonsensical values (such as −34 stars), and (2) using less memory. For example, under UCSD Pascal, our first array named *sector* (3—D, of type integer) would take up 384 bytes, while



QUADRAM™ INAUGURATES THE MERGER OF APPLE AND IBM

Use Apple software in your IBM PC and XT
Who said you can't mix Apples and IBMs? Innovation by Quadram makes it possible with Quadlink™. A simulated Apple computer on a revolutionary new enhancement board. With Quadlink use Apple software in IBM Personal Computers and XTs.

That means most programs designed for the Apple II, Apple II Plus or Apple IIe --including all the educational software and games -- are now compatible with the IBM PC. IBM's sophisticated business capabilities and Apple's educational and entertainment options both in one computer with Quadlink by Quadram.

Easy to use
Quadlink is a board that plugs inside the IBM PC. After it's installed, you're in business. It's like having an Apple 64K computer inside your IBM.

Don't convert or re-format any diskettes. Load the Apple software into the IBM PC and key in one command. That puts you in the Apple mode. And you're ready to go. When ready to switch back, just press a different key. It's that simple.

Keep the extras
Of course, Quadlink allows use of all IBM enhancements while running Apple software. That means printers, buffers, monitors and more.

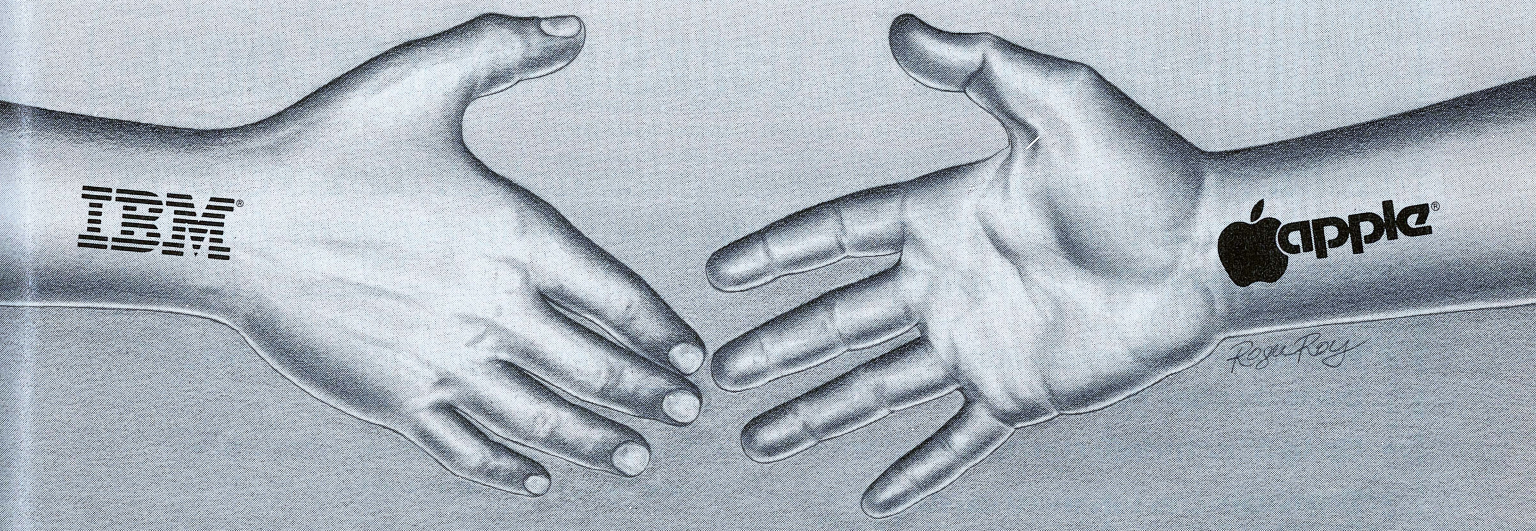
When using a monitor with Quadlink there's no plugging and unplugging cables. And Apple programs will appear on an IBM Monochrome or color monitor just as clearly as on Apple's own screen. Even while working with Apple's high resolution color graphics, quality won't be diminished.

Explore your options
Quadlink, essentially a simulated Apple computer, comes standard with 64K memory. Requiring only one expansion slot, it offers a parallel port designed to operate most printers and parallel devices. A serial port for connecting modems, printers and other serial accessories. And a game port for a variety of entertainment options. And it's both IBM and Apple compatible. There's nothing like Quadlink. And nothing like reliable Quadram Quality to stand behind it.

Beyond the limits
Quadlink by Quadram opens a whole new world of possibilities for IBM PC owners. There's no reason for software limitations any longer. If you like what IBM has to offer but hesitate to give up Apple's educational programs or games, explore Quadlink. And get the best of both worlds.

Quadram Corporation is a division of Intelligent Systems, for over a decade an innovator in personal computer enhancements and color graphics computer peripherals. Quadram products are available only at authorized dealers worldwide.

Visit one and ask for a demonstration of Quadlink by Quadram. Check on our other enhancements too, including Quadboard, the original multifunction board for the IBM PC. We think you'll like what we've discovered.



QUADRAM
CORPORATION
An Intelligent Systems Company

4357 Park Drive / Norcross, Ga. 30093 / (404) 923-6666
TWX 810-766-4915 (QUADRAM NCRS)

Apple is a trademark of Apple Computer Company. IBM is a trademark of International Business Machines Corp.

Available for delivery late June.

the one we just looked at would take up only 128 bytes.

Sets. There are times when we want to test a scalar variable (*integer*, *char*, *boolean*, EDT) to see if its current value belongs to a set or collection of values. For example, suppose we want to write a subroutine that will write out a prompt for the user and then accept and return only a character belonging to an allowable set of characters. Using what you know now, how would you do that?

If you're really clever, you might come up with something like this:

```
TYPE
  charset          : ARRAY[char] OF boolean;
VAR
  okset            : charset;
```

You could then set each location in *okset* to the appropriate value (*true* or *false*) and use that to check the characters read in. Unfortunately, this approach tends to eat up lots of memory. Fortunately, it's not necessary. Pascal handles sets for you.

A *set* can be defined for any scalar data type, although, as before, care must be taken in how the set is defined (a *set of integer*, for example, would be 8,192 bytes in size). Let's use our preceding example and write a subroutine that we will call getchar:

```
PROGRAM chartest;
TYPE
  charset          = SET OF char;
  (* we will assume the data type string *)
VAR
  cmd              : char;
PROCEDURE getchar(VAR ch : char; msg : string; okset :
                    charset);
  (* purpose        write msg; read ch; return only when ch is
                    in okset *)
BEGIN
  REPEAT
    write(msg); readln(ch)
  UNTIL ch IN okset
END; (* of PROC getchar *)
(*  main body of chartest *)
BEGIN
  REPEAT
    getchar(cmd,'CHARTEST > S)peak, C)ount, Q)uit: ',
            ['S','C','Q']);
    CASE cmd OF
      'S'   : writeln('Woof! Woof!');
      'C'   : writeln('1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10')
    END
  UNTIL cmd = 'Q'
END. (* of PROG chartest *)
```

The boolean expression *ch in okset* returns *true* if and only if the value of *ch* is in the set *okset*. For our example, *ch* must be 'S', 'C', or 'Q' in order for this expression to be *true*. Note that this expression will be *false* when *ch* is 's', 'c', or 'q', since lower-case letters are not the same as upper-case letters.

Closing Comments. Having given a basic introduction to arrays, records, and sets, we'll call it quits for this month. Play around with what we've discussed and see what you can come up with. Next month, we'll get into some more advanced features of these data types and give a complete program using them.

One last comment: If you have any questions about what we've covered, requests for new topics to cover, or any other feedback (within the limits of good taste), please feel free to write to us c/o *Softalk for the IBM*. We'd especially like to know what you've liked and what you haven't. Thanks. ▲

AT LAST! MULTIPLE USERS UNDER PC-DOS!

MultiLink. *A unique software system which turns PC-DOS into a multi-user multi-tasking operating system for the IBM Personal Computer.*

- Inexpensive terminals attach to serial ports on your PC
- Up to 5 (or more!) concurrent users
- Terminals can run most existing non-graphics software designed for PC-DOS
- Full-screen support for appropriate CRTs
- Minimal overhead, no dedicated disk
- Shared access and update of disks & files
- Supports Basic, Pascal, and other development languages
- Compatible with hard or floppy disks
- Free host communications software supports public dial-in
- Available NOW! Call or write for information kit

THE SOFTWARE LINK, INCORPORATED • 6700 23-B ROSWELL ROAD • ATLANTA, GEORGIA 30328 • 404/255-1254

You didn't buy a toy computer . . . Don't settle for a toy Accounting Program!

If you are tired of "toy" accounting programs and you want real accounting programs designed by real businessmen and tested in a real business environment then you want the new Accounts Receivable and Accounts Payable programs from Intelligent Software.

Sure, everybody claims to be the best, have the most features and the most reliable program . . . . but we know you can't find better software than ours . . . and we're prepared to prove it.

Here's What To Do . . .

Fill out the attached coupon to order your Intelligent Software programs directly from us. Then try it on your own IBM-PC* and judge for yourself how fast and easy it is to learn and use . . . A word of warning, though. You'd better not let your bookkeeper try it . . . unless you've already decided to keep it!

Free No Risk Offer

Try our Accounts Receivable/Accounts Payable software absolutely free for 30 days. If, at the end of that time, you are not completely satisfied that it is everything we say it is and more then return it for a full, no-strings-attached refund.

Easiest To Learn . . . Easiest To Use

Nobody wants to memorize complicated codes or constantly have to look them up. With programs from Intelligent Software, the screen always reminds you how to do what you want. These programs will turn an inexperienced operator with no knowledge of computers and little knowledge of accounting into a first class bookkeeper in a matter of hours.

Accounts Receivable . . .

A complete invoicing and monthly statement package that keeps track of current and old accounts. A complete record is maintained for each customer, and the current status of each account is instantly available. The program prints invoices, statements, aging reports and can be keyed to print each salesperson's sales for a given period. It also maintains sales tax information and complete accounting detail.

You can post a single invoice or 50 invoices at a time. The program automatically tests for balance before posting to the ledger.

List price $220.00 plus $7.50 postage and handling.

Accounts Payable . . .

A complete payables system that will print checks using standard forms, display the current status of each vendor, print aging reports, lists of vendors and cash requirements (by due or discount date). Maintains complete accounting detail. It not only makes it easy to maintain your records — it's a superb cash management tool.

List price $220.00 plus $7.50 postage and handling.

We Service What We Sell!

Intelligent Software programs come with a comprehensive, easy-to-use training manual. But if you have questions, we're as close as the post office or the phone. We'll be happy to help.

Special — Money Saving Offer!!

Order within 10 days and get a 10% discount on your first program. That's . . . $22.00 you've saved . . . You Pay Only $198.00 . . . plus $7.50 postage and handling.

But Wait!! . . . Save Even More.

Order both programs now and we'll give you an additional 5% discount . . . that's a total savings of $66.00!! . . . You pay only $374.00 . . . plus $7.50 each for postage and handling.

Don't Delay! Take Advantage of this No Risk Money Saving Offer Today!!

The Intelligent Software accounting system is completely modular — each module will work independently or with other modules to form a complete, custom accounting system.

Additional modules available:

General Ledger . . July 1983
Payroll . . . . . July 1983
Inventory . . . . . July 1983

Minimum System requirements: IBM-PC, 64k, two disk drives, 80 column display, 80 column printer.

INTELIGENT SOFTWARE

Dept ST5
4847 Mercury Street
San Diego, CA 92111
(619) 565-1236

©Copyright 1983 Intelligent Software
*IBM-PC is a registered trademark of IBM Corporation.

Please rush my Intelligent Software package(s) to me, today. I understand if I am not completely satisfied I can return the package(s) within 30 days and receive a full refund.

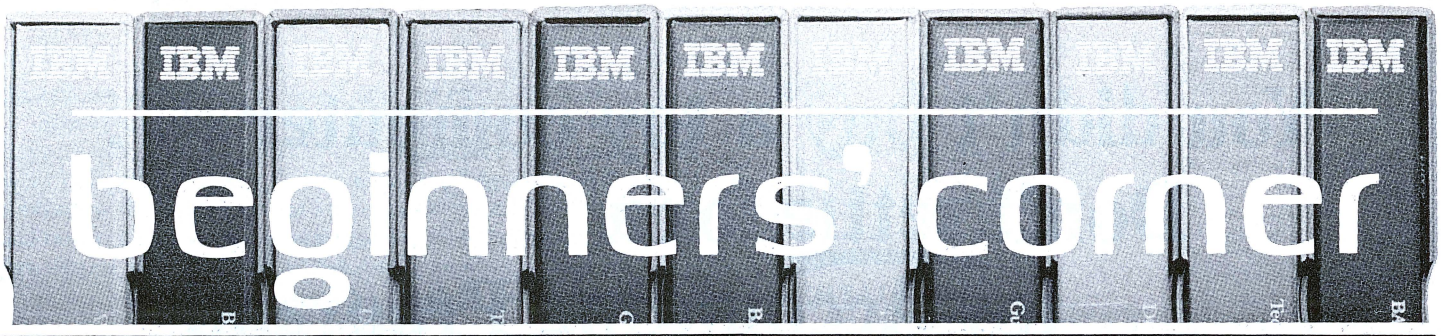
We accept Check, Money Order, MasterCard and VISA.

QTY.	DESCRIPTION	PRICE
	Accounts Payable	$
	Accounts Receivable	$
	Payable & Receivable	$
	Subtotal	$
	CA customers add 6% sales tax	$
	Add $7.50 postage & handling for ea. pkg.	$
	Grand Total	$

*DISCOUNT OFFERS GOOD UNTIL MAY 31, 1983.

PLEASE PRINT

Name _____
Company Name _____
Address _____
City/State/Zip _____
Phone (_____) _____
☐ MasterCard ☐ VISA
Account No. _____
Expiration Date _____
Signature _____



beginners' corner

by Craig Stinson

This month we're going to plunge in for a closer look at the ASCII code. ASCII, you'll recall, is something of a universal language among different brands and types of computers (one of the few such points of standardization that exist in the computer world). The only significant brand of computer that doesn't handle text by means of the ASCII code is IBM—and only certain of the pc's larger siblings at that.

The purpose of ASCII is to convert all the various alphanumeric symbols to numbers, so that the computer can store, evaluate, compare, sort, transmit, and otherwise manipulate them. Each letter of the alphabet (both capital and lower case), each punctuation symbol, and each of the common arithmetic symbols gets its own unique ASCII number. A few other mysterious characters get ASCII values as well.

How many numbers do we need in order to provide each character with its own identity? Well, the alphabet consumes fifty-two, and the numbers another ten. We need ten more for the symbols you get when you hold down a shift key and type number keys. That makes seventy-two so far. If you check out the white keys in the center of your keyboard (excluding the number keypad for the time being), you should find another twenty-three characters in need of codes (don't omit the space bar; spaces have to be coded just as visible characters do).

Now we're up to ninety-five, and before we go any farther in this discussion we need to digress, to take another quick look at the way numbering systems work.

In decimal counting, if you have a single digit, that digit may represent any of ten values—0 through 9. Adding a second digit increases the range of possibilities by a factor of 10; that is, with two digits you can write any of a hundred numbers, 0 through 99. A third digit increases the scope by another factor of 10, and so on. To generalize, in the base ten, or decimal, numbering system, the number of unique values possible with a given number of digits is equal to 10 raised to the power of the number of digit positions available. And the highest number that can be expressed with a given number of digits is equal to 10 to the power of the number of digits—minus 1.

Substitute 2 for 10 and you can make the same assertions about the binary system. The number of unique values available is equal to 2 to the power of the number of binary digits (bits) in use. And the highest number that can be expressed is equal to the power of the number of bits—minus 1.

Now the first eight powers of 2 (starting at 2 to the first power) are 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, and 256. A moment ago we found that our alphanumeric character set amounted to some ninety-five unique characters—squarely between 2 to the sixth power and 2 to the seventh.

So to encode that character set we need seven bits, but we won't use quite all the possibilities those seven bits afford. Computers, as you know, generally shuffle information around in bundles of eight bits (the eight-bit unit generally being called a *byte*). Memory locations on microcomputers all hold eight bits, and the pathways over which data is transferred, on most microcomputers (including your pc), are eight bits wide. So a seven-bit ASCII code on a machine oriented to eight-bit quantities makes for a certain superfluity of resources. What should we do with the eighth bit?

On most microcomputers and with most programs, the eighth bit is used as a signal of some sort. For example, when you press a key on an Apple II, the Apple sends the ASCII value of the key pressed to a certain memory location. At the same time it *sets* the eighth bit (makes it a 1) to tell whatever program is running that someone has pressed a key. As soon as the program acts upon the key pressed, it *clears* the eighth bit (makes it a 0), so that an instant later, when it comes time to examine that memory location again, it will know whether the value held there represents the same key newly pressed or simply information already processed.

Extended ASCII Code. The IBM Personal Computer takes a different approach. It uses an extended ASCII code with 256 distinct values; in other words, it uses an eight-bit extended ASCII code.

The character set on your pc includes—in addition to the standard English-language characters, numbers, and punctuation symbols—a variety of accented characters, certain Greek letters, some math symbols other than the simple arithmetic operation signs, and a number of block graphic "characters." All of these extra symbols are represented by ASCII values between 128 and 255—in other words, by ASCII numbers with the so-called *high bit* set.

This extended character set on the pc accomplishes a couple of important things. First, it greatly simplifies the work of programmers developing applications for markets outside the United States. It means, for example, that a programmer can write a word processor specifically for a language like French or German without having to resort to such clumsy measures as backing up apostrophes or quote marks over vowels in order to get accents or umlauts. It also makes it easier to create text processors specialized for scientific or mathematical documents. The customary way of dealing with non-English characters on microcomputers is to draw them in hi-res graphics, but that approach takes a lot more programming and eats up a lot more memory. If you want to write a word processor for Japanese or Arabic on the pc, you'll still have to do it in graphics, but the European languages at least (except for Russian and Greek) are covered.

The other big advantage of the pc's extended character set is the capability it affords for doing primitive graphics.

One of the frustrations about the design of this machine is its provision for two separate display adapters—one monochrome, the other for color and graphics. One is tempted to believe that IBM initially planned to produce a computer without graphics functionality and only added the graphics somewhere in mid-design—perhaps at the urging of outsiders who had been in the microcomputer field awhile.

In any case, it's clear that IBM wanted to provide at least a crude picture capability for those who would be using their machines primarily for text and who would hence decline the opportunity to buy a graphics adapter. The text graphics characters, which occupy the ASCII region from 176 to 233, consist of various kinds of blocks, border elements, corner pieces, and so on. Primitive, to be sure, but they do make for pretty menus and allow programmers to write rudimentary games for the monochrome adapter.

Your keyboard doesn't have keys for accented letters or graphics elements, so how do you make these extended-ASCII characters appear on your screen? There are several ways.

First, programs can do whatever they want with keyboard input. The usual course of events is that when you hit a key the ROM-resident keyboard-handling routines put the ASCII number equivalent to the key you've hit into a certain register in the microprocessor (the AL register), and whatever program you're running retranslates that ASCII number back into the character you've typed for purposes of display on-screen. In order to get the character on-screen, the program you're running has to

character equivalent to any ASCII number by holding down the alt key, typing the number in question on the number keypad, and then releasing the alt key. You have to use the number keypad; the number keys at the top of the keyboard won't do it. If you type a number greater than 256, the computer will divide your number by 256 and then act as though the number you typed was the remainder after that division. In other words, if you hold alt and type 612, the computer will divide 612 by 256, coming up with 2 and a remainder of 100; then it will throw away the 2 and give you the same character you would get by typing alt-100 (this arithmetic operation, incidentally, is called taking your number *mod* 256).

Then type *run* or hit F2. You'll notice some strange things happening at the beginning of the program run; these will be explained presently. You'll also find that the program output quickly scrolls off the screen. To slow the program down, add the following two lines (you don't need to retype the others):

```
33 FOR PAUSE = 1 TO 500
36 NEXT PAUSE
```

You may also, of course, type control-numlock while the program is running to suspend its output. And if you're feeling a little ambitious, read "The Scroll-Lock Mystery Solved" (page 38 of this issue), follow the instructions there to create and run the program Scrollk.com, and then you'll be able to the scroll-lock key to control the flow of gram output on your screen.

A Few Words about WordStar. Try the number-keypad procedure, using high CII values, from within various applica- n programs and see what kind of results get. You'll probably find that some pro- ms allow you to type the full IBM char- er set and others do not. *WordStar*, for mple, doesn't.

WordStar was written originally to run a lot of different computers that use the /M-80 operating system. All of these /M machines work with the standard

softalk

for the IBM Personal Computer

1st year free to IBM Personal Computer owners.

PC Serial # _____

Name _____

Address _____

City/State _____ Zip _____

☐ I don't own an IBM pc, but I would still like to subscribe.

☐ Visa ☐ MasterCard Expiration _____

Signature _____

Regular Subscription Rates: $24 per year.

WE MUST HAVE YOUR SERIAL NUMBER TO PROCESS FREE SUBSCRIPTIONS

A SOFTALK PUBLICATION

LOSION

computer novice or a veteran M Personal Computer has some- owners. Each issue has news, rograms, a column for begin- -open letter section, and more. irst year to IBM pc owners.

half times.

A hundred years later, the world is feeling the effects of another kind of explosion—the personal computer explosion. Although benign, the explosive power of the pc phenomenon is no less than that which shredded Krakatoa. Its effect is being felt throughout the world and will circle the globe many thousands of times.

It's no surprise that IBM has become a major force in the pc explosion.

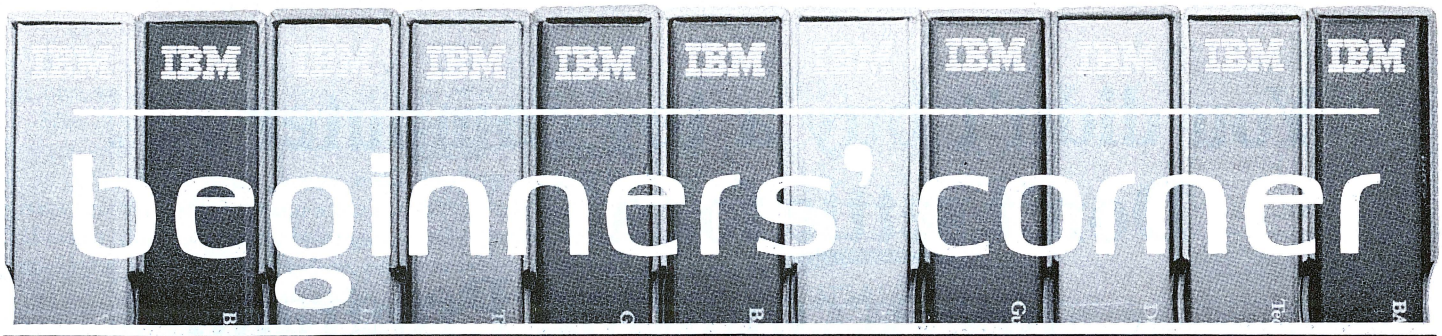
And, as the winds of change circle the earth, it's not surprising to have a magazine like *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer* appear on the scene. As more people are affected by the pc phenomenon, there is an increasing need for information.

Simply send us your name, address, and IBM pc serial number and we'll send you twelve issues of *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer* free of charge.

You too can take part in the pc explosion by telling a friend about *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer*. If you send in the name, address, and pc serial number of anyone you know who is not already receiving the magazine, we'll send you free the back issue of your choice. All back issues are still available (June 1982 through April 1983), but supplies are limited.

Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer
Box 60, Department I
North Hollywood, CA 91603

IBM Personal Computer is a trademark of International Business Machines.



beginners' corner

by Craig Stinson

This month we're going to plunge in for a closer look at the ASCII code. ASCII, you'll recall, is something of a universal language among different brands and types of computers (one of the few such points (standardization that exist in the comput world). The only significant brand of con puter that doesn't handle text by means (the ASCII code is IBM—and only certain (the pc's larger siblings at that.

The purpose of ASCII is to convert a the various alphanumeric symbols to num bers, so that the computer can store, eva uate, compare, sort, transmit, and otherwis manipulate them. Each letter of the alph bet (both capital and lower case), each pun tuation symbol, and each of the commo arithmetic symbols gets its own uniqu ASCII number. A few other mysteriou characters get ASCII values as well.

How many numbers do we need in ord to provide each character with its own ider tity? Well, the alphabet consumes fifty-tw and the numbers another ten. We need te more for the symbols you get when you hol down a shift key and type number key That makes seventy-two so far. If you chec out the white keys in the center of your ke board (excluding the number keypad for th time being), you should find anothe twenty-three characters in need of cod (don't omit the space bar; spaces have to b coded just as visible characters do).

Now we're up to ninety-five, and before we go any farther in this discussion we need to digress, to take another quick look at the way numbering systems work.

In decimal counting, if you have a single digit, that digit may represent any of ten values—0 through 9. Adding a second digit increases the range of possibilities by a factor of 10; that is, with two digits you can write any of a hundred numbers, 0 through 99. A third digit increases the scope by another factor of 10, and so on. To generalize, in the base ten, or decimal, numbering system, the number of unique values possible with a given number of digits is equal to 10 raised to the power of the number of digit positions available. And the highest number that can be expressed with a given number of digits is equal to 10 to the power of the number of digits—minus 1.

Substitute 2 for 10 and you can make the same assertions about the binary system. The number of unique values available is equal to 2 to the power of the number of bi-

NO POSTAGE NECESSARY IF MAILED IN THE UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY CARD
FIRST CLASS PERMIT NO. 673 NO. HOLLYWOOD, CA

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

softalk
for the IBM Personal Computer

P.O. Box 60
North Hollywood, California 91603

ASCII value of the key pressed to a certain memory location. At the same time it *sets* the eighth bit (makes it a 1) to tell whatever program is running that someone has pressed a key. As soon as the program acts upon the key pressed, it *clears* the eighth bit (makes it a 0), so that an instant later, when it comes time to examine that memory location again, it will know whether the value held there represents the same key newly pressed or simply information already processed.

Extended ASCII Code. The IBM Personal Computer takes a different approach. It uses an extended ASCII code with 256 distinct values; in other words, it uses an eight-bit extended ASCII code.

The character set on your pc includes—in addition to the standard English-language characters, numbers, and punctuation symbols—a variety of accented characters, certain Greek letters, some math symbols other than the simple arithmetic operation signs, and a number of block graphic "characters." All of these extra symbols are represented by ASCII values between 128 and 255—in other

sign of this machine is its provision for two separate display adapters—one monochrome, the other for color and graphics. One is tempted to believe that IBM initially planned to produce a computer without graphics functionality and only added the graphics somewhere in mid-design—perhaps at the urging of outsiders who had been in the microcomputer field awhile.

In any case, it's clear that IBM wanted to provide at least a crude picture capability for those who would be using their machines primarily for text and who would hence decline the opportunity to buy a graphics adapter. The text graphics characters, which occupy the ASCII region from 176 to 233, consist of various kinds of blocks, border elements, corner pieces, and so on. Primitive, to be sure, but they do make for pretty menus and allow programmers to write rudimentary games for the monochrome adapter.

Your keyboard doesn't have keys for accented letters or graphics elements, so how do you make these extended-ASCII characters appear on your screen? There are several ways.

First, programs can do whatever they want with keyboard input. The usual course of events is that when you hit a key the ROM-resident keyboard-handling routines put the ASCII number equivalent to the key you've hit into a certain register in the microprocessor (the AL register), and whatever program you're running retranslates that ASCII number back into the character you've typed for purposes of display on-screen. In order to get the character on-screen, the program you're running has to call upon the character-display information stored in another part of ROM. There's no reason why that program can't get one number out of the AL register and send a different number to the character-generator part of ROM. You could provide your program with a translation table that would cause ordinary alphanumeric keys to produce characters corresponding to high ASCII values (128 and above).

But that's a little clumsy if all you want to do is see what characters correspond to what numbers. There are much simpler ways. In Basic or in DOS, you can see the character equivalent to any ASCII number by holding down the alt key, typing the number in question on the number keypad, and then releasing the alt key. You have to use the number keypad; the number keys at the top of the keyboard won't do it. If you type a number greater than 256, the computer will divide your number by 256 and then act as though the number you typed was the remainder after that division. In other words, if you hold alt and type 612, the computer will divide 612 by 256, coming up with 2 and a remainder of 100; then it will throw away the 2 and give you the same character you would get by typing alt-100 (this arithmetic operation, incidentally, is called taking your number *mod* 256).

Another way to put the high-ASCII characters on-screen is to get into Basic (any Basic—cassette, advanced, or disk) and type *print chr$* followed, in parentheses, by the number of the character you desire. Typing *print chr$(146)* (and hitting enter), for example, will get you a cap AE ligature.

If you want to see the whole character set, try entering the following little program:

```
10 CLS
20 FOR N = 0 TO 255
30 PRINT N, CHR$(N)
40 NEXT N
```

Then type *run* or hit F2. You'll notice some strange things happening at the beginning of the program run; these will be explained presently. You'll also find that the program output quickly scrolls off the screen. To slow the program down, add the following two lines (you don't need to retype the others):

```
33 FOR PAUSE = 1 TO 500
36 NEXT PAUSE
```

You may also, of course, type control-numlock while the program is running to suspend its output. And if you're feeling a little ambitious, read "The Scroll-Lock Mystery Solved" (page 38 of this issue), follow the instructions there to create and run the program Scrollk.com, and then you'll be able to use the scroll-lock key to control the flow of program output on your screen.

A Few Words about WordStar. Try the alt-number-keypad procedure, using high ASCII values, from within various application programs and see what kind of results you get. You'll probably find that some programs allow you to type the full IBM character set and others do not. *WordStar*, for example, doesn't.

WordStar was written originally to run on a lot of different computers that use the CP/M-80 operating system. All of these CP/M machines work with the standard

KEEP UP WITH THE PC EXPLOSION

One hundred years ago this month, a small island practically disappeared from the face of the earth. A little after 10:00 a.m. on May 30, 1883, eleven square miles of the island Krakatoa collapsed, causing an explosion that sent forth a tempest of wind that eventually circled the earth seven and a half times.

A hundred years later, the world is feeling the effects of another kind of explosion—the personal computer explosion. Although benign, the explosive power of the pc phenomenon is no less than that which shredded Krakatoa. Its effect is being felt throughout the world and will circle the globe many thousands of times.

It's no surprise that IBM has become a major force in the pc explosion.

And, as the winds of change circle the earth, it's not surprising to have a magazine like *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer* appear on the scene. As more people are affected by the pc phenomenon, there is an increasing need for information.

Whether you're a computer novice or a veteran user, *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer* has something for all IBM pc owners. Each issue has news, reviews, tutorials, programs, a column for beginners, contests, a wide-open letter section, and more. And it's free for the first year to IBM pc owners.

Simply send us your name, address, and IBM pc serial number and we'll send you twelve issues of *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer* free of charge.

You too can take part in the pc explosion by telling a friend about *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer*. If you send in the name, address, and pc serial number of anyone you know who is not already receiving the magazine, we'll send you free the back issue of your choice. All back issues are still available (June 1982 through April 1983), but supplies are limited.

Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer
Box 60, Department I
North Hollywood, CA 91603

IBM Personal Computer is a trademark of International Business Machines.

seven-bit ASCII set. So *WordStar* does something creative with the high bit; it uses it to signal the last character of a word followed by an expandable space—that is, a space that *WordStar* regards as expandable for the purpose of right-margin justification.

The IBM pc translation of *WordStar* is not essentially different from the original CP/M-80 version, and it does the same number with the high bit. So if you create a document in *WordStar* (in the program's document mode) and then take a look at the file from DOS (by entering the DOS command type followed by the name of your *WordStar* file), you'll see a lot of strange characters lurking in your file. *WordStar* will have taken the last character in most of your words and bumped its normal ASCII value by 128 (by setting the high bit). Those characters will look prefectly normal from within *WordStar* but will look like Greek (some of them literally) in almost any other context.

Conversely, if while in *WordStar* you use the alt key to enter some characters with ASCII numbers above 128, what you'll get on-screen will not be the same as what you get by this procedure when you're in Basic or DOS. *WordStar* will display the character whose ASCII number is 128 less than what you think you've asked for. This is, of course, frustrating if you really want that cap AE ligature for your Latin essay.

On the other hand, even if *WordStar* could give you the full IBM pc character set, your printer might not know what to do with it. Most printers are programmed (like your computer, they have a character set stored in a ROM chip) to respond only to the standard ASCII values. Most dot-matrix printers, the Epson/IBM models included, have graphics routines that will copy anything on your screen—pictures and/or nonstandard text included. But it takes special software instructions to activate these routines; the normal print procedures employed by most word processing programs speak to the text character set of your printer, not to its graphics facilities.

If you want to see what your printer makes of IBM's character set, modify that little Basic program of a few paragraphs back, substituting *lprint* for *print*. If you put the two *pause* lines in the original program, take them out by typing 33 and hitting enter and then typing 36 and hitting enter. Now run the program and see what happens. Don't worry; you can't harm the hardware. You will, however, find that your printer behaves even more strangely through the first thirty-two ASCII values than your screen did.

If your printer runs off about twenty lines and then seems to quit, you'll probably need to do the following: reboot your machine by typing control-alt-delete; then retype the program thus:

```
10 FOR N = 32 TO 127
20 LPRINT N,CHR$(N)
30 NEXT N
40 FOR M = 160 TO 255
50 LPRINT M,CHR$(M)
60 NEXT M
```

Running this version of the program will get you around those pesky first thirty-two characters (and their brethren with the high bit set) and let you look at your printer's rendition of the IBM ASCII.

Those first thirty-two characters are called control characters. The best way to understand their function is to remember that computers constantly have to process instructions as well as data, and they have to be able to distinguish between the two. This is true of peripheral equipment—such as your CRT screen, printer, or modem—no less than of the microprocessor.

When your computer is engaged in displaying information on your screen, essentially what it's doing is transmitting a stream of ASCII values to the CRT (actually to the display adapter, which communicates with your monitor). How should it tell the screen to start a new line, move to its home position, or clear itself?

The simplest solution is to mix the orders right in with the text, by setting aside a range of ASCII values to act as commands. The commands, called control characters, are usually achieved at the keyboard by holding down the control key and then striking some other key.

There are a couple of exceptions; the escape key, which sends an ASCII value of 27, is generally considered a control character, although you don't have to do anything with the control key to get it. And some of the control characters are used so often that keyboard designers provide single-key equivalents: In nearly all contexts, for example, hitting the enter key does the same thing as typing control−M. Try it.

The reason your printer behaved strangely when you read it the full ASCII series in sequence is that you've sent it all sorts of commands—in an uncustomary context, at that. Depending on the design of your printer, you probably made it beep when it got to ASCII 7, skip a line at ASCII 10 and 13, go into condensed mode somewhere in the series (if it has a condensed mode), and perhaps give up in despair at handling so many arbitrary and possibly contradictory requests.

Some of the control characters, like control-C and control-M, have fairly standard meanings in a lot of different contexts; others do not. We'll have more to say on this subject next time. ▲

The "smart" terminal emulator...

Why pay $125 to $200 for a communications package for your IBM Personal Computer† which just emulates a "dumb" terminal when you can buy a SMARTERM™ /PC terminal emulator from Persoft, Inc. for as little as $50?*

SMARTERM/PC terminal Emulators include:
- full emulation of terminal characteristics up to the limits of standard IBM PC hardware
- 75 to 9600 baud operation with x-on/x-off support
- integral, high-speed, bi-directional, protocol-free ASCII file transfer
- optional error-free protocol which allows ASCII and binary files to be transferred between PC's or between the PC and the host computer (requires user programming on host computer
- multiple "user-friendly" setup configurations
- user-defined softkeys for simplified auto-dial and log-in support
- full local printer support
- runs under PC DOS operating system using monochrome or 80-column color monitor
- keytop chart (fits on keyboard), reference card, and user manual
- 30-day money-back guarantee if not satisfied with program

Currently available for:
- VT100, VT101, VT102, and VT51 terminals Price: $58–$150*
- Dasher D100, D200 terminals Price: $50–$125*

Coming soon:
- TeleVideo 950 terminal
- VT125 graphics terminal

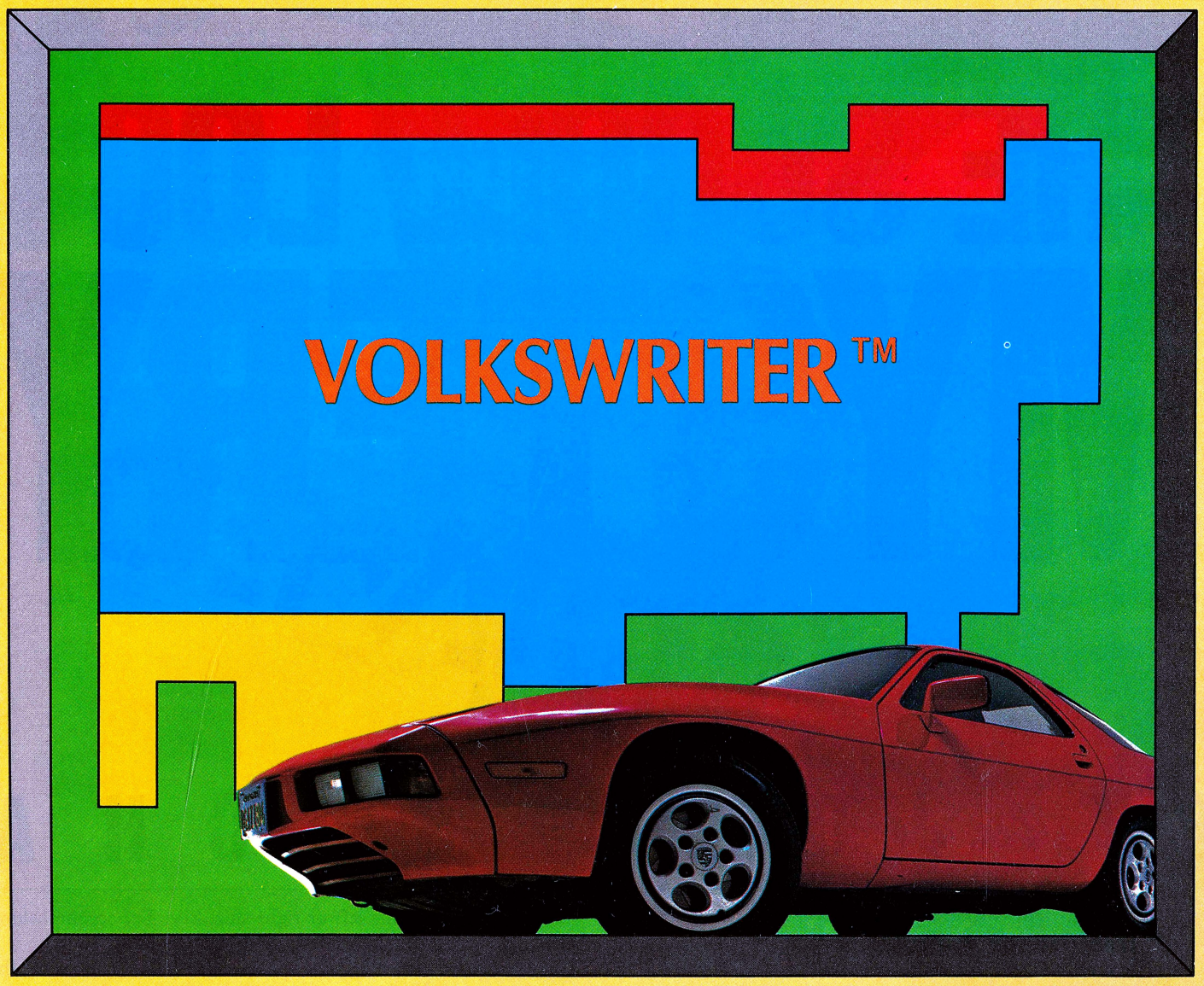
Available through your local computer dealer or directly from Persoft, Inc.

*depending on quantity
†Also runs on Compaq® and Columbia® computer systems.

SMARTERM is a trademark of Persoft, Inc.
VT is a trademark of Digital Equipment Corporation
Dasher is a trademark of Data General Corporation

Software for professionals . . . by professionals

Persoft, Inc.
2740 Ski Lane
Madison, WI 53713
(608) 233-1000



LIFETREE SOFTWARE

Your Window to the World

The Volkswriter™ word processor is simple enough for the executive, yet sophisticated enough for corporate use. And Volkswriter is fully compatible with communications and spelling software, as well as 1-2-3, SuperCalc and VisiCalc.

Volkswriter: First-rate word processing at a winning price: $195.

Test write Volkswriter at your local dealer, call or write

NEW INTERNATIONAL EDITION! The First Multilingual and Scientific Word Processor!

LIFETREE SOFTWARE, INC. 411 PACIFIC STREET SUITE 315, MONTEREY, CA 93940 • (408) 373-4718

olkswriter is a trademark of LIFETREE SOFTWARE, INC.

THE SCROLL LOCK MYSTERY "SOLVED"

BY JOHN SOCHA

In the upper-right corner of your keyboard you'll find a key marked "Scroll Lock." What does it do? Not much, as one *Softalk* reader, Howard Schneider, noticed: "The manuals say the scroll-lock key is just there to detect whether it [the key] has been depressed, and that it's up to the programmer to supply the function. How do I do it?"

Sounds silly, doesn't it? Why would IBM include a key whose only purpose is to detect whether it's been pressed? Reason tells us that that key should add a scroll-lock function to DOS. And it can. This article presents the program Scrollk.com, which does exactly that.

Scrollk.com is a machine-language program, which we'll generate with the help of a Basic program. You'll need only a cursory knowledge of Basic and DOS to build Scrollk.com. But first, let's do a bit of field work to see what the pc does whenever you depress the scroll-lock key.

The Clue. Enter Basic and type in this simple program:

```
10  A = 0
20  PRINT A
30  A = A+1
40  GOTO 20
```

Run this program and you'll see numbers flying past. So press the scroll-lock key to stop this torrent. What? Nothing happened? As Schneider discovered, your pc remembers whether scroll-lock is on or off, but it doesn't use this information.

We'll change that with Scrollk, which uses the scroll-lock information to freeze the display. Now control-numlock does the same thing, so why should we want Scrollk? We'll soon see that Scrollk can display another twenty-three lines or just one more line whenever you press the left or right shift key. Try accomplishing that with control-numlock.

Before we build Scrollk.com, let's do a bit of digging to find the byte where your IBM stores the scroll-lock information.

Excavating the Site. For this dig we'll be using the DOS program Debug.com, which you'll find on your DOS disk. Find it, then type

```
A>DEBUG
-
```

to enter the debugger (enter underlined text verbatim; the other text shown is your pc's response). The hyphen is Debug's prompt character, similar to DOS's greater-than sign. To examine the memory location where IBM stores the scroll-lock information, type

```
-D 40:17 17
0040:0017  00
```

That's a single space between the 40:17 and the 17; and the D may be typed either in upper or lower case. The 40:17 represents a memory address (417 in hexadecimal notation, which is equivalent to 1047 in decimal). Debug says that location 417 hex holds the value 00 (the 00 is also in hex notation). You may see a number different from 00, but that number should change when you press the scroll-lock key and type the same command again:

```
-D 40:17 17
0040:0017  10
```

You might see numbers other than 00 and 10. Why? Because this one memory location stores a tidbit of information about the keyboard status in each of its eight bits (see figure 1 for details). We're interested only in bit 4, which holds the state of the scroll lock. This bit changes from 1 to 0 or 0 to 1 whenever you press the

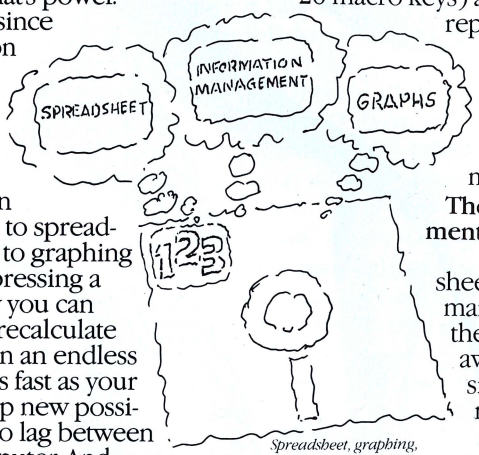
Illustration by Kevin McKeon

Num Lock
Scroll Lock
PG UP

INTRODUCING 1-2-3™. IT'LL HAVE YOUR IBM/PC JUMPING THROUGH HOOPS.

Meet 1-2-3 – the remarkable new software package that puts more raw power at your finger tips than anything yet created for the IBM PC. 1-2-3 actually combines information management, spreadsheet, and graphing in one program that can perform all three functions interchangeably and instantly at the touch of a key. That's power.

To explain: since 1-2-3's information management, spreadsheet and graphing functions reside in memory simultaneously, you can go from retrieval to spreadsheet calculation to graphing instantly, just by pressing a few keys. So now you can experiment and recalculate and look at data in an endless variety of ways. As fast as your mind can think up new possibilities. There's no lag between you and the computer. And that's a new kind of power – power that's greater than the sum of its programs.



Spreadsheet, graphing, information management all-in-one.

The spreadsheet function.

If 1-2-3 were just a spreadsheet, you'd want it because it has the largest workspace on the market (2048 rows by 256 columns). To give you a quick idea of 1-2-3's spreadsheet capabilities: VisiCalc's spreadsheet for the IBM PC offers 15 arithmetic, logical and relational operators, 28 functions and 32 spreadsheet-related commands. 1-2-3 has 15 operators, 41 functions and 66 commands. And if you include data base and graphing commands, it actually has 110!

In addition, 1-2-3 is up to 50 times as fast as established spreadsheets. With all the features you've ever seen on spreadsheets. 1-2-3 also gives you the capability to develop customized applications (with 26 macro keys) and lets you perform repetitive tasks automatically with one keystroke. If 1-2-3 were just a spreadsheet, it would be a very powerful tool. But it's much, much more.

The information management function.

Add to 1-2-3's spreadsheet a selective information management function, and the power curve rises at an awesome rate. Particularly since 1-2-3's information management capability reads files from other programs such as WordStar, VisiCalc and dBase II. So you can accumulate information on a limitless variety of topics and extract all or pieces of it for instant spreadsheet analysis. Unheard of before. Specific 1-2-3 information management features include sorting with primary and secondary keys. Retrieval using up to 32 criteria. 1-2-3 performs statistical functions such as mean, count, standard deviation and variance. It can produce histograms on part or all of the data base. 1-2-3 also allows for the maintenance of multiple data bases and multiple criteria.

The graphing function.

1-2-3 enables you to create graphs of up to six variables using information already on the spreadsheet. And have it on screen in less than two seconds! Once you've made a graph, three keystrokes will display it in a different form. If data on the spreadsheet changes, you can display a revised graph with one keystroke. This instant relationship of one format to another opens up a whole new application area. For the first time graphics can be used as a "what if" thinking tool!

For a full demonstration of 1-2-3's remarkable power, visit your nearby 1-2-3 dealer. For his name and address, call 1-800-343-5414 (in Mass. call 617-492-7171).

Lotus Development Corporation, 55 Wheeler Street, Cambridge, MA 02138.

1-2-3™

1-2-3 and Lotus are trademarks of Lotus Development Corporation. All rights reserved.
WordStar is a registered trademark of MicroPro Inc.
VisiCalc is a registered trademark of VisiCorp.
dBase II is a registered trademark of Ashton-Tate.

Byte at Address 417 Hexadecimal

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
<---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--->

BIT NUMBER	ON WHEN:
7	the insert state is active
6	caps lock is on
5	num lock is on
4	scroll lock on
3	the Alt key is pushed down
2	the control key is down
1	the left shift key is down
0	the right shift key is down

Figure 1.

scroll-lock key. Scrollk checks this bit to see if the scroll lock is on. If bit 4 is set (equal to 1), Scrollk freezes the display; if it is clear (equal to 0), Scrollk leaves the display alone.

Now let's build Scrollk and see what it does before we try to understand the details of how it works. Hit Q to leave Debug.

The Scroll Lock. Here is the program to build Scrollk.com.

```
10   CHECK=0                          'Check to see if data is
                                      correct
20   FOR I = 1 TO 251
30   READ BYTE
40   CHECK = CHECK XOR BYTE
50   NEXT I
60   IF CHECK=54 THEN 100             'Data okay, so create
                                      Scrollk.com
70   PRINT "One of the data statements may be wrong"
80   PRINT "Check lines 1000-1310, then run again"
90   STOP
100  OPEN "scrollk.com" AS #1 LEN=1
110  FIELD #1,1 AS BYTE$
120  RESTORE
130  FOR I=1 TO 251
140  READ BYTE: LSET BYTE$ = CHR$(BYTE) : PUT #1
150  NEXT I
160  CLOSE
170  PRINT "SCROLLK.COM created"
180  END
1000  DATA 233, 180, 0,   0,   0,   0,   0,   0
1010  DATA 0,   0,   0,   0,   0,   23,  0,   251
1020  DATA 30,  83,  80,  187, 64,  0,   142, 219
1030  DATA 160, 23,  0,   36,  16,  140, 203, 142
1040  DATA 219, 58,  6,   12,  1,   116, 30,  138
1050  DATA 30,  13,  1,   136, 30,  11,  1,   162
1060  DATA 12,  1,   81,  82,  80,  180, 3,   183
1070  DATA 0,   156, 255, 30,  3,   1,   136, 54
1080  DATA 14,  1,   88,  90,  89,  147, 88,  10
1090  DATA 219, 116, 75,  128, 252, 2,   117, 12
1100  DATA 58,  54,  14,  1,   136, 54,  14,  1
1110  DATA 126, 60,  235, 5,   128, 252, 6,   117
1120  DATA 53,  254, 6,   11,  1,   138, 62,  13
1130  DATA 1,   56,  62,  11,  1,   124, 39,  138
1140  DATA 223, 254, 203, 136, 30,  11,  1,   187
1150  DATA 64,  0,   142, 219, 138, 30,  23,  0
1160  DATA 246, 195, 16,  116, 17,  128, 227, 3
1170  DATA 116, 242, 128, 251, 1,   116, 7,   51
1180  DATA 219, 46,  136, 30,  11,  1,   91,  156
1190  DATA 46,  255, 30,  3,   1,   31,  207, 251
1200  DATA 30,  83,  140, 203, 142, 219, 10,  228
1210  DATA 117, 6,   51,  219, 136, 30,  11,  1
1220  DATA 91,  31,  46,  255, 46,  7,   1,   180
1230  DATA 3,   50,  255, 205, 16,  136, 54,  14
1240  DATA 1,   184, 0,   0,   142, 216, 161, 64
1250  DATA 0,   46,  163, 3,   1,   161, 66,  0
1260  DATA 46,  163, 5,   1,   184, 15,  1,   163
1270  DATA 64,  0,   140, 14,  66,  0,   161, 88
1280  DATA 0,   46,  163, 7,   1,   161, 90,  0
1290  DATA 46,  163, 9,   1,   184, 159, 1,   163
1300  DATA 88,  0,   140, 14,  90,  0,   186, 183
1310  DATA 1,   205, 39
```

Run this program to generate Scrollk.com. You'll probably want to save the Basic program, even though you need run it only once to generate Scrollk.com; be sure to save the Basic program under some name other than Scrollk.com, so you won't overwrite the machine-language program.

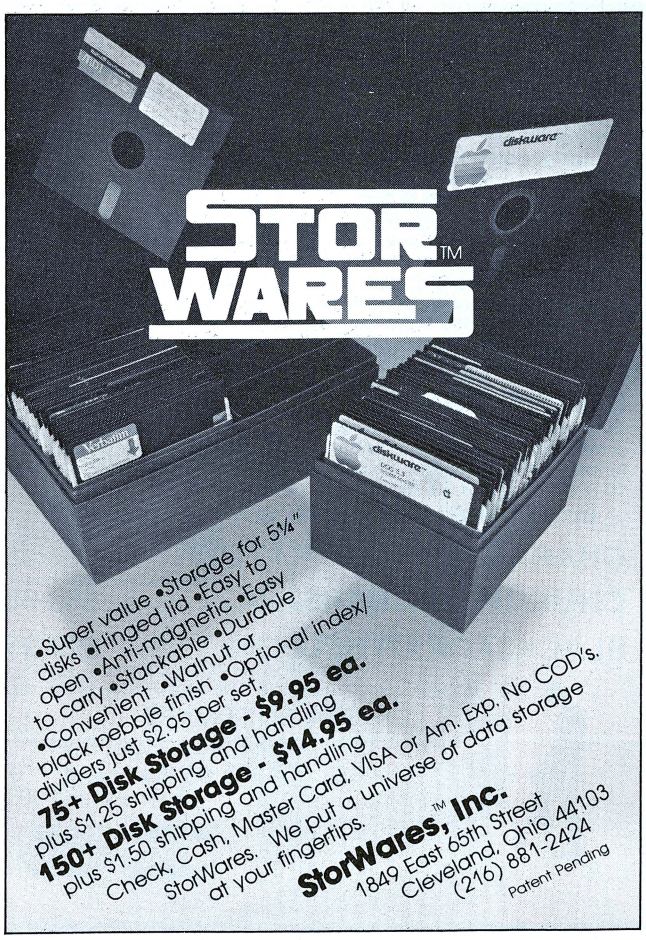
Examining the Lock. That's it. So let's try Scrollk. Type

```
system
A>scrollk
A>
```

Doesn't seem like much, but we've just attached Scrollk to DOS and increased the length of DOS in memory by 448 bytes. We've changed only the version of DOS in memory, not the version on your disk; so you'll have to run Scrollk.com every time you reboot DOS (or put it in an autoexec batch file if you want it to run automatically whenever you boot DOS).

Now let's repeat our simple experiment in Basic to see what we've gained with Scrollk. Go back to Basic and enter

```
10  A = 0
20  PRINT A
30  A = A+1
40  GOTO 20
```



and, while this program is running, hit the scroll-lock key. Poof—the display freezes. Try pushing scroll-lock a few more times to get the feel of it. Scroll-lock is a toggle switch (bit 4 at location hex 417 changes from 0 to 1 or 1 to 0) that turns Scrollk on and off.

Now freeze the display again with scroll-lock and then briefly tap the shift key on the left side of the keyboard. That's right, the one on the left; your pc can tell if a shift key is depressed and can distinguish between the one on the left and the one on the right. Notice what happens. The screen fills with twenty-three more numbers (twenty-three lines) before freezing again. Try this a few more times.

So what of the right shift key? Try it; this key allows you to see more lines, one line at a time, for as long as you hold it down. Experiment a bit with these three keys before exploring in more detail the workings of Scrollk.

The numbers in the example just given fly past very quickly, making it difficult to see how Scrollk works, so let's try this routine.

```
10  K=0
20  PRINT CHR$(63 + (K MOD 26));
30  K=K+1
40  GOTO 20
```

This sends long lines to the screen at a much slower pace. You'll find that Scrollk doesn't freeze the display until the end of a line.

If you're running an interactive program, your pc may display a few lines, read some characters from the keyboard, and then display some more lines. If this were happening, you would want Scrollk to work in such a way that when you hit the scroll-lock key followed by the left shift key, it would freeze the screen only after twenty-three continuous lines of display. That is, you would want it to start counting lines anew each time your program's display stopped of its own accord. That's in fact what it does, as you'll see by the following program.

This program prints a number of lines and then reads another number from the keyboard.

```
10  INPUT "Number of lines";NUMLINES
20  FOR I=1 TO NUMLINES
30  PRINT I
40  NEXT I
50  GOTO 10
```

Try this program a couple of times using 20 as a value for Numlines; then switch to 24 and notice the difference.

The left-shift-key feature of Scrollk.com won't interrupt an interactive session where continuous output never exceeds twenty-three lines. But it will freeze the screen as soon as a program displays more than twenty-three lines of text without reading any characters from the keyboard. Experiment with Scrollk to get a better feel of how this feature works.

Now that you have an idea of the power of Scrollk, let's continue our excavations to see if we can find the information, inside your pc, that tells which shift key has been pushed down.

The Artifacts. Reach into your tool kit (DOS disk) and find Debug again. Debug is a very useful tool for digging into memory. Type

```
A> Debug
-
```

Now begins the fun. First, type

```
-D 40:17 17
0040:0017   00
```

You may see a number other than 00; this just means you have turned on scroll lock, num lock, caps lock, or insert (see figure 1). The rightmost digit should be 0, in any event, and it is this digit that we'll soon see change.

The next step requires some fancy finger work at the end of the line, so just type this line without hitting the enter key:

```
-D 40:17 17
```

Now hold down the left shift key and keep holding it while you press the enter key. You should see

```
0040:0017  02
```

That's it! The second digit changed from 0 to 2 when you held down the left shift; and this digit (in the memory location, not on the screen) won't change back to 0 until you release the left shift key. Let's try the same experiment with the right shift key. You should get

```
-D 40:17 17
0040:0017  01
```

Scrollk simply checks this digit (bits 0 and 1) to see which shift key is being held down and acts accordingly. (Actually, Scrollk sees only the left shift key if both shift keys are pushed, but that's just an "artifact" of the way Scrollk.com's written). Okay, enough of Debug:

```
-Q
A>
```

A Shorter Scroll. Scrollk displays twenty-three lines of new information before it freezes the display; that leaves one line (in Basic, or two lines in DOS) of old information at the top of the screen. What if you want to see only ten lines of new information at a time? Can we change this twenty-three? Yes, and with a very simple Basic program:

```
10   INPUT "Number of lines to print before
        locking";NOLINES
100  DEF SEG = 0
110  DEF SEG= 256*PEEK(&H43)+PEEK(&H42)
120  POKE &H10D,NOLINES
130  END
```

Lines 100 through 120 can be included in any Basic program to

ELECTRONIC DISK **$69.95**
Will create the equivalent of a disk drive in your extra memory. Simply say how many 64K byte blocks are to be used by PC-DOS 1.10, and the rest of memory will be allocated to your fast electronic disk. Bonus: you can also allocate memory to a printer spooler! Really increases system throughput.

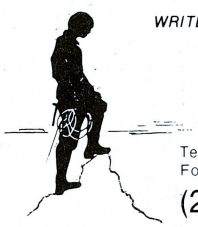
ISAM DATABASE **$69.95**
GET and PUT records to disk files by "KEY". Under 2 seconds.
Browse forward or backward in key sequence.
Update any part of the record, including the key.
Automatic recovery of disk space occupied by deleted records.
Keys do not have to be unique and can be any length.
Routines accessed from any Basic application. 6K overhead.
FAST! Sorts 5000 records in 12 seconds.
Includes mailing list application program & documentation.

STRING SORT **$24.95**
This machine language Shell sort routine will sort any string array into ascending alphabetical order. We believe it is the fastest sort available. Sorts 1000 strings in 2 seconds, and 10,000 strings in 30 seconds. Called from Basic:
BLOAD "SHELLSRT",0 : CALL SORT(N%,ARRAY$(1))

CHARACTER GENERATOR **$24.95**

CHURCH MEMBERSHIP **$69.95**

BLACKJACK,OTHELLO+8 OTHERS ALL FOR **$29.95**



WRITE FOR FREE CATALOG DEALER INQUIRIES INVITED
ENSIGN SOFTWARE
2312 N. COLE RD., SUITE E
BOISE, IDAHO 83704 U.S.A.

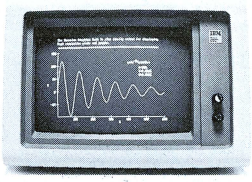
Telephone Order Line
For Bank Card Sales
(208) 378-8086

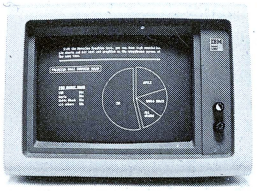
VISA MasterCard

Now the Hercules Graphics Card comes with software

That'll put a smile on your IBM monochrome

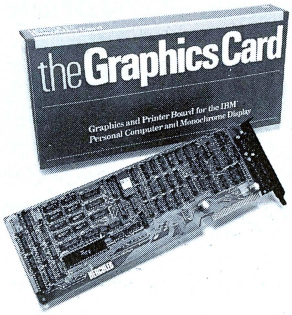
Now each Hercules Graphics Card™ comes with software so you can write a BASIC program using the IBM® PC's BASIC graphics statements. It's a snap to draw high resolution graphics on the IBM monochrome display with the Hercules Graphics Card. And if you'd like to program in languages other than BASIC, there's a package of assembly language graphics subroutines for only $50. The Hercules Graphics Card is compatible with software written for the IBM monochrome display/printer adapter and it will not damage the IBM display. With a resolution of 720h × 348v, two graphics pages, a parallel printer interface, and the same character set and video attributes as the IBM monochrome board, the Hercules Graphics Card makes an excellent replacement for the IBM monochrome display/printer adapter. And isn't graphics capability worth paying a little extra for?





The Hercules Graphics Card. Only **$649** including software. Call or write for the name of the dealer nearest you, or order direct from us.

Hercules Computer Technology
3200 Adeline Street
Berkeley, CA 94703
(415) 654-2476



Hercules Graphics Card is a trademark of Hercules Computer Technology. IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines. © 1982 Hercules Computer Technology.

let you change the scroll length from within a Basic program.

Or you can make a new version of Scrollk.com, with a different scroll length, by changing line 1010 in the Basic program we used to generate Scrollk.com. Simply change the 23 in line 1010 to another number, then rerun the Basic program to create a new version of Scrollk.com.

Now let's see if we can unravel the mystery of Scrollk.

Picking the Lock—How Scrollk Works. There are several machine-language routines in the ROM BIOS that DOS calls upon to display characters on the screen. DOS calls on one routine every time it displays a character, and special characters like carriage return and line feed are treated as you'd expect; carriage return sends the cursor to the beginning of the line and line feed sets it to the next line. This display routine, after a line feed, may have to scroll the screen up to make room for a new line at the bottom. And here is where Scrollk intercepts BIOS calls.

The ROM BIOS routine for character output calls upon the SCROLL_UP routine to scroll the screen up by one line. Scrollk intercepts this call and, before calling SCROLL_UP, checks to see if twenty-two lines have already been scrolled (twenty-three lines of new text). If twenty-three lines of text have been displayed without any characters being read from the keyboard, then Scrollk just waits until you push the left shift, right shift, or the scroll-lock key.

Remember when we tested Scrollk during an interactive session with alternating input and output? How did Scrollk know when the program had read a character from the keyboard? Well, there is another routine in the ROM BIOS that reads characters from the keyboard. Naturally, Scollk intercepts calls to this routine, so that Scrollk knows when any program reads characters from the keyboard. Simple—or so it seems; the program to do all this is a bit long. Here are the technical details.

SOFTWARE PRINTER SPOOLER

Save Time!! Printer spooler allows the computer to simultaneously be printing text to the printer while it runs a program. You no longer have to wait for your printer to finish before you can use the computer. Supports Visicalc, Basic and the Assembler.

➔ Expands tabs from Assembler list files.

➔ Supports Xon-Xoff protocol for serial printers.

$40.00 Req. 1 drive, 64 kbytes, parallel or serial printer

RAM DISK

Simulates a disk drive in ram memory which will allow you quick access to programs that you use frequently. You can specify how large a disk you would like to have in ram from 32 kbytes to 320 kbytes in 32 kbyte increments.

Price $40.00 Requires 96 kbytes and 1 disk drive

Ram disk and Software Printer Spooler both for $60.00

COMMUNICATIONS PACKAGE

Will emulate several different terminals for data communications. Terminals supported include DEC VT-100 and Lear Siegler ADM 3a with others on the way. I/O redirection will be implemented so that data from a host computer can be directed to the IBM printer or to a disk file. Terminal parameters such as baud rate, stop bits etc. can be stored on a disk file.

Price $125.00 Requires 64 kbytes, serial port and 1 disk drive

COPYLOCK PROTECTION PROGRAM

An effective protection system for your .COM or .EXE file which is not copyable by any of the general copy programs such as Copy-PC, System Backup v1.3 and the DOS Diskcopy command. Random system precludes any copies being made. Disk can also be made a "bootable" disk by the end user by using the SYS command from DOS. Requires 2 drives, 64 kbytes. Call for pricing.

SoftDesign 617 861-0902

6 Blodgett Rd. Lexington, Ma. 02173

Translating the Scroll. Let's first consider

```
BEGIN:   JMP    INIT_VECTORS
```

which is the first executable line in Scrollk. This instruction jumps to the initialization routine, INIT_VECTORS, at the end of Scrollk. INIT_VECTORS is at the end of the program, so it won't stay in memory after executing the INT 27H instruction (for more information on this section, see "Attack of the Printer Bug," by John Socha, *Softalk*, March 1983).

The INIT_VECTORS routine changes the interrupt vectors for keyboard input and video output to point to routines within Scrollk, but it first saves the old addresses in ROM_VIDEO_IO and ROM_KEYBOARD_IO. Then Scrollk can call the ROM routines to do most of the work. Scrollk simply delays calls to the ROM routines, and this is how it freezes the display.

How can Scrollk call the ROM routines? We've changed the interrupt vectors, so Scrollk certainly can't use INT 10H or INT 16H calls. But we can do long JMPs or CALLs. We have to be careful, though. An INT instruction pushes three words onto the stack (the processor status flags, the code segment, and the instruction pointer), whereas a CALL pushes only the last two words. Aha, we just need a PUSHF instruction before the CALL, and if you look in the INTERCEPT_VIDEO routine, you'll see that this is exactly what we have. So now we can intercept all calls to the VIDEO_IO routines and do some work before we hand control over to VIDEO_IO in the ROM.

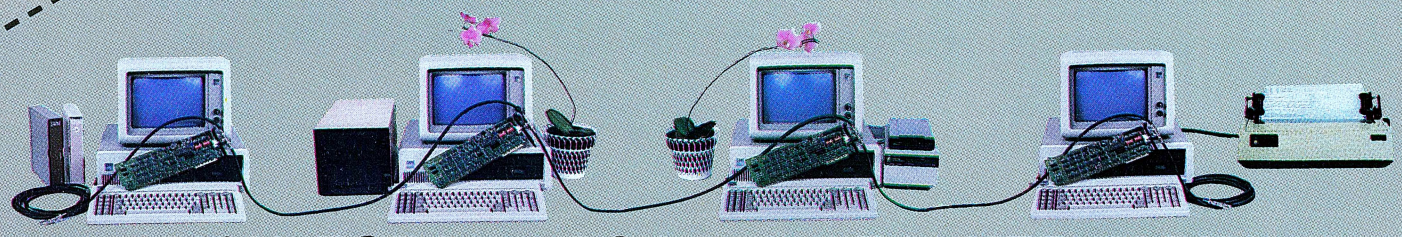
The rest of INTERCEPT_VIDEO is rather straightforward, although somewhat obtuse, with one exception. There's a bit of code that watches for changes in the cursor's line. Thus, if you do a *cls* in Basic, Scrollk will stop after twenty-three new lines, even though the display hasn't had to scroll up. You'll find the details in INTERCEPT_VIDEO. Yes, it's a bit painful trying to read and understand someone else's assembler program (especially one with spaghetti logic), but you'll probably find it a useful exercise.

INTERCEPT_KEYBOARD is quite simple in comparison to INTERCEPT_VIDEO. Here's a hint: There's a JMP to the ROM routine so that the ROM KEYBOARD_IO routine can set the ZF flag (see page A-23 in the *Technical Reference* manual).

```
;-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
; This program intercepts calls to the VIDEO_IO routines. Commands to scroll the screen will be  ;
; intercepted; all others passed through. This routine is attached to DOS.                      ;
;-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

;-----------------------------------------------;
; Interrupt vectors for video and keyboard routines  ;
;-----------------------------------------------;
VECTORS SEGMENT AT 0
        ORG     10H*4
VIDEO_INT       LABEL   DWORD
        ORG     16H*4
KEYBOARD_INT    LABEL   DWORD
VECTORS ENDS

;-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
; ROM BIOS data area for keyboard                                                          ;
;                                                                                          ;
; Contents of KB_FLAG:                                                                     ;
;<---  ---      ---      ---      ---      ---      ---      --->                          ;
;  ^INS_STATE   ^NUM_STATE   ^ALT_SHIFT   ^LEFT_SHIFT                                       ;
;       ^CAPS_STATE   ^SCROLL_STATE   ^CTL_SHIFT   ^RIGHT_SHIFT                             ;
;-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
ROM_BIOS_DATA   SEGMENT AT 40H
        ORG     17H
KB_FLAG         DB      ?               ;Bit 4 set for scroll lock
ROM_BIOS_DATA   ENDS
;-----------------------------------;
; Initialize vectors and attach to DOS. ;
;-----------------------------------;
CSEG    SEGMENT         PARA
        ASSUME          CS:CSEG
        ORG             100H            ;Set starting point for a COM file
BEGIN:  JMP             INIT_VECTORS    ;Initialize INT 10H vector and attach to DOS

;-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
; These memory locations store the addresses of the ROM routines for video and keyboard I/O.  ;
;-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
ROM_VIDEO_IO            DD              ;Address of the ROM routines
ROM_KEYBOARD_IO         DD
SCROLL_COUNT            DB      0       ;Number of lines scrolled since last pause
LAST_LOCK_STATE         DB      0       ;0 if scroll lock off last time checked
MAX_LINES               DB      23      ;Scroll by 23 lines, leaving one old line
                                        ;at the top of the screen
```

IMMEDIATE AVAILABILITY

ORCHID TECHNOLOGY



INNOVATORS IN LOCAL AREA NETWORK... FOR THE IBM PC

ORCHID TECHNOLOGY ANNOUNCES PCnetT.M.— the only Local Area Network designed specifically for the IBM PC and its MS-DOS operating system. PCnet provides low system cost, high performance, and a transparent MS-DOS interface that is powerful yet easy to use.

HARDWARE FEATURES

SINGLE SLOT PCnet adapter connects directly to the network cable.

STANDARD 75 ohm cable used (RG 59 B/U or equiv.).

TRULY DISTRIBUTED system using CSMA/CD; no central controller, or point to point wiring.

LENGTH of cable up to 7000 feet (over 2 km).

HIGH SPEED operation with DMA transfers and approximately 1 Mbps transmission speed.

LOW COST $695 per PCnet Adapter, (OEM discounts available).

HARD DISK COMPATIBILITY

The disk sharing interface is designed for compatibility with the following disks:

IBM XT
SANTA CLARA SYSTEMS
TALLGRASS
TECMAR
MICROCODE
QCS
DATAMAC
DAVONG
and many more

SOFTWARE FEATURES

DISK SHARING allows PCs to share hard disks installed in other PCs. Shared drives appear to be locally attached (e.g., as C:, D:, etc.) and file transfers between PCs are as simple as MS-DOS copy commands. Complete read/write protection by user and drive is provided. PCs can execute programs directly from shared drives. Orchid file server consists of a PC which is attached to a hard disk. The file server is not a dedicated PC (i.e. the server PC can still run its own programs in the foreground while serving disk requests from other PCs on the network in the background). PCnet supports multiple file servers as well as local or private hard disk at each individual PC.

FILE LOCKING system function calls enable single user applications to be easily converted to multi-user.

PC SHARING enables one PC to execute commands on another. This allows multi-tasking for printer, communication line, etc., sharing, and background execution of compilers and text formatters.

PRINT SHARING allows PCs to share printers installed in other PCs.

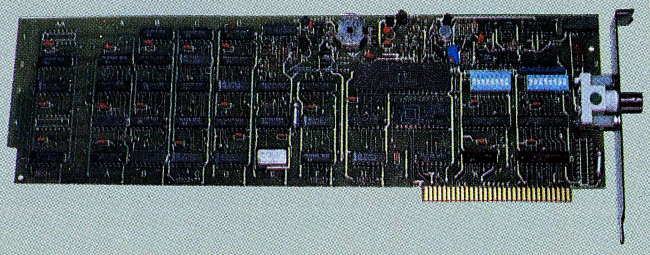
COMPUTER COMPATIBILITY

PCnet has been successfully tested on the following computers:

IBM PC
COMPAQ COMPUTER
COLBY COMPUTER
COLUMBIA DATA PRODUCTS

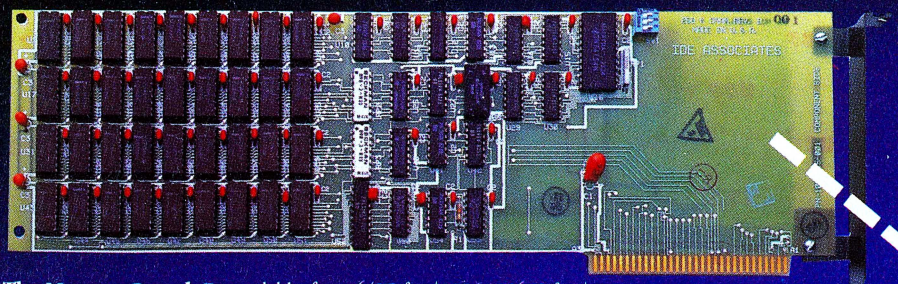
ORCHID TECHNOLOGY

487 Sinclair Frontage Road,
Milpitas, California 95035 • (408) 942-8660

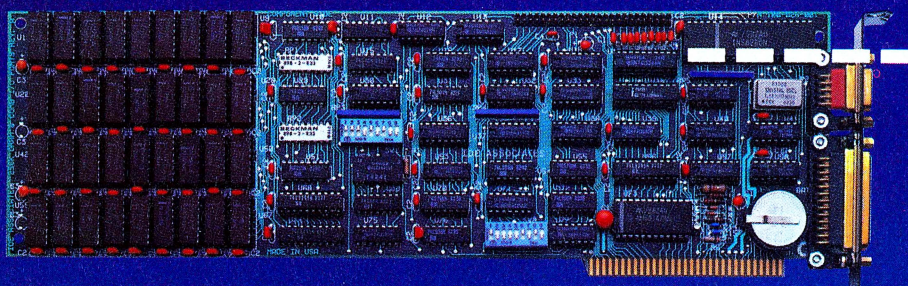


IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corp.
MS DOS is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corp.
PCnet is a trademark of Orchid Technology.

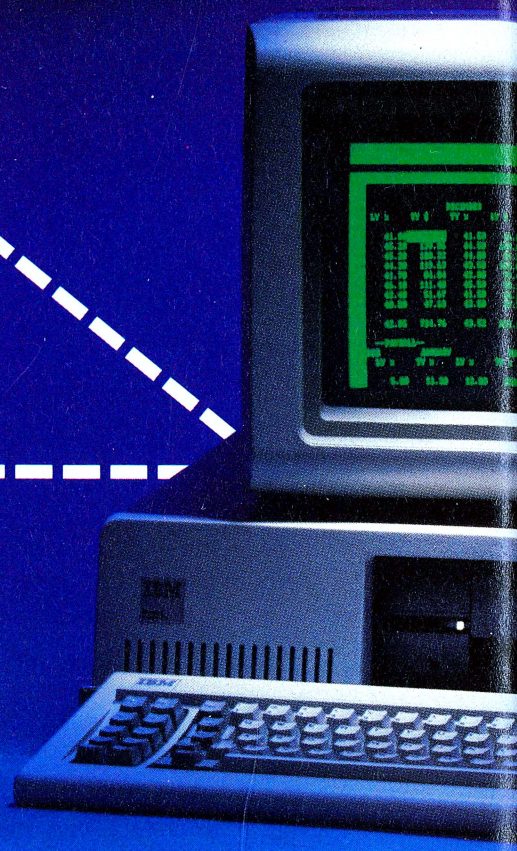
Copyright 1982 Orchid Technology



The Memory Board: Expandable, from 64KB for $275 to 256KB for $575.



The IDEAboard: Multifunction combination board. Memory up to 265KB. Options include serial interface, parallel interface (printer or SASI hard disk) and/or clock/calendar with battery backup. Prices range from $350 for 64KB with 1 option to $725 for 256KB with 3 options.



Five better ideas from IDE for expanding your IBM PC.

We think the IBM Personal Computer is the best on the market. That's why we've concentrated our efforts on making add-ons strictly for the IBM PC.

We have ideas that can make your IBM PC even better. And more affordable.

Granted, those are ambitious goals. Goals that take quite a bit of imagination – and nerve – to reach.

And at IDE, we think we have the ideas it takes.

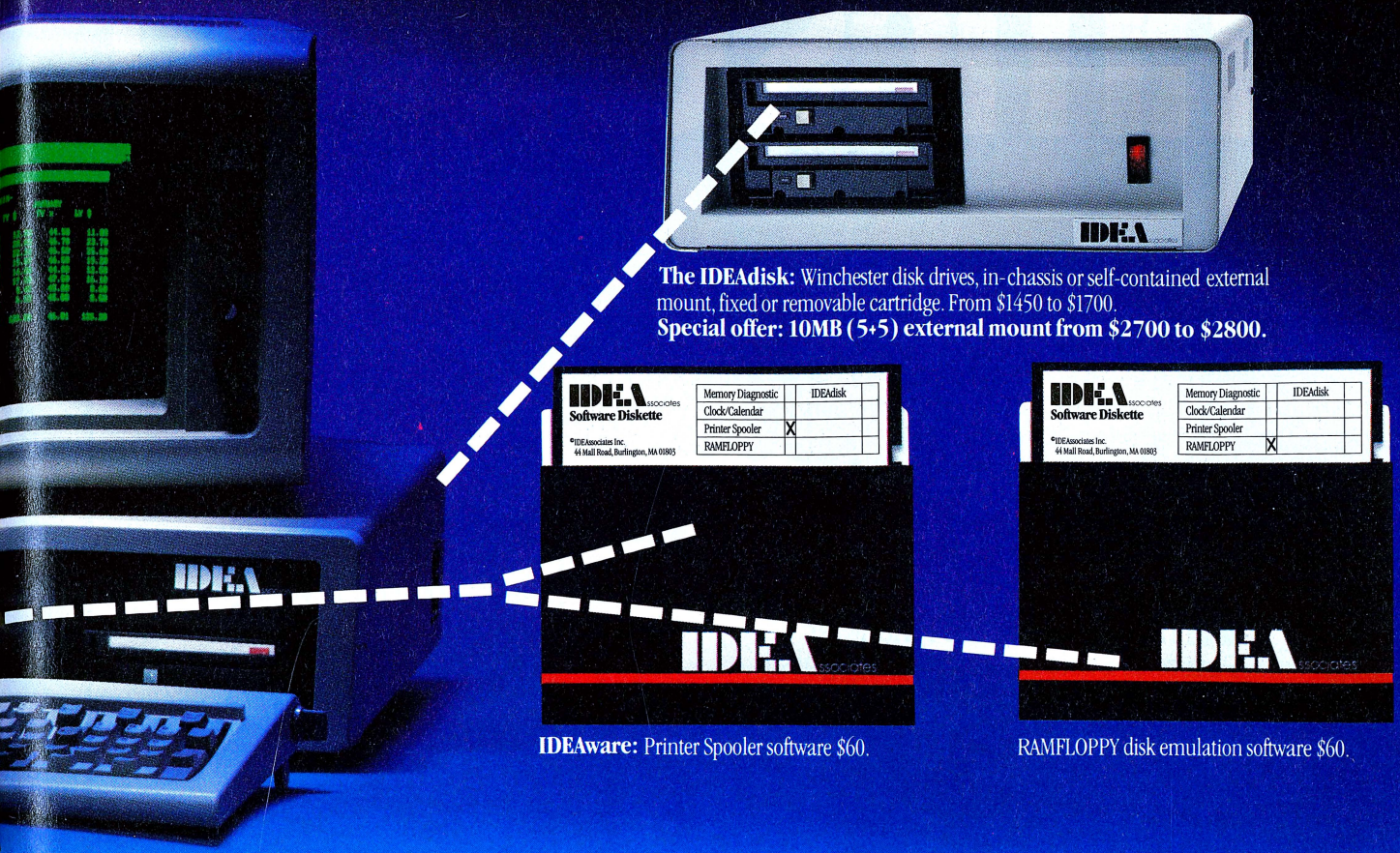
Better Idea No. 1: Innovative products.

We're leaders, not followers. IDE was first with a Combination Board for the IBM PC that includes a Winchester disk drive interface. On the board itself.

We were the first to let you cable both serial *and* parallel interfaces from the back of the board. Without any troublesome jury rigging, without wasting expansion slots, and with the unit's protective cover in place.

And the innovations don't stop there. Removable Winchester disk drives. Expandable memory boards. Printer spooler software. Disk emulation software. A broad array of products...with still more to come.

IDE Dealers: Alaska: VFM Electronics, Fairbanks ☐ **Arizona**: Software Center, Glendale ☐ **California**: MicroHelp, El Cajon; Stoneware Ltd., La Jolla; Precision Design Corp., San Diego ☐ **Connecticut**: The Computer Establishment, Old Saybrook; MicroAge, Danbury; American Business Computers, Groton ☐ **Florida**: Suncoast Forms & Systems, Sarasota ☐ **Iowa**: ComputerLand, Des Moines ☐ **Kansas**: CompuType, Manhattan ☐ **Massachusetts**: Arby Corporation, Cambridge; TEK Microsystems, Boston; MTS Microproducts, Arlington ☐ **Michigan**: BCS Inc., Canton; The Computer Workshop, Houghton; MCS Inc., Okemos ☐ **Minnesota**: Computer Depot/Daytons Computer Centers, Minneapolis, St. Paul, Burnsville Center, Ridgedale, Rosedale, Southdale ☐ **Nebraska**: ComputerLand, Lincoln; ComputerLand, Omaha ☐ **New Hampshire**: Software Designs, Derry ☐ **New Jersey**: Peripheral Engineering Co.,



The IDEAdisk: Winchester disk drives, in-chassis or self-contained external mount, fixed or removable cartridge. From $1450 to $1700.
Special offer: 10MB (5+5) external mount from $2700 to $2800.

IDEAware: Printer Spooler software $60.

RAMFLOPPY disk emulation software $60.

Better Idea No. 2: One year warranty.

We believe in the quality of our products. We buy only burnt-in components; we do extensive burn-in ourselves; and we customize final testing to match customers' configurations.

That's why we offer a full year warranty with all IDE products. 365 days. Not 90.

And we back it up with full software support and diagnostics, including software updates as necessary.

Better Idea No. 3: Unique upgrade policy.

When you buy any IDE product, you buy only the options you want. So you never have to pay for something you don't need.

Then you can add extras as you need them.

Take our boards, for example. For one year, you can trade up a board for one with more memory and/or options for the price differential plus $25. In fact, you can trade up any IDE product for anything else in our product line the same way.

And that's unique.

Better Idea No. 4: Service that really delivers.

Our products are available through IDE dealers and representatives around the country. And our network is growing quickly.

We offer free installation in the metropolitan areas listed below, and our retailers will install any of our products for you right in the store.

If you'd rather do it yourself, we provide every IDE product with all the documentation you need to perform the installation yourself. In minutes.

Better Idea No. 5: High value; low price.

Since our products are made strictly for the IBM PC, we can concentrate our efforts. Run our company more efficiently. And keep costs down.

But keeping costs down isn't enough for us. We pursue an aggressive pricing policy, too. Because we believe that by selling more add-ons at lower prices, we will become a leader in the industry. Our ideas will see to that.

You'll find all of IDE's better ideas on display at the fine retailers shown below.

If you don't see one for your area, call us toll-free. The list is growing all the time, and we'll give you the name of a dealer near you. Or take your order directly by phone.

And remember: when you think of expanding your IBM PC, think of IDE first. We have five great ideas for you.

1-800-257-5027
(In Massachusetts call 617 272-7360)

IDEAssociates

Better ideas for personal computers.
IDE Associates Inc., 44 Mall Road, Burlington, MA 01803

Marlton ☐ **New York:** Oppenheimer Software, N.Y.C.; Yankee Computer Services, Putnam Valley ☐ **North Carolina:** Computer South, Charlotte ☐ **South Carolina:** Berry's Office Automation, Lugoff ☐ **Tennessee:** Campus Computer Corp., Nashville ☐ **Texas:** MicroSpec, Plano ☐ **Utah:** Weidner Communications Corp., Provo ☐ **Virginia:** Micro Solutions, Reston ☐ **Wisconsin:** LaCrosse Computer Systems, LaCrosse
IDE Representatives: Boston, New York, Philadelphia, Washington D.C., Atlanta, Houston, Chicago, Los Angeles.

CRITICS CHOICE!

Financier™ Personal Series, the financial software everyone's talking about.

Before you invest in financial software, here's what professional software reviewers coast to coast are saying about the Financier Personal Series – the software with performance that picks up where the others leave off!

"It is clear that the Financier Personal Series is the most sophisticated and flexible, of the financial programs under review here."

Burton Alperson, Ph.D. Reviewer
SOFTALK for the IBM

"Within an hour of opening the software package, I was able to understand and appreciate the power of this financial package. Financier is one of those packages which many people will probably use, along with their wordprocessing and spreadsheet programs, quite frequently, if not daily."

Eric R. Bedell Reviewer
PC REPORT – IBM users group of the Boston Computer Society

"Out of all these programs,* the Financier Personal Series provides the best balance of extensive capabilities and ease of use. The manual is outstanding as an introduction to both the practice of bookkeeping and the use of a personal computer to perform this task."

Steven Yoder and Sherry Knight, CPA
PC MAGAZINE

"The Financier Personal Series is a financial record-keeping program. It is menu driven, and exceptionally well-documented. Written in BASIC, one gets a lot more from this system than from other so-called home accounting programs. Truly an outstanding package, I use it for my own financial records."

Thomas V. Bonoma, IBM Columnist
MICROCOMPUTING

See for yourself why Financier's Personal Series has everybody talking. Get a demonstration today!

*Five Financial Programs for the Home – February 1983, programs reviewed: Bonus Accounting System, Financier Personal Series, FMS II, Home Accountant Plus, Money Maestro

FINANCIER™

MODERN SOFTWARE FOR MODERN TIMES℠

For additional information, or to order directly, call:
(617) 366-0950 [24-hour, MasterCard and Visa accepted]
Financier, Inc. 2400 Computer Drive, P.O. Box 670, Westboro, MA 01581

Financier System Requirements: IBM Personal Computer, At least 64Kb of RAM, Two disk drives, 80 column display, IBM Personal Computer DOS, IBM Personal Computer Disk BASIC

FINANCIER TAX SERIES SPECIAL INTRODUCTORY PRICE: $150.
(Special price offered for limited time. Retail Price: $195.)
FINANCIER PERSONAL SERIES: $195.

Now available at the following authorized IBM dealers:
ASD OFFICE SYSTEMS (NY), **CMB INC.** (KY), **COMPUSHOP INC.** (CO, IL, TX), **COMPUSHOP OF GEORGIA, INC.** (GA), **COMPUTER CITY** (CA), **COMPUTER CONCEPTS** (LA, TX), **THE COMPUTER MART** (IL, MI; WINDSOR, ONT.), **THE COMPUTER ROOM** (IN, MI), **COMPUTER SYSTEMS SPECIALIST** (NY), **COMPUTERLAND** (participating dealers), **COMPUTERWORKS** (CT), **FREDERICK COMPUTER PRODUCTS** (MD), **FUTURE DATA** (NYC, SC), **MICRO CENTER** (OH), **PERSONAL BUSINESS COMPUTERS** (UT), **SOFTSOURCE** (TX), or phone **(617) 366-0950** for nearest dealer.

© 1983 FINANCIER, INC.

CIRCLE 241 ON READER SERVICE CARD

```
LAST_LINE               DB                      ;Last line the cursor was on
; ---------------------------------------------------------------------------;
; This routine intercepts all calls to the VIDEO_IO routine in the ROM.      ;
; Scroll Lock:                                                               ;
;     OFF                 This routine passes control directly to the ROM BIOS ;
;                         routine.                                           ;
;     ON                  Functions other than SCROLL UP or SCROLL DOWN are  ;
;                         passed directly to the ROM routines. Otherwise, this ;
;                         routine increments the scroll count and checks to see ;
;                         if it exceeds the page size of 25 lines. If so, loop ;
;                         until either shift key pressed.                    ;
;                                 left shift allows scroll of whole window   ;
;                                 right shift of one line.                   ;
; ---------------------------------------------------------------------------;

INTERCEPT_VIDEO         PROC    FAR
        ASSUME  CS:CSEG
        STI                     ;Turn on interrupts again
        PUSH    DS              ;Save registers used
        PUSH    BX
        PUSH    AX

        ASSUME  DS:ROM_BIOS_DATA
        MOV     BX,ROM_BIOS_DATA
        MOV     DS,BX
        MOV     AL,KB_FLAG              ;Check state of scroll lock key
        AND     AL,10H                  ;Pick off scroll-lock bit
        ASSUME  DS:CSEG
        MOV     BX,CS                   ;Data Segment for variables (above)
        MOV     DS,BX
        CMP     AL,LAST_LOCK_STATE
        JE      UN_CHANGED              ;Scroll-lock key hasn't changed
        MOV     BL,MAX_LINES            ;Scroll-lock key has changed, set
        MOV     SCROLL_COUNT,BL         ;to MAX_LINES to stop scrolling
        MOV     LAST_LOCK_STATE,AL      ;Save the new scroll-lock state
        PUSH    CX                      ;Now read current cursor position and
        PUSH    DX                      ;save in LAST_LINE so SCROLLK won't
        PUSH    AX                      ;freeze in the middle of a line
        MOV     AH,3
        MOV     BH,0
        PUSHF
        CALL    ROM_VIDEO-IO            ;Find old cursor position
        MOV     LAST_LINE,DH            ;and save in LAST_LINE
        POP     AX
        POP     DX
        POP     CX
UN_CHANGED:
        XCHG    AX,BX           ;Recover function (AH) and retain scroll lock
        POP     AX
        OR      BL,BL           ;Is scroll lock on?
        JZ      TO_VIDEO_IO     ;No, jump to the ROM Video_IO routine
        ; ---------------------------;
        ; Scroll Lock ON             ;
        ; ---------------------------;
        CMP     AH,2            ;Check for SET CURSOR POSITION function
        JNE     NOPE
        CMP     DH,LAST_LINE    ;Is the cursor being moved to the next line?
        MOV     LAST_LINE,DH            ;Save new cursor line
        JLE     TO_VIDEO-IO             ;No, jump to ROM routine
        JMP     SHORT CHECK_LOCK                ;Yes, see if need to lock
NOPE:   CMP     AH,6                    ;Scroll up?
        JNE     TO_VIDEO_IO             ;No, go to ROM routines
CHECK_LOCK:
        INC     SCROLL_COUNT            ;Take care of scroll lock
        MOV     BH,MAX_LINES
        CMP     SCROLL_COUNT,BH         ;Have we scrolled more than MAX_LINES?
        JL      TO_VIDEO_IO             ;Nope, it's okay to scroll
                                        ;Yes, can't scroll until one of shift keys hit
        MOV     BL,BH                   ;Set SCROLL_COUNT to MAX_LINES-1
        DEC     BL                      ;so we can print one more line
        MOV     SCROLL_COUNT,BL
        ASSUME  DS:ROM_BIOS_DATA
        MOV     BX,ROM_BIOS_DATA
        MOV     DS,BX
LOOP:   MOV     BL,KB_FLAG              ;Wait until left or right shift key pushed
        TEST    BL,10H                  ;Is scroll lock still on?
        JZ      TO_VIDEO_IO
        AND     BL,3                    ;Pick off shift key info
        JZ      LOOP                    ;Stay in loop until a shift key pushed down
        CMP     BL,1                    ;Right shift key hit?
        JE      SCROLL_LINE             ;Yes, allow scroll of one line
                                ;No, must be right shift key, so reset scroll count
        XOR     BX,BX
        MOV     SCROLL_COUNT,BL
SCROLL_LINE:

TO_VIDEO_IO:
        POP     BX                      ;Restore BX register
        PUSHF
        CALL    ROM_VIDEO_IO
        POP     DS
        IRET                            ;Return
INTERCEPT_VIDEO         ENDP

; ---------------------------------------------------------------------------;
; If the keyboard function calls for a read (AH = 0) then reset the scroll count. ;
; ---------------------------------------------------------------------------;
INTERCEPT_KEYBOARD      PROC    FAR
        ASSUME  CS:CSEG,DS:CSEG
        STI                             ;Turn interrupts back on
        PUSH    DS                      ;Save registers used by this routine
        PUSH    BX
        MOV     BX,CS                   ;Set up data segment for variables
        MOV     DS,BX
        OR      AH,AH                   ;Check to see if AH = 0 — read character
        JNZ     KB1                     ;Nope, just branch off to keyboard I/O
        XOR     BX,BX                   ;Yes, set scroll count to 0
        MOV     SCROLL_COUNT,BL
KB1:    POP     BX                      ;Restore BX register
        ASSUME  DS:NOTHING
        POP     DS
        JMP     ROM_KEYBOARD_IO         ;Jump to keyboard routine and return directly
                                        ;to the routine that called this routine
INTERCEPT_KEYBOARD      ENDP
; ---------------------------------------------------------------------------;
; This section of code saves the old interrupt vectors for the keyboard and video I/O routines. These ;
; vectors are replaced by the addresses of INTERCEPT_VIDEO and INTERCEPT_KEYBOARD.                    ;
; ---------------------------------------------------------------------------;
INIT_VECTORS            PROC    NEAR
        ASSUME  CS:CSEG,DS:CSEG
        MOV     AH,3                    ;Set LAST_LINE to cursor line number
        XOR     BH,BH
        INT     10H
        MOV     LAST_LINE,DH

        ASSUME  CS:CSEG,DS:VECTORS
        MOV     AX,VECTORS
        MOV     DS,AX

        MOV     AX,VIDEO_INT            ;Save the address of the ROM routines
        MOV     ROM_VIDEO_IO,AX
        MOV     AX,VIDEO_INT[2]
        MOV     ROM_VIDEO_IO[2],AX
        MOV     AX,OFFSET INTERCEPT_VIDEO       ;Set video INT 10H to point to
        MOV     VIDEO_INT,AX            ;INTERCEPT_VIDEO above.
        MOV     VIDEO_INT[2],CS

        MOV     AX,KEYBOARD_INT         ;Save the address of the ROM routines
        MOV     ROM_KEYBOARD_IO,AX
        MOV     AX,KEYBOARD_INT[2]
        MOV     ROM_KEYBOARD_IO[2],AX
        MOV     AX,OFFSET INTERCEPT_KEYBOARD    ;Set keyboard INT 16H to point
        MOV     KEYBOARD_INT,AX         ;to INTERCEPT_KEYBOARD above
        MOV     KEYBOARD_INT[2],CS

        MOV     DX,OFFSET INIT_VECTORS ;End of resident portion
        INT     27H                     ;Terminate but stay resident
INIT_VECTORS            ENDP

CSEG    ENDS

        END     BEGIN
```

▲

FREE LITERATURE FILING SYSTEM

MediScript

A WORD PROCESSOR DESIGNED TO MEET THE HIGH STANDARDS OF THE MEDICAL PROFESSION IS NOW AVAILABLE ON YOUR IBM-PC

A powerful word processor designed to accommodate the newcomer to word processing. Simple to use yet has all common and many specialty functions. User interaction is carefully layered such that anyone familiar with the IBM keyboard can switch on the power and start basic word processing without need for detailed instructions. Basic functions of MediScript I include word wrap with hyphen option, full screen editing, paragraph relocate, and parallel or serial printer support. More sophisticated additional functions in MediScript II include overstrike, word search, right justification, character graphics, fielded form generation, and data base capability for creation of mailing lists which can be merged with an unlimited number of form letters. These functions are easily accessed via layered user friendly menus. Mention this ad in your purchase order and, if received by Sept. 1, 1983, we will send you a free copy of SearchLit, a filing and cross-referencing system for your personal literature collection.

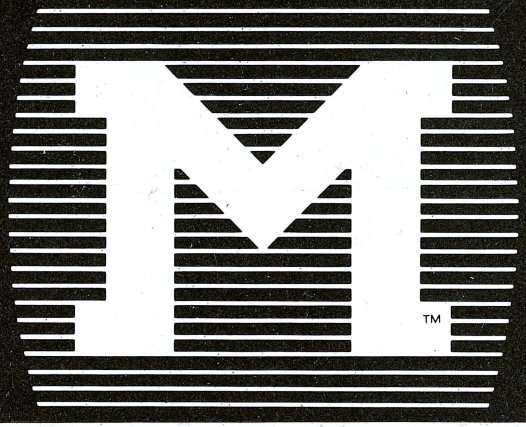
MediScript I $49.50
MediScript II $99.50

In Calif. add 6% sales tax. (Shipping and Handling included in purchase price.) 30 days satisfaction guaranteed or your money back (minus $4.00 Shipping and Handling).

MediSoft
Medical Professions Building
1595 Soquel Drive, Suite 350
Santa Cruz, CA 95065

Software developed for the new generation computers and the new generation users.

COMING... Summer '83 ▪ All New Innovative BASIC Language....



MORGAN COMPUTING CO., INC.

*Mainframe Power For Your IBM*PC*

COPY PROTECTOR™ A software utility that prevents the unauthorized duplication of programs. The normal use of COPY & DISKCOPY commands to duplicate program diskettes is rendered ineffective . . . Only $95.00.

TED™ A PROGRAMMER'S TEXT EDITOR. Features include: move, copy, locate and merge designated lines of code . . . search & replace . . . and is FAST. (128K RAM) . . . Only $95.00. Demo Disk $5.00.

TRANSPORT PC™ For optimizing a warehouse/distribution system Analyzes sources, destinations and inventory levels. $60.00.

SIMPLEX PC™ LINEAR PROGRAMMING with up to 50 variables in 64K $49.95. With sensitivity analysis $100.00

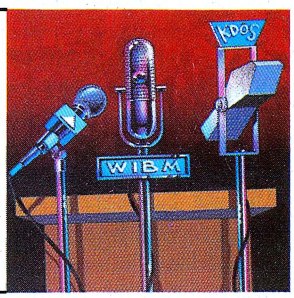
PATHFINDER™ CRITICAL PATH METHOD planning for complex project management and control . . . $80.00.

MLR™ A multiple linear regression statistical program for business and the social sciences. Program handles up to 10 variables, produces the usual statistical measures, and allows for sensitivity analysis. . . . Only $100.00

TRACE 86™ This unusual utility program executes compiled programs at a slow speed while dynamically displaying an Assembler version of the code, the machine registers, and the memory content. TRACE86 is a fascinating tool for learning and debugging . . . Only $75.00.

Call or write **Morgan Computing Co., Inc.**
10400 N. Central Expwy., Suite 210 • Dallas, TX 75231
(214) 739-5895

marketalk news



Unless otherwise indicated, software listed runs in DOS on machines with either display adapter and requires 64K and at least one disk drive.

Δ **Phoenix Performance Systems** (324 South Main Street, Suite 1, Stillwater, MN 55082; 612-430-2980) has announced a system called *The Author* that creates self-instructional training courses on any subject. Produce menus, four types of question screens, and narrative instructional screens. Complete records for each learner who studies a lesson can be displayed and printed. $195.

Δ The first system in its international finance series has been released by **Nissim Associates** (2714 Pine Street, San Francisco, CA 94115; 415-563-6170). *The Multi-Currency General Ledger* is intended for the international bank or corporate branch doing business in more than one currency. Provides financial information by individual currency, consolidates balance-sheet and income-statement data in different currencies into a single report, and automatically revaluates foreign currencies to current rates. Requires two disk drives. $3,800.

Δ *SimpliSoft* is a front-end system for CP/M, PC-DOS, and CP/M-86, from **Durant Software** (2532 Durant Avenue, Suite 250, Berkeley, CA 94704; 415-540-0912). Logically displays file information, including user's own forty-two-character file description. Loads and runs other programs from a menu of program names. $100.

Δ *Micro Cookbook* is a cookbook and recipe management system that retrieves recipes by name, category, or ingredients on hand. Enter your own recipes, alter any of the 154 existing ones, and print shopping lists. Optional soup and salad and appetizer disks available. From **Virtual Combinatics** (Box 755, Rockport, MA 01966; 617-546-6553). $40.

Δ *Reformatter* is a utility program that gives CP/M-86 users access to IBM 3740 formatted disks. Handles all conversion functions, and allows the transfer of files back and forth. From **MicroTech Exports** (467 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 2, Palo Alto, CA 94301; 415-324-9114). Requires eight-inch drive. $350.

Δ Three educational packages from **Europro** (129 Saratoga, Petaluma, CA 94952; 707-763-9700): *Edubase I* teaches you how to write Basic. Includes flowcharting, subroutines, and debugging. On three disks. Requires color/graphics adapter and eighty-column screen. $95. Δ *Edubase II* unlocks the advance functions of Basic programming, including string and substring manipulations, file manipulations (sequential and random), and graphics and color. On three disks. Requires color/graphics adapter and eighty columns. $105. With *Edubase I*: $170. Δ *TMGame* is a fun way for kids and adults to sharpen their math skills. Requires color/graphics adapter and eighty columns. $30.

Δ A direct connection between the pc and the IBM mainframe 43XX through 30XX series is now possible with Forte PC78-2, a hardware interface from **Forte Data Systems** (1500 Norman Avenue, Santa Clara, CA 95050; 408-980-1750). Includes operating software. $150.

Δ *Miner 2049er* is a gold mine of arcade fun from **Micro Lab** (2310 Skokie Valley Road, Highland Park, IL 60035; 312-433-7550). Run, jump, and slide through mines; reinforcing the groundwork along the way. Elevators, cannons, chutes, and ladders will help you; mutants won't. $40.

Δ Those microscopic bugs in *Microcosm*, the strategy game from **Aeon Concepts** (1657 Red Mill, Pittsburgh, PA 15241; 412-831-5352), have been corrected. Version 3.0 also runs up to thirty-seven times faster and supports all colors on sixteen-color monitors. Requires 96K and double-sided disk on 2.0.

Δ A run-time version of SofTech's p-System is available from **IBM** (Box 1328, Boca Raton, FL 33432; 800-447-4700). $50.

Δ An enhanced version of *Informa X* information management system has been released by **Abacus Data** (1920 San Marco Boulevard, Jacksonville, FL 32207; 800-874-8555). The new version is written in Pascal and features cross-file data-sharing, multiple-file reporting, multiple screens per record, broader application capabilities, increased speed and security. $795. Multiuser version: $995.

Δ Apple software can run on a pc or XT using the Quadlink multifunction board from **Quadram** (4357 Park Drive, Norcross, GA 30093; 404-923-6666). The board translates Apple DOS 3.3 into a language the pc can understand; simply load the disk and key in one command. $680.

Δ Turn clicks into commands with the PC Mouse from **Mouse Systems** (2336H Walsh Avenue, Santa Clara, CA 95051; 408-988-0211). Up to fifteen key sequences can be assigned to each button code. Package includes optical mouse, mouse pad, RS-232 interface box and connector, DC power converter, and software interface. $332. Δ *MouseWindow* is a software development package for line drawing, RasterOp operations, and more. $40.

Δ An extended version of the disk file organizer, *HelpWare-XT*, from **SoftWrights** (12606 Greenville Avenue, Suite 100, Dallas, TX 75243; 214-690-0595), supports fixed disks or shared disk systems in local area networks. Includes instant access to directories, single-keystroke commands, screen editor, and more. $245. Δ *CommWare* is a general purpose communications program designed to interface with other micro, mini, or mainframes. Half or full duplex; 110 to 9600 baud. $145.

Δ *The Seybold Report on Professional Computing* is a thorough and well-written business system newsletter that covers one system in depth per issue. Examples: word processors for the pc, Lisa, *1-2-3*, Context *MBA*. Published six times a year by **Seybold Publications** (Box 644, Media, PA 19063; 215-565-2480). $60 per year.

Δ A Computer authoring system aimed at the educational and industrial training market has been developed by **TexaSoft** (3415 Westminster, Suite 100, Dallas, TX 75205; 214-369-0795). *Call* takes advantage of the pc's sound, color, and character graphics. An editor, a grading program, and other utilities are included in the package. Requires 128K and two disk drives. $395. Δ *Your Personal Computer Tutor* gives instruction of the care and use of your machine while teaching some computer fundamentals. $60.

Δ **Associated Technology** (Route 2, Box 448, Estill Springs, TN 37330; 205-837-4718) has announced a guidebook called *How To Become a Successful Technical Consultant*, edited by M. Neighbors, a systems and software consultant. Includes discussions on locating clients, fees, ethics, setting business goals, and writing contracts. $25.

Δ A set of software design standards has been published by **Associated Technology** (Route 2, Box 448, Estill Springs, TN 37330; 205-837-4718). Useful in establishing internal programming and documentation practices, the four-volume set covers documentation practice and standards for programming in Cobol, Fortran, and Basic. $45.

Δ Produce presentation-quality 35mm slides or photographic prints of your video displays with Video Printer from **Computer-Mate** (1006 Hampshire Lane, Richardson, TX 75080; 800-527-3643). Many features are totally automatic; simple controls adjust chroma, brightness, contrast, and raster. Uses standard 35mm film. $2,495.

Δ A regular series of Boston-area workshops will offer professional training to the public on the *MMSForth* word processor, database management, and communication packages. Offered by **Miller Microcomputer Services** (61 Lake Shore Road, Natick, MA 01760; 617-653-6136). Programming ability not required. Call for starting dates. $150 to $250 per workshop.

Δ Accessories from **Compu-Quote** (6914 Berquist Avenue, Canoga Park, CA 91307; 213-348-3662): Qwik-key is a plastic overlay card that fits over the function keys and can be marked to indicate key's use. Pack of three: $4.50. Δ Qwik-Guide are two reference cards that contain all DOS commands, Basic error messages, and control/function key information. $3.25. Δ Qwik-labels help to identify plug-in cards, knobs, and connectors. Mark-your-own blanks included. Eighteen labels: $1.

Δ *ReadiWriter* is a word processor with powerful formatting capabilities, compatibility with the IBM mainframe document composition facility GML and Script languages, and a self-extension feature for building new commands. No limit to file size; compatible with most printers. From **ReadiWare Systems** (Box 680, West Redding, CT 06896; 203-431-3521). $95.

Δ The *Stud Poker Parlor*, from **QSI Software** (Box 3-231 ECB, Anchorage, AK 99501; 907-265-8187), is a no-frills simulation game that plays five or seven-card-stud poker. $29.95.

Δ A plug-in telecommunications card, PConnection, with a direct-connect modem, a real-time clock, and an additional serial I/O port is available from **Microperipheral** (2565 152nd Avenue N.E., Redmond, WA 98052; 206-881-7544). Totally self-contained; only the cord to the phone line is external. $375.

Δ *Coin Inventory System* keeps track of all purchases and sales in completed and uncompleted form for coin dealers, brokers, investors, and hobbyists. From **Dennis Charles Smart** (6840 Seagull Lane, New Orleans, LA 70126; 504-245-8439). Prints and displays eight kinds of reports. Requires two disk drives. Requires 1.1. $499.

Δ The *Sweet-P* plotter works on paper or overhead transparency film; has programmable plotting speed; and comes with basic analytical engineering and business graphics software. From **Enter Computer** (6867 Nancy Ridge Drive, Suite D, San Diego, CA 92121; 619-450-0601). $795.

Δ **Royal Seating** (Box 753, Cameron, TX 76520; 817-697-6421) has designed a set of computer furniture especially for the pc. The Modular Microsystems feature walnut-woodgrain plastic tops, sturdy steel frame construction, and options for a variety of configurations. From $92 to $225.

Δ A two-disk collection of more than fifty Basic and *VisiCalc* spreadsheet programs can be found in *The Executive Package*, from **Alpha Software** (6 New England Executive Park, Burlington, MA 01803; 617-229-2924). Based on the book *Executive Computing*, by John M. Nevison, the *VisiCalc* disk is also compatible with *1-2-3* and *Multiplan*. $145.

Δ **IBM** (Box 1328, Boca Raton, FL 33432; 800-447-4700) has announced that, beginning with current production, a new system board containing 64K of user memory will be featured in all American and Canadian-made pcs. With the use of memory cards, maximum addressable memory may be increased to a total of 640K.

Δ An integral Bell 212-compatible modem with integrated voice and data capability, as well as communication at 300 or 1200 baud has been announced by **BizComp** (Box 7498, Menlo Park, CA 94025; 408-745-1616). The PC:IntelliModem allows programmatic switching between voice and data without redialing. Auto dial, auto-repeat dial, and auto answer included. $499.

Δ The *Datatext* word processor features embedded English commands to format text, true proportional spacing with justification by character, and generation of alphabetized indexes. Files created with *dBase II* can be merged with text. From **Datatek** (2621 Enterprise Road, Clearwater, FL 33515; 813-797-6464). $450.

Δ A collection of more than fifty programs and techniques for programmers called *Peeks 'n' Pokes for the IBM Personal Computer* is offered by **Data Base Decisions** (14 Bonnie Lane, Atlanta, GA 30328; 404-256-3860). Includes general-purpose assembler routines in both Basic and Pascal. Requires eighty columns. $30.

Δ In three cassette lessons of two hours each, *How To Use WordStar* guides a novice through the commands and capabilities of the popular word processor. Additional topics and additional learning reinforcement are provided on the flip side of the tape. From **FlipTrack Learning Systems** (526 North Main Street, Glen Ellyn, IL 60137). $49.95.

Δ **Peter Norton** (2210 Wilshire Boulevard, Santa Monica, CA 90403; 213-399-3948) has not been sleeping: Version 2.00 of the *Norton Utilities* has been announced, with improvements. Utilities work with the new formats; hard disk versions of the key utilities and three new routines have been added. $80. Upgrade: $20. Δ If you enjoyed Peter Norton's articles from his book, *Inside the IBM/PC*, you can now order it. Available with it is an *Access Set* of programs to help you explore your machine. $20. Book and disk: $80.

Δ *Metafile* is a comprehensive information management system integrating database management, word processing, spreadsheets, forms generation, communications, report generation, and applications development. Combine information into multiple screen windows to form composite reports. From **Sensor-based Systems** (Olmstead Federal Building, Chatfield, MN 55923; 507-867-4440). $1,995.

Δ Transfer Basic, text, and *VisiCalc* files from the Apple II with *Tie-Line* software from **Trax** (8948 West Twenty-fourth Street, Los Angeles, CA 90045; 213-670-9699). No adapter or interface required; supplied cable links the two machines. $170.

Δ A cost accounting and project management system for architectural and engineering firms and related industries is available from **Computer Applications** (2400 Poplar Avenue, Suite 318, Memphis, TN 38112; 901-458-8630). *Cost-Acumen* features extensive internal cross-checks. Requires CP/M-80 or CP/M-86. $995. Demo: $95.

Δ The *Volkswriter International Edition* is available for those who correspond or do business in more than one language. **Lifetree Software** (411 Pacific Street, Suite 315, Monterey, CA 93940; 408-373-4718) has designed this special version of its word processor to write in English, French, German, Spanish, and Italian interchangeably. $225. Δ Also released is the charter issue of the *Lifetree National Newsletter*, which will be distributed to *Volkswriter* owners and dealers. Δ Hot News: *Volkswriter 1.2* runs with DOS 2.0 on the XT.

Δ *Spectra/Medical* is a medical office management system for practices of up to fifteen doctors, from **Spectra Soft** (Box 277, Chandler, AZ 85224; 602-963-6380). Features include total accounts receivable control with open items or balance forward capabilities, variable period aging reports, delinquency notices, daily cash reports, journal and day sheets. Multiple patient entering and accessing; six complete insurance forms included (AMA, Blue Shield, Medicare), printed for interim or period-to-date transactions. Requires XT. $2,495.

Δ An expansion memory board, the Versa-Ram MT512-XIB, ex-

pands memory while serving as a data buffer or electronic floppy disk and print spooler. From **Memory Technologies** (4343 Grand Prix Drive, Logansport, IN 46947; 219-722-1454). 64K: $399. 512K: $1,169. Δ The Versa-Ram Plus multifunction expansion board is designed to be used as a memory and communications adapter for the pc, networking hardware, and printer/plotter driver. 64K: $565. Δ The Versa-Ram MT64MX and MT192NX are two plug-in memory expansion boards. Software included. 64K: $299. 192K: $449.

Δ Trend-spotting tool: **BusiSoft** (6140 Horseshoe Bar Road, Loomis, CA 95650; 916-652-9227) has introduced the *BusiSoft Analyzer*, a financial-statement-analysis program that gives a large variety of ratios derived from information entered from company balance sheets and records. Enter data from more than one financial period; column provided for industry averages. $199.

Δ **Computer Creations** (Box 38, Palo Alto, CA 94302; 415-595-4466) has developed *Ultimate*, a word processor that's also a database manager, twelve-thousand-word dictionary, and mail-merge program. $385.

Δ Format text and data simultaneously with *WordPlan*, from **DEA Software** (Box 968, Fremont, CA 94537; 415-471-9752). Program makes it possible to perform calculations on variables embedded within text. Ideal for proposals, price lists, and form letters. Requires CP/M-86. $195.

HARD COPY JUST TOOK A TURN FOR THE BETTER.

At last, you can output all the columns of your spreadsheet all at one time, all on one continuous page. Sideways, the ingeniously simple software program, causes your output to print out–you guessed it–sideways. So you can print as many columns as you need with just one print command.

It's an end to the ugly job of taping spreadsheet pages together side-by-side. And Sideways even lets you print in bigger type when you want big, clear presentations. For any text file, for dozens of uses, think Sideways. Your hard copy will read easier for it.

All you need to go Sideways is your IBM Personal Computer, and an Epson® or IBM printer with GrafTrax.®* Get Sideways at your local computer store. Or send a $60 check or money order to Funk Software, P.O. Box 1290, Cambridge, MA 02238. (617) 497-6339. MC/VISA accepted.

SIDEWAYS™
FOR EASY-READING HARD COPY

*Available at leading computer stores.

Δ Emulate the Hewlett-Packard 2622A CRT terminal with *PC 2622* software from **Walker Richer and Quinn** (Lake Union Place, 1914 North Thirty-fourth Street, Suite 201, Seattle, WA 98103; 206-634-0503). Uses all available pc memory and supports up to 640K of displayed memory. Function key definitions and labels may be downloaded from host V-3000 system or defined through keyboard. $295.

Δ *Information Please* is a database management system compatible with *VisiCalc* and *MultiPlan*. Performs column math, sorts, alphabetizes, stores, organizes, and so on; stores up to ten charts per file drawer; print sideways. From **MicroRIM** (1750 112th Avenue N.E., Bellevue, WA 98004; 206-453-6017). $295.

Δ A micro version of the timesharing *Prophit II* financial modeling system will be marketed by **Software Libraries** (Box 844, Pasadena, CA 91102; 213-793-1700). A module of *The Business Library*, the package has a capacity of 400 actual available report lines of 120 columns, with fifteen additional totaling columns available. Includes graphics capabilities. Available in July. $695.

Δ Database management software for the XT has been introduced by **Continental Software** (11223 South Hindry Avenue, Los Angeles, CA 90045; 213-417-8031). *Megafile* combines filing, graphics, and reports features and is compatible with both *VisiCalc* and *WordStar*. $195. Δ XT and pc owners can both use the general ledger module of the *SBA* series, compatible with *VisiCalc*, *1-2-3*, *dBase II*, and *WordStar*. Additional modules to be announced. $395.

Δ **Interactive Tele-Marketing** (936 Dewing Avenue, Heritage Square, Suite E, Lafayette, CA 94549; 800-334-3404) is a membership organization that provides software information, selection, and buying. Telephone access to experts, special software reports, monthly newsletter, catalogs, and detailed product reviews are all part of the service. $100 per year.

Δ *The Foresight Data Manager*, from **The Foresight Group** (Box 5196, 728 Sam Hill, Irving, TX 75062; 214-256-2051), can convert files from other database systems without rekeying, offers up to forty-eight key fields per record, produces reports, and more. $199.95. Δ Spreadsheet template planners are available for *VisiCalc*, *SuperCalc*, *Multiplan*, and *1-2-3: Financial Planner*. $79.95. Δ *Tax Planner*. $119.95. Δ *Real Estate Planner*. $129.95.

Δ Two new softcover publications from **Sybex** (2344 Sixth Street, Berkeley, CA 94710; 415-848-8233): *Doing Business with Pascal*, by Richard Hergert and Douglas Hergert, explains the necessary Pascal language extensions, program development, and system integration for special applications. Includes listings and sample runs. $15.95. Δ *Doing Business with SuperCalc*, by Stanley R. Trost, includes more than forty applications for accounting and management planning, from financial statements to master budgets and investment strategies. $12.95.

Δ Simplify the incorporation of graphic data into a word processor text file with *Grids*, enhancement software from **ATC Software** (Route 2, Box 448, Estill Springs, TN 37330; 205-837-4718). Includes more than fifty of the most commonly used graph paper formats with instructions on creating hundreds more. $23.

Δ Four-color text displays are available in the *ColorBIZ* line of business and entertainment packages from **ColorCorp** (208 North Berkshire, Bloomfield Hills, MI 48013; 313-335-2255). *Inventory* is an interactive database and report generator for situations such as multiple stores, dual item or part numbers, location sizes, and so on. $498. Δ *Loan* can analyze numerous financial alternatives. $30. Δ *BioRhythm* can help you exploit your natural body rhythms. $27. Δ *Gambler* is a casino games package, including blackjack, baccarat, and keno. $28.

Δ The Mark VI is a modem with 300 baud, Bell 103 compatibility, tone and pulse dialing, and full auto-answer/auto-dial programmability. From **Anchor Automation** (6624 Valjean Avenue, Van Nuys, CA 91406; 213-997-6493). Fits into the System Unit; software included. $279.

Δ The *PFS:Sampler* is a thirty-four-page collection of forms and related reports created by a cross section of *PFS:File* and *PFS:Report* owners. Forms in the book are organized by industry and profession and are cross-referenced by applications in the index. Published by **Software Publishing** (1901 Landings Drive, Mountain View, CA 94043; 415-962-8910). Free.

Δ *The Running Log* stores and analyzes running data. Log items include miles, time of day, temperature, course, pace, shoes worn, and so on. Suitable for all levels of runners. DOS 1.1, two disk drives, eighty columns, and color/graphics adapter required. From **Marathon Software** (Box 26 Pinecrest, Clancy, MT 59634; 406-933-5783). $44.95.

Δ *Ideal APL*, by Dr. Navin Mehta, author of TIS-APL, is written for the professional APL programmer and includes features found on mainframe systems. Includes full screen editing, page input, control over color, sound, graphics, and so on. From **Ideal Computer Systems** (68 Robie Street, Fundy Trail Mall, Truro, Nova Scotia, Canada B2N 1K8; 902-895-8062). $495. Limited educational version: $295.

Δ **The Forth Interest Group** (Box 1105, San Carlos, CA 94070; 415-962-8653) is a worldwide organization of more than thirty-five hundred members in thirty chapters. It publishes the *Forth Dimensions* newsletter six times a year to keep members informed of news, applications, and recent developments of the language. Periodic meetings held. Membership: $15 per year.

Δ Build your own interface with compatible breadboards from **Douglas Electronics** (718 Marina Boulevard, San Leandro, CA 94577; 415-483-8770). General-purpose breadboard has space for mounting ICs in combinations of various sizes. $35. Δ Wire-wrap panel has space for up to eighty-five sixteen-pin wire-wrap sockets. $30. Δ Bare extender board: $25. Without connector installed: $20. Connector only: $7.50.

Δ The MicroKart is a flexible workstation available in three wood grain finishes; has sides that lift to tables; rear slot for paper feed; and caster wheels for mobility. From **Future Solutions** (3198-H Airport Loop Drive, Costa Mesa, CA 92626; 714-556-2252). $499.95.

Δ Cards from **Sigma Designs** (2990 Scott Boulevard, Santa Clara, CA 95050; 408-496-0536): The 256+Async memory and communications board allows you to use both the memory and rear connector panel space. $695. Δ The system support card provides parallel printer port, asynchronous communications, game control adapter, and battery-powered clock/calendar. $295. Δ The stack board makes available up to 512K memory when piggybacked with enhanced support card. $195, without memory. Δ The enhanced support card is a five-function board, including serial port, printer parallel port, and game adapter. $575. Δ The Floppy+Clock can run up to four disk drives, either single or double sided. $265.

Δ Make any desk a workplace for your pc with the Step Down, an aluminum extension surface in three colors, available in custom sizes. From **Computer Products Unlimited** (331 South River Drive, Suite 10, Tempe, AZ 85281; 602-941-0935). $59.95.

Δ Put your expansion memory piggyback on an I/O board with Extend-A-Slot, an extension kit from **Tamac Electronics** (1028 Fleetwood Drive, San Jose, CA 95120). For IBM-manufactured boards only. $13.75.

Δ **Cornucopia** (Suite 840, 55 Sutter Street, San Francisco, CA 94115) is offering unprotected programs for those interested in building a library of inexpensive software. See the program for five to ten dollars, pay the balance if you like it. Write for catalog.

Δ Five program modules, including disk copy and print formatter, are available in *PC-System Utility Pak*, from **Cortland Data Systems** (Box 14414, Chicago, IL 60614; 312-549-2029). $39.95. Δ Three new arcade games: *The Exterminator* (like *Centipede*), *Magic Circle*, and *Chicken Little*. $29.95 each. Δ Also, the company has introduced *Electronic Checkbook*, a home and small business financial management system. Generate budget and audit reports; print reports in either 80 or 132 column. $120. ▲

The Executive Secretary

- **Document editor**
- **Powerful printing program**
- **Flexible database**
- **Mail list merge for business letters**
- **Auto-outlining for reports**
- **Pre-printed forms manager**
- **Electronic mail**
- **25,000 word spelling checker**
- **Alphabetical indexer for books and theses**

INTEGRATED means that all of the above is included in the $295 suggested retail price, a combination that would cost hundreds of dollars more—IF you could find a set of programs that would work together in the first place.

INTEGRATED means that every part of the package follows the same rules. There's no need to learn one set of keypresses for the editor and a separate set of rules for the database.

THE EDITOR: It allows you to format as you type. You can do on-screen justification and alter left and right margins. The mark and move options let you arrange your work in multiple columns, if you desire. And Quickprint™ lets you alter your margins even further and produce finished copies immediately.

THE DATABASE: Our users tell us that the Electronic Card File is worth the price of the entire package. It's not really, but with its ease of use, its multiple alphabetic and numeric sorts, its report options that include totals and subtotals, it is superior to many databases costing well over $100.00.

PRE-PRINTED FORMS MANAGER: Use a sequence of special embedded commands to define the row and column positions of the blanks on pre-printed forms. Our template helps you. Then use mail-list merging to combine information from your database with your pre-printed forms.

INTEGRATED

ELECTRONIC MAIL: Either by direct connection or with a Hayes Smartmodem you can transfer your documents to another computer—or to your local typesetter for printing.

MAIL LIST MERGE: You can write documents in the editor that call for information from the Electronic Card File and merge the information to produce customized forms and form letters. Conditional printing allows you to skip words, blocks of text, or entire letters based on criteria that you define in each card in the card file. And you can also draw information from other popular databases, from Visicalc, and from your own custom programs.

SPELLING CHECKER: Easier to use than any other spelling checker. Ours comes with 10,000 words and a capacity for 15,000 more. Or you can start your own list from scratch. Documents are scanned, and you are shown misspellings in context. Correct them on-the-fly, or add words to the dictionary as you scan.

RELIABLE means that earlier versions of this software have been in the field for years on the Apple and other computers.

THE PRINTER: For more demanding output needs, you can embed format commands in your document while you edit and let our reformatting printer program handle all of your layout concerns. More than 40 embedded commands allow you to control every aspect of layout, including pagination, binding margins, flexible page headers, volume-length documents, outline indentation, and far more. You can employ electronic shorthand so that commonly used phrases are represented by three or fewer keystrokes. And if your printer is capable of it, you can do justification by incremental spacing, boldface, and more.

RELIABLE

RELIABLE means that thousands of users have logged more than 1,000,000 hours of use on the Apple version.

RELIABLE means that we back you up after the sale with a hotline number printed right on the program disk. If your dealer doesn't know the answer, we do.

And yet this release of The Executive Secretary goes far beyond what the Apple version can do. Let's be specific:

ALPHABETICAL INDEXER: This unique tool allows you to specify page numbers for each occurrence of a term and to produce a properly formatted alphabetical index of those terms. Two levels of indexing are supported, so that entries like 'beans, navy' and 'beans, green' are handled properly with two levels of indentation.

AUTO-OUTLINER: You can plan outline up to five levels deep with an unknown number of entires per level. As you add entries, the outline is renumbered automatically.

ORDER BY PHONE
Available at your local dealer or call us at

(612) 929-7104

We accept VISA/MasterCard

Ask for The Executive Secretary at your local dealer.

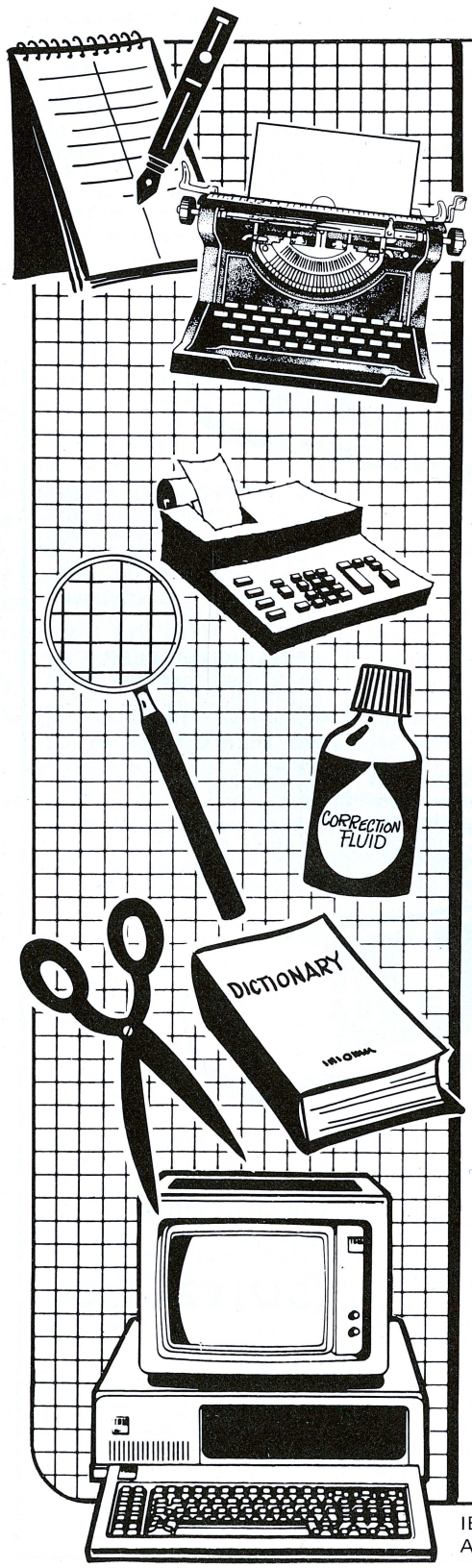
SOF/SYS, INC.

4306 Upton Ave. South, Minneapolis, MN 55410

STATE OF THE ART

Business Solutions for your IBM® PC

From NORELL Data Systems



EASYCALC™ Electronic Spreadsheet

THE BEST PRICE/PERFORMANCE FINANCIAL MODELER

With so many financial calculators available for the IBM PC, it is difficult to determine which one is the right one for you. EASYCALC has all of the important features that you would want in an electronic spreadsheet, including advanced features not found in other popular products at twice the price. Features like External Referencing, full Forward Referencing, Easy Sheet Transfers, 16 Digits of Precision, Long Labeling capability, Flexible Column Width, Multiple Formatting Options, 1/0 to Modem, disk files or printer in Pure ASCII, Support for both Display Adapters and Color Monitors, Clean Display Design, extensive On-Line Help, "Hands On" Tutorial . . . and EASYCALC comes complete with Tax Templates to automatically compute your IRS Form 1040. EASYCALC is the all purpose financial modeling tool that gives you the best price/performance ratio at a fraction of what you would expect to pay.
$99.95

EASYDATA™ Information Processor

THE EASY & FRIENDLY DATA MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The IBM PC software market is flooded with Data Base Management Systems that widely differ in performance and usability. Many of these systems almost require that you be a specialist in computer science before you can implement a simple application such as a mailing list. EASYDATA is designed specifically for the first time user. It is a powerful menu-driven file management system containing the most desired features found in data base managers costing three times the price. Applications can be quickly developed, prototyped, and installed with minimal effort. Over twenty processing programs comprise the system, including screen definition, data entry, report generation, label processing, file conversion, and other systems utilities. Unique storage structures eliminate sorting during data extraction and report generation. The EASYDATA Information Processor comes complete with a comprehensive mailing list example and a reference manual exceeding 400 pages.
$250.00

EASYEDIT™ Text Editor

NOT ALL FULL-SCREEN EDITORS ARE CREATED EQUAL

All text editors available for the IBM PC today claim to be the best or the most powerful. The fact is, that the best text editor for you is the one that accomplishes your editing requirements effectively. EASYTEXT is state of the art at its best. We have implemented the best features found in two-dimensional cursor based full screen editors, along with improvements that the competition hasn't thought of yet. Features like split-screen editing of the same file or two separate files concurrently, virtual file 1/0, macro programmable function keys, easy to remember command functions, side file capability, quick response. To make it even better, our documentation manual comes complete with a comprehensive tutorial and an easy to use reference manual. We don't claim to be the best, you decide for yourself.
$79.95

EASYTEXT™ Format Processor

THE FEATURES OF AN EXPENSIVE WORD PROCESSOR

Here's the perfect companion program to go along with the EASYEDIT Text Editor. EASYTEXT is a formatting program that provides the features of an expensive word processing program. Prepare files using your favorite text editor, then pass them through EASYTEXT for formatting. The program performs fill and justification, pagination, page headers, footers and numbering, indents, hanging indents, centering, underlining, bold print and more. In addition, the EASYTEXT program allows you to prepare a table of contents and index. Escape sequences are passed unaltered for printer control without affecting formatting. Inclusion feature allows incorporation of form letters or standard paragraphs from multiple files. Output may be directed to the screen, printer, or to a disk file for complete flexibility.
$79.95

EASYPROOF™ Spelling Checker

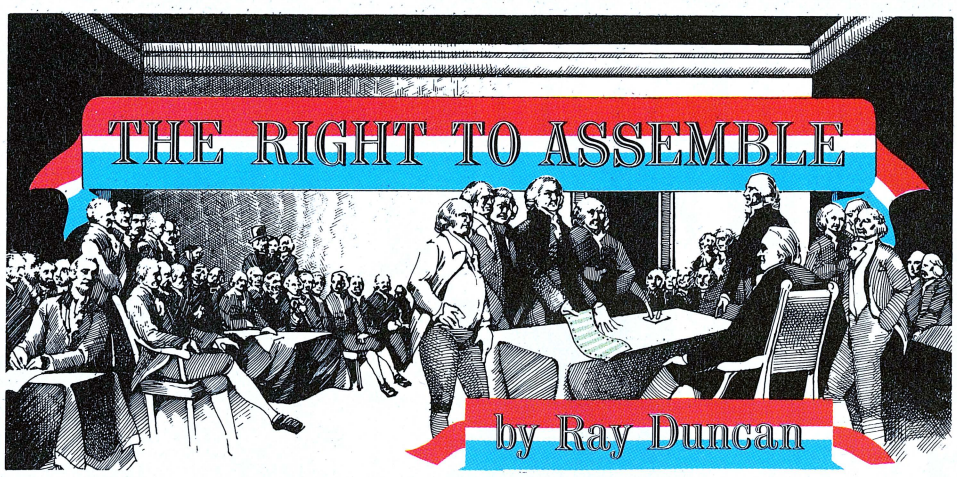
THE SPELLING CHECKER THAT WON'T KEEP YOU WAITING

Check your documents for accurate spelling with a program carefully crafted to fit your machine and budget. EASYPROOF detects misspelled words in documents created by most text editors and word processors. This program's flexibility lets you simply list unknown words, marks them in your document for easy editing, or add them to your dictionary. Sophisticated algorithms and a prefix/suffix table compress an effective dictionary of over 50,000 words into fewer than 42K bytes of disk space. Fast in-memory lookup processes over 6,000 words per minute. Add new words, prefix/suffixes, and even customize EASYPROOF for British spellings.
$49.95

IBM is a registered trademark of IBM Corporation

All orders must include 3% shipping & handling & applicable taxes

NORELL Data Systems / 3400 Wilshire Blvd. / P.O. Box 70127 / Los Angeles, CA 90010 / (213) 257-2026



Before investigating further the details of memory addressing on the Intel 8088 microprocessor, we'll digress this month to the interesting topic of interrupts. This is a subject that frequently and unnecessarily intimidates assembly language programmers.

Let us ponder the common telephone as a model for the operation of interrupts. The ringing of the phone, whether you view it as welcome or obnoxious, alerts you to the fact that someone has information to deliver to your particular node of the vast Bell network. You can abandon your present task immediately to pick up the handset, let the phone continue to ring briefly while you quickly bring some chore to a natural stopping point, or choose not to answer at all if you deem whatever else you're doing to be more important. If you consider your work to be really critical and you don't even want to be distracted by the mere noise of the telephone's bell, you can unplug the device.

Imagine the fix we would be in if telephones didn't have ringers. The only way to tell if someone was trying to reach us would be to pick up the handset and listen at periodic intervals. If we didn't want to chance missing any calls at all, we would have to pick up the phone very frequently indeed—and we wouldn't get much else done.

But the bell on a telephone does more than just allow you to respond to messages as you see fit without the overhead of periodically sampling the line; it virtually eliminates what we might term "mental overhead" for this device. Between rings of the telephone, you're not just ignoring it; the term ignoring implies a screening of the information coming to you through your senses. Instead, you're usually not even conscious of the existence of the telephone.

In much the same manner, interrupts are commonly used as signals from peripheral devices to let the computer's central processor know that information is waiting or that some action needs to be performed. Between interrupts, the computer can simply forget about the peripheral device; it doesn't need to poll it every so often to find out if there's anything to do.

Computers usually have a very efficient hard-wired facility, which, when triggered by the interrupt, allows suspension of the current task and rapid transfer of control to a section of program code called an *interrupt service routine*. The interrupt service routine reacts to the interrupt with appropriate input or output commands.

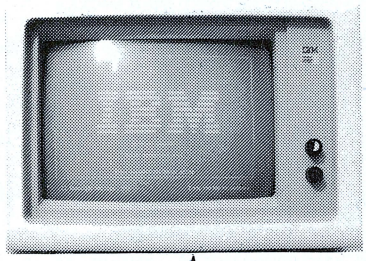
In addition, computers often have instructions available that allow their control programs (operating systems) to control the response to interrupts. If the program *enables* interrupts and if the proper service routines have been loaded into memory, the appropriate response to an interrupt will be automatic. If the operating system is performing a critical task, it can *mask* interrupts temporarily; when masking is in effect, the interrupt signals are received and noted, but the usual response is deferred. Finally, if the operating system just wants to ignore interrupts altogether, it can do the equivalent of unplugging the phone by *disabling* the interrupt system.

Since the typical computer has many peripheral devices competing for its attention, there is also usually some provision for prioritizing of interrupts. This allows signals from critical events or fast I/O devices to take precedence over interrupts from slower or less important ones. A good example of prioritizing is the "power-fail" interrupt that's provided on some machines, which will get control no matter what else is going on, so that register contents can be saved and the central processor can be brought to a halt in an orderly manner.

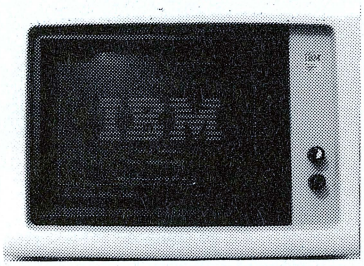
The Intel 8088's interrupt-handling capabilities are sophisticated and versatile even by the standards of much larger computers. Every external device that can produce an interrupt is assigned a type code that identifies it to the central processor; a total of 256 interrupt types are available.

Interrupts may be generated internally as well as by a peripheral. Internal interrupts might be generated by deliberate action of a program that incorporates a "software interrupt" instruction (see "Snooping in ROM: The Software Interrupt," by Peter

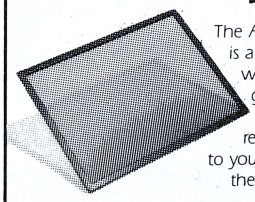
FAST PAIN RELIEF



FROM THIS
TO THIS



The **SDC ANTIGLARE SCREEN** eliminates the eyestrain caused by reflections and improves the contrast of the display **without reducing brightness.**



The ANTIGLARE SCREEN is a tightly woven mesh which passes text and graphics through unimpeded, but won't reflect room light back to you. It mounts neatly in the recessed area of the PC Display

SEEING IS BELIEVING

See it at participating Computerland stores and other fine computer retailers or order direct from us. Test it for 30 days. It's guaranteed to end stressful glare even in bright light or your money back!
Only $49.95 ea.

24 HOUR TOLL FREE ORDER LINE
1-800-531-5255
EXT 804

(In Texas)
1-800-252-9146 EXT 804

Mastercard or Visa only. No COD.
All orders shipped within 24 hours postpaid.
Dealers Inquiries Invited

SDC
SCREEN DATA CORPORATION
240 CEDAR KNOLLS ROAD
CEDAR KNOLLS, N.J. 07927

YOUR IBM® PERSONAL COMPUTER IS ABOUT TO BECOME MORE POWERFUL THAN YOU EVER DREAMED POSSIBLE.

SAN FRANCISCO
Friday-Sunday, June 17-19, 1983
Brooks Hall/Civic Center
10:30 AM to 5:30 PM Daily

BOSTON
Saturday-Monday, October 8-10, 1983
(Columbus Day Weekend)
Bayside Exposition Center
10:30 AM to 5:30 PM Daily

Produced by Northeast Expositions Inc., the people who brought you Applefest, CP/M '83, and the National Computer Shows.
826 Boylston Street, Chestnut Hill, Massachusetts 02167, 617-739-2000 or 800-841-7000.
For information on exhibiting at PC '83, please call 800-343-2222.
Cosponsored by *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer.*

ANNOUNCING PC '83 THE INTERNATIONAL CONFERENCE AND EXPOSITION FOR PC USERS

In the last few months, *thousands* of exciting new products have become available to make your IBM Personal Computer work in hundreds of innovative, landmark applications. By adding the right software, plug-in cards, peripherals and accessories, you can make your PC more productive and useful than you ever dreamed possible.

And now there's finally a way to learn about and try out all of these products: PC '83, the first international event *exclusively* for PC users.

THE LARGEST EVER

The exposition portion of PC '83 is the largest gathering of PC-compatible products ever held. You'll find, under one roof, more than 400 exhibits of software for business, professional, home, personal and education applications; plug-in cards for memory expansion, telecommunications, speech and many other functions; hundreds of peripherals, including printers, networking systems and innovative new storage devices; plus dozens of publications, books and invaluable support services.

PC '83 brings together the *entire* PC world.

RELIABLE AND COST-EFFECTIVE

Think about the different vehicles available for buying software and add-ons for your PC. You can shop at local computer stores, but they usually have a very limited selection of products and a less-than-expert staff. You can buy through mail order—and take some big risks if you get products that don't work or don't do what you expected.

At PC '83 you have the best of all worlds. You can see *all* the different PC-compatible products in one location at one time. You can talk with factory experts rather than just local salespeople. You can 'test drive' each product and decide if it's right for you. And when you find what you're looking for, you can buy it right on the spot.

Best of all, you'll save hundreds—even thousands—of dollars at PC '83. Most of the products shown at PC '83 are sold at special show prices, so you won't have to look hard to find incredible values. And because PC '83 will help you make more informed purchase decisions, you'll end up with products that are better suited to your applications.

A REMARKABLE CONFERENCE PROGRAM

The conference program at PC '83 isn't just a warmed-over, pared-down version of other computer conferences. The seminars, workshops and forums at PC '83 are the result of months of research and planning targeted toward one specific goal: helping you get absolutely the most out of your IBM Personal Computer.

The program features world-renowned PC authorities speaking at over 100 educational sessions. Seminars provide an in-depth, understandable look at a broad range of PC uses in business, home and education. Seminars emphasize 'how to,' telling you specifically what you need to know—in non-technical language—to use the PC in dozens of different applications.

Forums present an inside look at what's happening in the PC-compatible industry and what new developments you can expect in the next few years.

Software and Hardware Spotlights are a PC '83 exclusive. These workshops address one of the biggest problems that virtually all computer users face: how to decide which software and hardware packages are best for your applications. Each Spotlight provides a detailed discussion and demonstration (with large-screen television) of a group of products, covering their features, capabilities *and* limitations. Experts are on hand at each of these sessions to answer all your questions.

EASY ON YOUR FEET

We've thought of a lot of details to make your visit to PC '83 just a little more pleasant. As with all of our events, the show is fully carpeted, so your feet won't give out before you've seen all the exhibits.

Our unique Conference and Exhibits Guide helps you quickly find the exhibits and educational sessions you want to attend—even if you can't remember their names. And the Guide is provided free of charge to all attendees.

If you're traveling some distance to attend PC '83, we'll arrange a discounted hotel room near the show site through the PC '83 Housing Bureau. On request, we will also provide information on things to do, places to visit and where to eat in San Francisco and Boston—to make your stay in these grand cities a memorable and relaxing one.

A TOTAL SUPPORT SERVICE

Let's face it, getting support for your PC is tough. The PC magazines, newsletters, user groups and retailers are certainly helpful. But there are so many different products, services and things to learn about for your PC, what you really need is *one* event that brings everything together in one place in a well-organized format.

PC '83 does it all. It showcases all the PC-compatibles under one roof. It has a complete and comprehensive program of seminars, forums and product workshops. And it's produced with the quality and professionalism you've come to expect from Northeast Expositions.

So if you do anything with the IBM Personal Computer or if you're considering buying one, be sure to put PC '83 in your calendar right away.

Your PC will certainly appreciate it.

DAILY REGISTRATION FEES

Exhibits-only badges are $8 per day, and the Conference Program is $15 per day.

SPECIAL PRE-REGISTRATION DISCOUNT

If you plan to attend PC '83 save now with advance registration. Three-day Exhibits and Conference badges are $48, you save $21. Three-day Exhibits only badges are $18, you save $6. One-day Exhibits and Conference badges are $23 and one-day Exhibits only badges are $8.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

To receive additional information about attending or exhibiting at PC '83, including the Conference, Seminar, Workshop and Panel Discussions Program, or information on local hotels call 617-739-2000 or 800-841-7000 (Boston).

ANY QUESTIONS? CALL 800-841-7000 (BOSTON)

Produced by Northeast Expositions, nationwide producers of the National Computer Shows, Applefest and CP/M '83. 826 Boylston Street, Chestnut Hill, Massachusetts 02167.

IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corp.

What you need is what you get:

Auto-dial and 1200 bps

We left out most of the whistles and bells when we designed the MT212C. With both auto-dial and auto-answer, the MT212C gives you fast, trouble-free full duplex communications with other 212A modems at 1200 bps, and also saves you money. For only $550, you get the features you need without paying for all those you'll never use.

Please call or write today for more information on the MT212C modem, or on our other 212A compatible modems (including the MT212AD, which has all of the whistles and bells). We have the right modem for you.

MULTI-TECH SYSTEMS

Multi-Tech Systems, Inc., 82 Second Avenue SE, New Brighton, MN 55112, (612) 631-3550, TWX 910-563-3610

Norton, *Softalk*, February 1983), or they might result from certain types of errors occurring during program execution. Interrupts are handled in the very same way by the computer's interrupt processing section, regardless of whether their origin is internal or external. This common handling approach greatly simplifies the coding and testing of interrupt service routines.

The 8088 is usually coupled with another Intel device called the 8259 Programmable Interrupt Controller (PIC), which contains the logic necessary to mask, unmask, and prioritize interrupt requests from the various peripheral devices. Programs can send commands to the PIC at will in order to control the responses to specific interrupt types. The 8088's internal control over interrupts is quite nonspecific; there is an interrupt flag that determines whether any interrupts will be recognized or not, and there are two instructions that turn this flag on and off.

If so many possible types of interrupts are allowed, how can the computer quickly respond with the appropriate action? Rapid transfer to the proper program for a given event is provided through a table of *interrupt vectors*. The 1,024 bytes of memory starting at location 0 are reserved for 256 four-byte addresses, each of which corresponds to one of the 256 interrupt types.

When an interrupt service routine is loaded into memory, the loader must also place the routine's starting address into the correct position in the interrupt vector table. When an interrupt is recognized, these four bytes are fetched automatically, by special hard-wired logic in the computer, and are used to force a transfer of program control to the appropriate service routine.

Now for a more technical summary of the sequence of events caused by an interrupt.

When the CPU's interrupt line is triggered, the instruction currently being executed is completed (there are a few exceptions), and then the state of the interrupt flag (IF) is examined. If IF is false (previously cleared by means of a CLI instruction), no action is taken; the interrupt is discarded. If IF is true (previously set via an STI instruction), the CPU processes the interrupt.

The current contents of the CPU flags, code segment register, and instruction pointer are pushed onto the stack. The interrupt type (a number between 0 and 255) is read in from the PIC and multiplied by 4 to form an index into the interrupt vector table. The contents of the first two bytes of the indexed slot are loaded into the instruction pointer, and the contents of the second two bytes are loaded into the code segment register; this has the same effect as a *jump* instruction and causes program execution to transfer to the interrupt service routine.

The computer automatically clears the interrupt flag when an interrupt is recognized. Thus, if an interrupt service routine wishes to allow itself to be interrupted in turn, it must explicitly turn interrupts back on with the *set interrupt* instruction (STI). If this is done, said routine might be temporarily suspended by a higher priority interrupt; otherwise the first interrupt service routine will be executed until its work is finished. The service routine must end with an *interrupt return* (IRET) instruction, which automatically pops the saved flags, code segment, and instruction pointer values off the stack back into the appropriate registers, causing resumption of the program that was originally running.

If interrupts are allowed to pile on top of each other or "nest," extreme care must be taken in the creation of the service routines. If inadequate stack space is available, the system will crash in unpredictable—and usually unreproducible—ways. A particularly subtle problem is encountered when an interrupt routine inadvertently invokes itself recursively. For example, if the processing routine for a divide overflow causes *another* divide overflow, the routine will be reentered over and over until the stack overflows and the system dies.

A few of the interrupt types have been predefined by Intel as internal or CPU-generated interrupts; these always require service routines to be present. The necessary program code is usually supplied within whichever operating system you are using (although, of course, you can take over service of any interrupt within your own programs simply by changing the address in the vector table).

Predefined interrupt type 0 is generated internally by the CPU whenever a divide instruction results in an overflow (a result too large to fit into the destination register). Interrupt type 1 is employed in a special CPU single-step execution mode and is used by debugging tools.

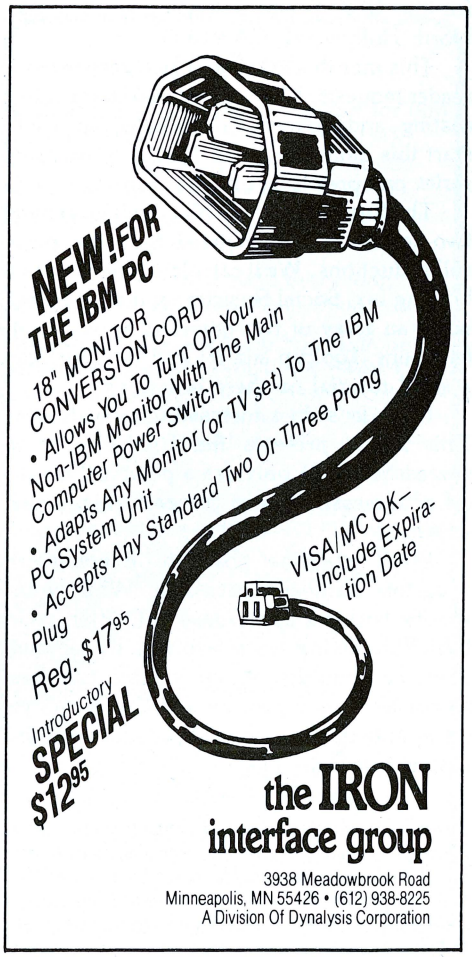
Interrupt type 2 is called NMI, for *nonmaskable interrupt*. Its signals arrive on a special line and cannot be masked or disabled. NMI is typically used for the sensing of catastrophic events, such as memory parity errors or power failure.

Interrupt type 3 is reserved for a special one-byte software interrupt instruction, which is used by debugging utilities to insert break points in other programs. Finally, interrupt type 4 is triggered only if the overflow flag (OF) is set *and* a special INTO instruction is executed. Interrupt 5 has also been reserved by Intel but has no function at present.

Aside from the CPU-generated internal interrupts, the INT instruction allows any interrupt service routine to be invoked under program control. The desired interrupt type is encoded right into the instruction and is used by the CPU to calculate the vector table address, just as in the case of an external interrupt. Besides simplifying the testing of interrupt service routines, the software INT instruction allows programs to call one another in a very safe, uniform way, without their requiring any knowledge of each other's actual memory addresses. PC-DOS and Basic use almost a hundred of the software interrupt vectors to provide linkages to their various input/output and math routines.

Proper programming of interrupt service routines for external devices requires an intimate knowledge of the hardware characteristics of the machine, of the computer's instruction set, and of the various deadlocks and conflicts that can occur when interrupts are processed asynchronously and possibly piled on top of one another. However, the software interrupt capability may be readily used to advantage by even the beginning assembly language programmer.

A future installment of this column will demonstrate how to exploit the various services in the PC-DOS operating system and the Basic ROM available through interrupt vectors. ▲



THE PROFIT PLOT

by Jack Grushcow

We're going to start this month by mapping out future topics for the Profit Plot column. This will alert you to subjects that interest you, and it will also give you an opportunity to comment on future topics. If we get enough "No! Please! Any topic but that one!" messages, we'll try another application area. Or you could say something like, "Great idea, but be sure to include information about put and call options as well." Either way, your feedback is vital.

Responses to the questionnaire in the February issue are still coming in. Let us know what application areas interest you and we'll create spreadsheets for them. Cast your vote by writing to Feedback, Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer, Box 60, North Hollywood, CA 91603.

This month's article is a first response to reader requests. Many of you asked for forecasting and payroll calculations, so we'll start this month with the first of a two-part series on spreadsheet forecasting.

The forecast articles will be followed by a two-parter on using spreadsheets for payroll deductions. We'll calculate federal withholding tax, Social Security, and state taxes, using an array of two powerful spreadsheet functions, Lookup and If; and we'll include a small tutorial on these functions.

Now, let's do a forecasting spreadsheet. This article presents the first part of a spreadsheet that provides a powerful method of forecasting your future earnings and expenses.

We'll examine how an independent drugstore handles forecasting. While your specific business applications will differ, your basic forecasting needs will not. By looking over the shoulder of our sample business forecaster, you'll gain an added perspective on how better to approach your own forecasting puzzle.

Drug World, an independently owned-and-operated drugstore in a large shopping center, sells prescription drugs plus a variety of convenience and consumer goods.

Going into her third year of operation, the owner decides to see if sales patterns are forming that can help her plan for the future. She also wants to see how her operating expenses have changed over the first two years.

By looking into the past, the owner hopes to get a better idea of what increases in sales and expenses she can expect in the coming year. Through better planning, she hopes to increase her profits in several key ways.

First, a sales forecast will help her select the best products to retail for her specific client base. Historic records should indicate which product groups are most popular.

Better buying means trimming losses caused by discounts, because goods in demand don't need to be marked down to sell. Inventory turns over faster, borrowed money is tied up for less time, and the owner increases her profit.

A second advantage to better planning is increased control over expenses. By examining historic expense patterns, the manager is better prepared to expand in good times and tighten her belt when things get rough. Expansion, hiring extra staff, and installing new equipment can be a plan instead of a panic.

The spreadsheet we'll design gives us a powerful method of forecasting both income and expenses. It's specially designed to use data you already have on hand—the forecasting spreadsheet is based on your own income statement.

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	/FR INCOME	STATEMENTS				
2						
3		/FR YEAR	/FR"% SALES	/FR YEAR	/FR"% SALES	/FR"% CHANGE
4	SALES					
5	/--	/--	/--	/--	/--	/--
6	A	0	(B6/B14)*100	0	(D6/D14)*100	((D6−B6)/B6)*100
7	B	0	(B7/B14)*100	0	(D7/D14)*100	((D7−B7)/B7)*100
8	C	0	(B8/B14)*100	0	(D8/D14)*100	((D8−B8)/B8)*100
9	D	0	(B9/B14)*100	0	(D9/D14)*100	((D9−B9)/B9)*100
10	E	0	(B10/B14)*100	0	(D10/D14)*100	((D10−B10)/B10)*100
11	F	0	(B11/B14)*100	0	(D11/D14)*100	((D11−B11)/B11)*100
12	G	0	(B12/B14)*100	0	(D12/D14)*100	((D12−B12)/B12)*100
13	/--	/--	/--	/--	/--	/--
14	TOTAL SALES	@SUM(B5...B13)	(B14/B14)*100	@SUM(D5...D13)	(D14/D14)*100	((D14−B14)/B14)*100
15	/--	/--	/--	/--	/--	/--
16	COST OF GOODS SOLD	0	(B16/B14)*100	0	(D16/D14)*100	((D16−B16)/B16)*100
17						
18	GROSS PROFIT	+B14−B16	(B18/B14)*100	+D14−D16	(D18/D14)*100	((D18−B18)/B18)*100
19						
20	EXPENSES					
21	/--	/--	/--	/--	/--	/--
22	WAGES	0	(B22/B14)*100	0	(D22/D14)*100	((D22−B22)/B22)*100
23	RENT	0	(B23/B14)*100	0	(D23/D14)*100	((D23−B23)/B23)*100
24	UTILITIES	0	(B24/B14)*100	0	(D24/D14)*100	((D24−B24)/B24)*100
25	PROFESSIONAL SERVICES	0	(B25/B14)*100	0	(D25/D14)*100	((D25−B25)/B25)*100
26	TAXES DUE	0	(B26/B14)*100	0	(D26/D14)*100	((D26−B26)/B26)*100
27	DEPRECIATION	0	(B27/B14)*100	0	(D27/D14)*100	((D27−B27)/B27)*100
28	INTEREST	0	(B28/B14)*100	0	(D28/D14)*100	((D28−B28)/B28)*100
29	BAD DEBTS	0	(B29/B14)*100	0	(D29/D14)*100	((D29−B29)/B29)*100
30	TELEPHONE	0	(B30/B14)*100	0	(D30/D14)*100	((D30−B30)/B30)*100
31	THEFT	0	(B31/B14)*100	0	(D31/D14)*100	((D31−B31)/B31)*100
32	MISC	0	(B32/B14)*100	0	(D32/D14)*100	((D32−B32)/B32)*100
33	/--	/--	/--	/--	/--	/--
34	TOTAL EXPENSES	@SUM(B21...B33)	(B34/B14)*100	@SUM(D21...D33)	(D34/D14)*100	((D34−B34)/B34)*100
35	/--	/--	/--	/--	/--	/--
36						
37	NET PROFIT	+B18−B34	(B37/B14)*100	+D18−D34	(D37/D14)*100	((D37−B37)/B37)*100
38	/GF$					

Figure 1.

Jack Grushcow is president of Consumers Software, a company that designs and markets spreadsheet-based business packages. His latest book, The VisiCalc Applications Book, *is available from Reston Publishing. This article is based on ideas presented in that book.*

As we build this model, we'll maintain as much flexibility as possible. Entering our new projected sales figures at any time will produce a whole new income statement, with no additional work; producing an entire range of forecasts based on our best, worst, and optimum sales estimates will be simple.

This application allows the small business to plan the way the big business does. Usually, the small guy first takes a punch in the nose, then reacts. By planning, you can act instead of react, which is one way small businesses get big, regardless of the size of annual sales.

We'll build this spreadsheet in two sections, one displaying previous income statements, allowing us to spot past trends, and the other helping us to intelligently forecast the future based on past performance. This forecasting model can be used profitably by any business that produces an income statement and whose owner needs to understand trends better.

As you watch the Drug World forecaster wrestle with various assumptions, keep in mind how you'd approach these problems. There's more to using this sheet successfully than just plugging in numbers. We'll examine the thoughts behind the numbers that go into the spreadsheet to help you better appreciate the intricacies in forecasting your own income statement.

Figure 1 shows the keystrokes required for the first six columns of our spreadsheet. This historic section will hold the results of previous operating years.

To keep this model general, we've started with letters in locations A6 through A12, which will be replaced by areas that generate your sales. You may have more or fewer profit centers than Drug World. As we customize this spreadsheet, deleting and inserting rows as necessary, imagine how you would adjust it to hold your own financial data.

Figure 2 shows the annual income statements that form the historic backbone of the forecast. We'll begin our analysis of Drug World by entering the two annual income statements into the forecast spreadsheet. In column A we'll list the row names for the six Drug World departments in which sales occurred: prescription drugs, over-the-counter remedies, cosmetics, spirits, tobacco, and books and magazines. Each department is responsible for a portion of the profit picture.

A manufacturer will have different product lines; a lawyer will perform different client tasks, and a printer will use different production centers. Your profit centers can be divided into individual categories, too.

Remember, to break down the cryptic, all-encompassing description of "Sales" into categories that indicate where sales are generated requires organized record-keeping. Somewhere in its accounting process, Drug World must record sales for its various products, allowing its management to make intelligent decisions regarding the six different sales centers.

DRUG WORLD

INCOME STATEMENTS 1981-82

	1981	1982
SALES:		
PRESCRIPTION	528000.00	586080.00
OTC REMEDIES	228000.00	264480.00
COSMETICS	204000.00	222360.00
SPIRITS	108000.00	105840.00
TOBACCO	96000.00	96960.00
BOOKS/MAGS	36000.00	37080.00
TOTAL SALES	1200000.00	1312800.00
COST OF GOODS SOLD	726000.00	781116.00
GROSS PROFIT	474000.00	531684.00
EXPENSES:		
WAGES	252000.00	288816.00
RENT	37200.00	37200.00
UTILITIES	6550.00	7200.00
PROFESSIONAL SERVICES	3600.00	3485.00
TAXES DUE	24000.00	26200.00
DEPRECIATION	12000.00	13080.00
INTEREST	48000.00	54080.00
BAD DEBTS	7200.00	6455.00
TELEPHONE	6000.00	6225.00
THEFT	3600.00	2625.60
TOTAL EXPENSES	400150.00	445366.60
NET PROFIT	73850.00	86317.40

Figure 2.

We begin entering data into this spreadsheet by overwriting the label "Year" in columns B and D. Move your cursor to B3 and enter "1981, then to D3 and enter "1982.

Now, position your cursor at A6 and enter these labels down column A of our sample spreadsheet: Prescription, OTC Remedies, Cosmetics, Spirits, Tobacco, Books/Mags. (*SuperCalc* users must include leading quotes in front of each string.)

With labels in locations A6 through A11, move your cursor to A12. We don't need this row, since there are only six sales areas. Any row not used in this spreadsheet must be removed. Empty rows will display "Error" at various formulas, caused by zero divides; if they're not removed, the error messages will be carried forward through subsequent calculations, overwriting useful information.

Delete this unwanted row by moving to row 12 and using your /DR command (which *SuperCalc* users will follow with the enter key).

Now record the sales data from 1981 by moving your cursor to B6 and entering these figures:

Cell	Amount
B6	528000
B7	228000
B8	204000
B9	108000
B10	96000
B11	36000

Move your cursor to D6 and enter these figures for 1982:

Cell	Amount
D6	586080
D7	264480
D8	222360
D9	105840
D10	96960
D11	37080

Total sales for 1981 are shown at B13 as 1200000, and at D13 for 1982 as 1312800. Check them to ensure that you typed in the correct figures.

The spreadsheet automatically calculates and displays the percentage of total sales represented by each product group. Column F shows the percent change of each group between 1981 and 1982.

First, let's examine sales as a percent of total sales by product group by moving the cursor to C6 and examining the formula. To calculate the percent of total sales, we need to divide the prescription sales by the total sales and multiply this by 100. The formula (B6/B13)*100 does this calculation. In 1981, prescription sales represented 44 percent of total sales; in 1982, they represented 44.64 percent.

To complete the spreadsheet's income section, we must enter the cost of goods sold to determine gross profit for each year.

According to Drug World's income statements, the 1981 cost of goods sold was $726,000; in 1982, it was $781,116. Move

HBSort

HBSort is a powerful disk file sort for IBM Personal Computers with 64K of RAM.

- Sort 1 to 10 records every 2 seconds
- Sort *any* file in 25 minutes or far less

Or get your money back . . . **HBSort** performance is unconditionally guaranteed.

- Sort records up to 1020 bytes long
- Sort up to 2500 records in a single file

HBSort does the whole job. You easily define the record sequence you need. **HBSort** then reads your file, sorts it, and creates a new file with your records in the needed order. Each sort activity is graphically shown on your video display unit.

The HBSort Book is a complete users manual including a simple explanation of how to use **HBSort**, performance data, IBM-PC programming tips, and our written money-back guarantee.

- Send $85 for **HBSort** and **The HBSort Book**.
- Send $5 for **The HBSort Book** only.

HBS HARPER BUSINESS SYSTEMS

Harper Business Systems
910 - 179th Court N.E. / Bellevue, WA 98008
(206) 643-9762

Engineered and crafted like no other software

SALES	1981	% SALES	1982	% SALES	% CHANGE
PRESCRIPTION	528000.00	44.00	586080.00	44.64	11.00
OTC REMEDIES	228000.00	19.00	264480.00	20.15	16.00
COSMETICS	204000.00	17.00	222360.00	16.94	9.00
SPIRITS	108000.00	9.00	105840.00	8.06	−2.00
TOBACCO	96000.00	8.00	96960.00	7.39	1.00
BOOKS/MAGS	36000.00	3.00	37080.00	2.82	3.00
TOTAL SALES	1200000.00	100.00	1312800.00	100.00	9.40
COST OF GOODS SOLD	726000.00	60.50	781116.00	59.50	7.59
GROSS PROFIT	474000.00	39.50	531684.00	40.50	12.17
EXPENSES					
WAGES	252000.00	21.00	288816.00	22.00	14.61
RENT	37200.00	3.10	37200.00	2.83	0.00
UTILITIES	6550.00	0.55	7200.00	0.55	9.92
PROFESSIONAL SERVICES	3600.00	0.30	3485.00	0.27	−3.19
TAXES DUE	24000.00	2.00	26200.00	2.00	9.17
DEPRECIATION	12000.00	1.00	13080.00	1.00	9.00
INTEREST	48000.00	4.00	54080.00	4.12	12.67
BAD DEBTS	7200.00	0.60	6455.00	0.49	−10.35
TELEPHONE	6000.00	0.50	6225.00	0.47	3.75
THEFT	3600.00	0.30	2625.60	0.20	−27.07
TOTAL EXPENSES	400150.00	33.35	445366.60	33.92	11.30
NET PROFIT	73850.00	6.15	86317.40	6.58	16.88

Figure 3.

your cursor to B15 and enter 726000, then to D15 and enter 781116.

Gross profit for the two years is displayed in columns B and D of row 17. The percentage change for each sales category is shown in column F. This tells us which of our sales areas and expenses increased between 1981 and 1982, and at what rate. The percentage change is calculated by subtracting the sales in 1981 from the sales in 1982, dividing the result by the 1981 sales, and multiplying by 100.

Move your cursor to F6; you should see 11 percent displayed, indicating that prescription sales have increased that amount from 1981 to 1982. By looking down this "% Change" column, we see that prescription drugs are second only to over-the-counter remedies in growth.

Contrast the information in the "% Change" column with that in the "% Sales" column and you can easily see what sales have increased and by how much. For example, reading across row 6 we see that prescription drugs increased their share of total sales by .64 percent (44.64 percent minus 44 percent). We see how each product changes relative to total sales, as well as how its own sales increased from one year to the next.

What portrait of sales does this spreadsheet paint for us? Over-the-counter remedies—cold capsules, vitamins, and so forth—show the greatest growth, increasing by 16 percent, followed by the 11 percent increase in prescription sales. Management credits this growth to special advertising campaigns begun in 1981, as well as aggressive sales and use of loss leaders.

The next best growth area is cosmetics, followed by books and magazines. Tobacco is essentially unchanged and, interestingly, spirits—wine, beer, and liquor—show a sales decrease of 2 percent. We'll come back to these numbers later, because they're the basis for projecting Drug World's 1983 sales.

Total sales increased by almost 10 percent for this period. The slow growth in the cost of goods sold, relative to sales, increased the gross margin. This could have been caused by price breaks due to larger volume purchases. The result is that the gross profit has increased by 1 percent (40.5 minus 39.5) between the two years. This may not seem like much, but on Drug World's sales of $1.3 million it represents an increased profit of $13,000.

Let's see how the overhead expenses of running the drugstore changed during the first two years.

Refer again to the sample income statement to enter the expense data for 1981 and 1982 in the spreadsheet's expense portion. Move your cursor to B21 and enter these figures for 1981:

Cell	Amount
B21	252000
B22	37200
B23	6550
B24	3660
B25	24000
B26	12000
B27	48000
B28	7200
B29	6000
B30	3600

Now move your cursor to D21 and enter these figures for 1982:

Cell	Amount
D21	288816
D22	37200
D23	7200
D24	3485
D25	26200
D26	13080
D27	54080
D28	6455
D29	6225
D30	2625.60

We have no information to enter in the "Misc" row, so we need to delete it. Move your cursor into row 31 and use the /DR command.

Your spreadsheet should now look like figure 3.

Let's analyze Drug World's expenses the way we did its income. The greatest single expense for this company is labor. Unfortunately, there was a 14.6 percent increase, the largest of any expense category. This was due to general wage increases in the economic sector, as well as to rapid staff turnover, which necessitated substantially more overtime in 1982 than in 1981. As a result, the cost of wages grew from 21 percent of sales to 22 percent. The problem of turnover will have to be addressed in the future.

All other expenses remained relatively in line with general price inflation; the exception is a significant reduction in theft and bad debts. Security mirrors were installed and a much more rigid check-cashing policy was implemented. Both policies appear to have paid dividends.

All in all, expenses as a percent of sales stayed almost the same, 33.35 percent in 1981 versus 33.92 percent in 1982. As noted, most of the rise in cost is due to increased wages. Net profit as a percent of sales remained fairly stable; 6.15 percent in 1981 versus 6.58 percent in 1982.

This completes our look at Drug World's first two years of operation. We now have a quantitative understanding of past performance. From this improved perspective will come the basis of a better forecast for future performance.

Next month we'll build the second part of the model, the forecast section. With it, we'll examine our guesses about the future to see if our sales estimates and assumptions about future wages will stand the light of day.

Until then, keep your comments coming in. ▲

The spreadsheets described in this article are copyrighted by Consumers Software Incorporated. They are intended for the private use of Softalk *readers only and are not to be resold.*

PerFin™, your personal money manager.

It's impossible to plan for tomorrow unless you know what you're spending today.

PerFin, the personal financial program for the IBM-PC, helps you analyze spending patterns through a comprehensive, yet easy-to-use method of records-keeping. Priced at only $65*, PerFin is the most inexpensive, effective resource available for personal money management.

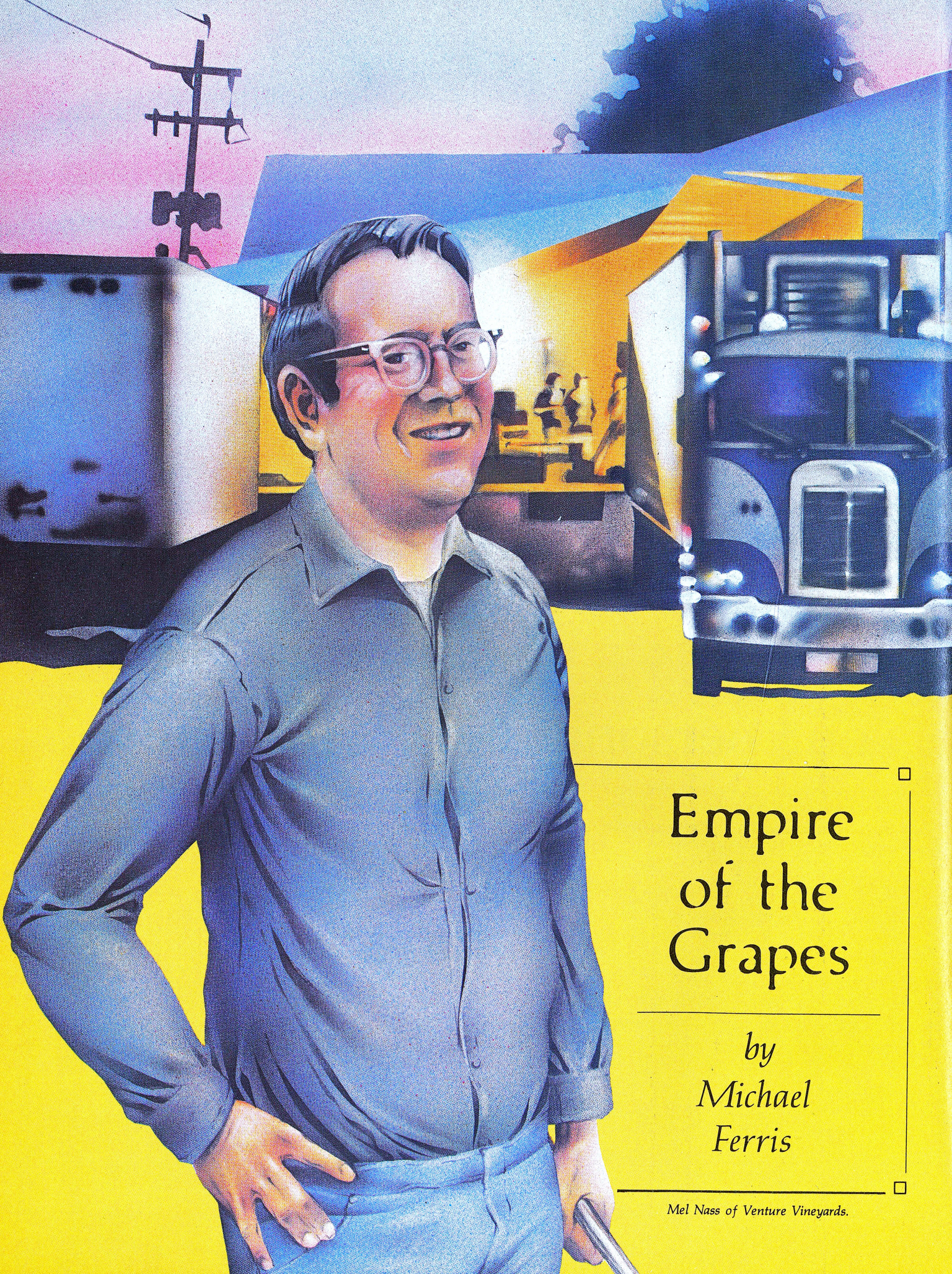
With PerFin, you can track all your expenses in up to 40 user-defined categories, creating permanent records by month and category. And that information becomes the basis for realistic goal-setting with PerFin's budget feature.

You can request year-to-date reports by category, or ask PerFin to alert you when you're over-budget.

You can also use PerFin to balance your checkbook—quickly and accurately. Provide comprehensive reports for income tax purposes. Edit, delete, or rearrange entries. Whatever your financial goals, PerFin is a proven tool that can help turn them into reality.

*Suggested retail price. Available at participating ComputerLand stores.

DIGITAL ENGINEERING GROUP
(713) 531-6100
11999 Katy Freeway, Suite 150
Houston, Texas 77079



Empire of the Grapes

by Michael Ferris

Mel Nass of Venture Vineyards.

A Concord Saga

How are you supposed to eat a grape?

Not a pale green Thompson Seedless—those are easy—but an exotic, plump, slip-skin Concord. Royal-toned and frosty, yet deep-down sweet.

How does one devour the king of the Lambrusco species, complete with seeds?

With g-r-e-a-t respect—three fingers, please! Or with bacchanalian abandon, tossing your head back and laughing, plucking at the bunch with your teeth. It all depends on your level of sophistication, or your sense of history. "People eat them in many ways," says Mel Nass of Venture Vineyards. "That's what makes it fun."

You can (a) squirt the innards out and just eat that, stacking the seeds and leaving a trail of skins as you dine; (b) have them peeled by somebody named Beulah, as Mae West did in the movies; (c) eat both the tender skin and the pulp, spitting the seeds through a space between your teeth; (d) eat the whole fruit, popping it in your mouth with a crunch, seeds and all.

"Or you can just say, 'I'm not gonna mess with these things,' and leave it at that," shrugs Nass.

Fortunately for Nass, the largest shipper of Concord grapes in America, that's not the popular choice. Nass himself gets all the credit. That's why *American Fruit Grower* magazine has dubbed him "King of the Concords."

Concord Comeback. Thanks to Nass's marketing savvy and some Basic programming on the pc, the once-reigning Concord is now making a fresh comeback in the supermarkets of America.

Before Prohibition and the invention of the Thompson Seedless, the Concord was both a wine grape and the number one table grape. At the turn of the century, trainloads of them were shipped across the country from upstate New York's grape-growing wonderland, the Finger Lakes region.

Today, from the same rich farmland near Ithaca, Venture Vineyards has launched the revival of the species. The Concord is once again shipped across the country—this time in refrigerated trucks—as an exotic, upscale choice of fresh fruit.

Grape Potential. It's a sales strategy that is paying off for Mel and Phyllis Nass, husband-and-wife partners in Venture Vineyards. She runs the farm, and he, with the help of the pc, heads the Concord grape revolution. It's a team effort that earned Nass a speaking engagement last February at a convention at the Disneyland Hotel in Anaheim, California.

Under a banner proclaiming "It's a fresh world after all," the United Fresh Fruit and Vegetable Association's gathering had a carnivallike atmosphere. Between business dealings, the Nasses could have their pictures taken with Chiquita Banana, Mickey Mouse, or a huge potato in a cowboy hat. They could spin a wheel or reach into a plastic box whirling with Ping-Pong balls to win a prize. All the while getting their badges slapped with bright fruit stickers, and snacking on onion rings, french fries, carrot chips, fried yams, Belgian endive, peanuts, and avocados.

Not to mention plain old apples, bananas, oranges, strawberries, grapefruit, lemons, limes, and grapes.

Every Executive Needs an Organizer Like T.I.M.®

Your valuable business information needs to be organized. T.I.M. can do it easily and quickly on your IBM-PC. As the executive's data base management system, T.I.M. makes it easy for you to assemble all your information so it can be ordered, changed or retrieved and then printed to suit a variety of circumstances. From phone lists through complex sales reports, T.I.M. helps you put it all together using plain English commands — no programmerese to confuse you. Plus T.I.M. interfaces with all of the most popular word processing systems as well as powerful tools like Visicalc® ... T.I.M. is the executive's solution that's simple to use, easy to learn and pays off in bottom line efficiency for you and your organization. For more information see your local IBM-PC dealer or contact Innovative Software for the name of the T.I.M. dealer nearest you.

Innovative Software® developers of practical businessware for the executive.

T.I.M. III is sold at Computerland®, Sears Business Centers, The Xerox Stores, Computer Marts, Entre' Computer Centers℠, CompuShops® and other independent dealers.

9300 W. 110th St., Suite 380 • Overland Park, KS 66210 USA • 913/383-1089 • Telex: 209542

At the end of the three-day show, says Nass, the produce exhibitors gave their displays away. Hundreds of pounds of exotic edibles, from kiwi fruit to walnuts, were scooped up by the crateful—something you won't see at your next computer fair.

Nass's speech was part of a presentation on computers in small business, a subject he knows firsthand, inside and out, from both angles, and probably even upside down. Prior to venturing into the vineyards, Nass was one of the big boys at IBM.

Converging Lines of Design. Nass entered the Big Blue universe at the start of that company's mainframe heyday. The scientifically oriented 700 series and the 704, 705, and 7090 commercial series were two lines of computer design that converged into the popular 360 system. The 360, 1400, 1460, and Ramack systems were all part of the IBM explosion in the sixties—an exciting time for Nass, who did some of the programming on the commercial side of the house.

One aspect of those early years that Nass particularly misses is being able to see a program from beginning to end. "Nowadays," he says, "things are more modulized in the larger development houses. You get some part of a job, are passed some parameters, and write the code required. When you're done, you're passing parameters on to somebody else.

"Take Apple Computer's Lisa, for example. It's got over two million statements; you know one person didn't write that.

"Doing it this way creates standards, better testing techniques, makes logic more understandable, and is more efficient in the long run, but it takes a lot of the fly-by-your-pants out of programming and a lot of the individualism out of the whole operation."

On the other hand, all this added structure is a good thing too, says Nass. "There are a lot of nonprofessional seat-of-the-pants guys doing some wonderful things, but large pieces of their work may never be carried on by another programmer who could do a little bit more. By trying to save themselves the anxiety and grief of rewriting and modification, they miss what a modulized system of development would give them."

An entrepreneur at heart, Nass still enjoyed programming more "back when you could start at point A and complete the total code at point Z. There's nothing wrong with modulization, but I like to see the whole egg," he says.

After fourteen years of team playing at IBM in New York, Nass, an ambitious dreamer, hit his personal corporate ceiling. "I realized I would never be chairman of the board," he says, tongue-in-cheek. "You can see I'm not too sharp; it took me fourteen years."

Looking Again at the Big Blue. After mostly being rated an outstanding performer all those years, Nass found his initial job enthusiasm waning. A subliminal desire to succeed was losing out to cold, hard reality. Eventually, he started to rethink his commitment to the Big Blue.

"But IBM was such a great company. The promotions were always there, the salary was always right and improving, and the opportunities and work were exciting."

Still, they weren't holding a chair for him in the corporate den. "If I was going to come up a couple more rungs and grow at the company, at least I would do it for myself," he decided. At the same time, another, deeper desire was surfacing within him, one that held more sway than his corporate longings.

He was feeling ready to hang up his three-piece suit. "My grandmother had a little garden, and I used to work with her in it. I always had the desire to get into agriculture." This primitive desire to work with the soil was eroding his urban, white-collar persona.

"The kind of guy I am, with the personality I have, I'm gonna want to strike out on my own," he says. The three Nass children were all in school; Phyllis, a grade-school teacher, was thinking of going back to school; the timing was right. "I said to myself, 'Hey, am I happy working here for the rest of my life or is there something I really want to try?' "

Between booths and buyers, Phyllis Nass does some conventioneering by the pool at the Disneyland Hotel.

ELIZA IS HERE!

AT LAST! A FULL IMPLEMENTATION of the original ELIZA program is now available to run on your IBM Personal Computer!

Created at MIT in 1966, ELIZA has become the world's most celebrated artificial intelligence demonstration program. ELIZA turns your computer into a non-directive psychotherapist with whom you can converse much as you would with a live therapist. She analyzes each statement as you type it in and then responds with her own comment or question. Response time is virtually instantaneous, and her remarks are often amazingly appropriate!

Designed to run on a large mainframe, ELIZA has never before been available to personal computer users except in greatly stripped down versions lacking the sophistication which made the original program so fascinating.

Now, our new IBM PC version possessing the **FULL** power and range of expression of the original is being offered at the introductory price of only $25. And if you want to find out how she does it (or teach her to do more), you can buy the complete IBM Disk BASIC **SOURCE PROGRAM** for only $20 additional.

Order your copy of ELIZA today and you'll never again wonder how to respond when you hear someone say, "Okay, let's see what this computer of yours can actually do!"

AVAILABLE ON DISK IN TWO VERSIONS FOR THE PC

1. Protected Version $25
   (Protected Version can be run but not listed or modified)
2. Un-protected IBM Disk BASIC Source Version . $45
   (Source Version can be listed and modified as well as run)

Both versions include a six page user manual.

Please add $2.00 shipping and handling to the above amounts (California residents add 6% sales tax)

ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE RESEARCH GROUP
921 North La Jolla Avenue, Dept. S
Los Angeles, CA 90046
(213) 656-7368 (213) 654-2214
MC, VISA and checks accepted

Soilent Green. Running his own farm was what he wanted to try. Nass could become the chairman of his own board, set his own hours, and offer his children some background in a business. As it was, he says, "I couldn't take them to work with me at IBM."

As a self-employed couple, the Nasses could work at home, a prospect both found more interesting than nine-to-five. "At the time, I was working a twelve-hour, action-packed day at IBM, and weekends as well."

There was a lot to the idea of breaking out of the corporate rat race and digging the earth. But that's all it was—an idea. The Nasses knew nothing about farming. So, by taking the most logical approach they could to the wildest dream they had, they literally went knocking on farmland's front door.

"What we would do, on weekends, was get dressed up in jeans and knock on a farmer's door, introduce ourselves, and say, 'What we'd like to do is work for you this weekend for free.' "

"Some would laugh and say, 'Are you serious?' " says Phyllis, but they got their foot in many a door.

"We'd clean the barn if it was a dairy, the chicken coops if there was poultry. Then we'd sit down and ask the farmer what he thought the future was in this particular business. 'How did you get started? Are you happy? You've seen us work, would you recommend us taking this on as a full-time business?' "

After three months of working on over twenty types of farms—from corn, oats, and potatoes to poultry and dairy—they came across the beauty of grapes and tree fruits.

"At this point," says Phyllis Nass, "whether we should plant something that grows or raise an animal was a very basic decision. Grapes and tree fruits were very appealing."

They decided to go with the grapes. It was economics that chose the Finger Lakes region. "We were using our own dollars, and an acre of land in the region cost about three hundred dollars. The land value of a similar acre in the grape-growing region of California was about six thousand dollars," explains Nass. "On Long Island, it was about three thousand."

Then, the couple went to the experts for advice as to which pieces of land in the Finger Lakes would be most successful. Professors at Cornell and the Geneva Experiment Station were among those who outlined the lake and soil conditions and weather history of the area for the Nasses.

At the same time, the couple collected facts on what it took to run a farm with a vineyard. "Like what a barn would cost, what equipment you needed, fertilizer rates, spraying rates, what a trellis looked like, what you could do with grapes, and so on," says Nass.

"Then we'd go up to a farm that seemed right and say, 'We're looking for a farm with a house just like you have. Do you know anybody in the area with a farm like yours?' "

The agricultural community, according to Phyllis, is very tightly knit. "Good farms are usually snapped up by neighbors. It's very difficult for an outsider to break in; the insiders know the whole scoop on the land."

Buying the Farm. Eventually, they found the Halsey Fruit Farm. It was the farm of their dreams and qualified under the conditions of their scientific research. Besides the three types of Lambruscos—Concord, Niagara, and Catawba—the farm included twenty acres of peaches, cherries, and pears.

They took a ninety-day option to buy the Halsey farm. "I told IBM I was going to buy a farm. I said I could keep on working or take my break and do my thing.

"Their position was that growing grapes would not be the soundest thing; however, you've been a good employee and we'll make it happen. Maybe it won't work out. Meanwhile, you can serve actively and well in the Syracuse area. If it doesn't work, there's always the fast track again.'

So the two city slickers moved to their dream farm in the wilds of Lodi, and for Phyllis Nass any resemblance to the television comedy *Green Acres* ends here. Unlike the series' glamorous Eva Gabor, all frills and domesticity, Phyllis Nass rolled up her sleeves and got dirty.

"All day was spent in the field—just me," she says. "It was very hard doing the spraying, disking, and mowing, the contract stuff, and speaking to people about buying materials. I had to learn how to spray. I met with growers with similar problems. I read books on what I didn't know, went to horticulture shows. I'd take a tool out into the field to better understand its practical values, and all that."

Meanwhile, Mel Nass was working his nine-to-five with the gang in Syracuse. "I'd get up and put the implement on the tractor. Then I'd leave Phyllis a list. She'd spend the day driving the equipment and executing the list of things to be done. I'd come home and reset everything. Then we'd replan our program—Phyllis would have made a new list—and then we'd go to sleep."

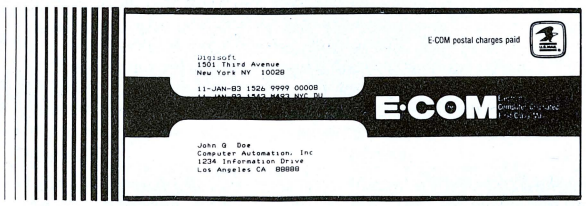
"For six years we did this, building Venture Vineyards while I did data processing," says Nass. This dual dedication began to pay off for the farm team, and success was snowballing. "The farm was growing in leaps and bounds. I finally said, 'Hey, we just can't go on like this any more.' That's how the break came."

They went into agriculture full-time. "In retrospect, I could have left IBM a few years earlier, but I'm a very conservative guy and took it as far down the line as I could. I didn't want to burn any bridges."

Thriving Enterprise. Venture Vineyards is a thriving enterprise today, employing about one hundred fifty people, most of them taken on during harvest time, from August to October each year. Additional acreage was purchased, a new house built, loading docks expanded, and Nass designed and built a refrigerated, grape cold-storage facility.

The Nasses are farmers now, and Phyllis is as busy as ever. In

2000 letters per hour via your personal computer



delivered in 48 hours or sooner at 26¢ a piece.

Whether it's credit and collection applications, announcements to your customers, or sales promotions for new services, our MAIL-COM software turns your personal computer into a one-button mailing house of enormous power. All you need is a modem, a personal computer, and our MAIL-COM software.

Our software allows you to link up with the U.S. Postal Service's new ECOM System. After receiving your letters via modem, the Postal Service will then print, stuff, seal and deliver the letters usually by the next day and guaranteed within 48 hours.

MAIL-COM is a complete, interactive package supporting all ECOM formats. Available now for the IBM PC ($195), the Alpha Micro ($495) and CP/M ($195). Others soon.

To order, call or write:

Digisoft Computers
1501 Third Avenue
New York, NY 10028
(212) 734-3875

Fresh-picked grapes await pickup in Nass's specially designed boxes that fold into shape, no staples required.

addition to making the decisions on the grape-growing operations, she oversees a hay-wagon tour, where visitors can see what goes on at the farm, and a pick-your-own-peaches-cherries-and-pears operation. She has even done some substitute teaching, to help her get to know the community.

Her role as head of major farm operations still stuns a few locals. "A fertilizer salesman called for Mel about some equipment a while back, and I answered the phone. I told him Mel was busy, but if he wanted to speak to the boss of the farm, he was talking to her." There was a silence on the other end of the line.

After ten years of equally shared agricultural experience, the Nasses can fill in for each other on just about any job. Their system of responsibility is based on who is most knowledgeable on the subject. "In certain things, I would be," says Nass, "because I have the numbers on the top of my head. In other areas, Phyllis has faster recall."

The one thing Phyllis leaves to Mel is programming. However, she can go into the code and make changes if necessary, or do the sorts and merges. "Mel makes me read all the books," she says. "If we had both taken courses together, it would be different. As it stands now, Mel does a heck of a better job." Besides, she has a farm to run.

The two Nass boys, Andrew and Gregg, also have put in their time driving tractors and trucks, cooking, and running the farm. They held down the fort while mom and dad went convention-eering.

Daughter Robin decided on Yale instead of nearby Cornell, so she wouldn't be tempted to run home and make meals, count boxes, run the tractor, or recruit friends to pick grapes come harvest time. Robin had worked at IBM part-time demonstrating the pc, and helped her dad learn *VisiCalc.*

Rejuvenated Old-Timer. In the competitive produce world, Nass has taken an old-timer like the Concord table grape, spruced up its image, and made it feel wanted again.

One way he makes it profitable to ship such a perishable exotic is by moving them out only in full truckloads. "It's important that a salesman knows all the customers on a given route. One sale might be only 25 percent of a truckload," says Nass. The rest of that load must be sold before the truck rolls.

It's a far cry from the days when Nass used to deliver boxes of grapes from the back of a Volvo station wagon on his way to work. That's why three salesmen and three pcs make up the current Venture Vineyards sales staff. They use a sales program, custom-written by Nass, that effectively combines customer, truck routing, and call-back information into a sharp new selling tool.

Each salesman has his own set of disks for his particular region of sales: Northeast, South, or West. When they come into work each morning, a printout of the calls each salesman must make is draped across his keyboard. "All he has to do is throw the switch and away he goes," says Nass, who designed the program's operation in a simple Q&A format.

The first thing a salesman calls up is the list of routes in his area. For example, in the Northeast, the first route is from Lodi to Syracuse to Utica to Albany, New York. Next, he asks for a list of the customers along that section of highway. A supermarket's name, phone, number of stores, the name of the person to ship to, and warehouse information come up.

At this point, he can check a store's buying history over the past three years, catalogued by order date. Or he can check a comments

OPT-TECH SORT™
FORMERLY OPTIMUM SORT

SORT/MERGE program for the IBM-PC

— NEW Version 1.1 —
Contains all the most desirable features!

Features

- Sort ascending or descending on up to nine fields
- Ten input files may be sorted or merged at one time
- Written in assembly language for **high performance**
- Supports variable and fixed length records
- Supports all common data types
- Filesize limited only by your disk space
- Dynamically allocates memory and work files
- Can be run from keyboard or as a batch command
- Can be called as a BASIC subroutine (Requires 128K)
- Easy to use, includes on-line help feature
- Full documentation — sized like your PC manuals
- **$75** —VISA, M/C, Check, Money Order, COD, or PO
  Quantity discounts available

To order or to receive additional information write or call:

OPT-TECH DATA PROCESSING
P.O. Box 2167 Humble, Texas 77347
(713) 454-7428

Requires PC-DOS, 48K and One Disk Drive

file to update himself on a particular client. After making a sales call and securing an order, all the facts are entered and an invoice is printed. If a sale was not clinched, the customer's name goes into a tickler file to become the next day's priority.

"Since the growing season is so short, all their work is concentrated into an eight to ten-week time frame," says Nass. That's why follow-up calls every two or three days is so important.

There are more than two hundred fifty customers in each sales region. "With the pc acting as both secretary and memory," says Nass, "the salesmen can make more intelligent calls. They're also more personal."

All day long the salesmen's updates of comments, sales, and callbacks are dumped into bucket files that are sorted and merged at the end of each day. Calls are logged in military time for easier sorting. Once a week, third backup copies of each disk are put in a bank for safekeeping. Although, says Nass, "nothing has crashed yet. There hasn't been a single bug."

Special Database. Nass has also created a special database to log information on the more than eighty growers who deliver grapes to Venture Vineyards for shipping. Included are contract data, grade and variety of grape, price per ton, information on what was delivered last season, and comments. The files are updated daily during the season.

Mailing-label routines are included in both programs. The eighty growers are sent seasonal newsletters, and grape customers are sent point-of-purchase promotion packages.

It isn't surprising, with twenty years of experience at IBM, that Nass rolled his own programs. "Right off the bat, I knew there were no commercial packages with routing in them," he says. He knew what he wanted and designed it, just as he did his special cardboard grape containers, his refrigerated cooling room, and his new farm career.

What is surprising, considering his formidable background in Cobol, Fortran, assembly, APL, and PL/1, is that he wrote his program in plain old Basic. "I did it in Basic because it's what was there," he says. "It's even easier than what we had way back then," before the high-level languages were created.

Nass began the project by drawing the necessary flow charts, Scotch-taping yellow legal paper together. The truck routes were drawn up first, from information taken from a Rand McNally road map. Then, working from a Basic manual, he compiled and debugged the code. It was all done as piecework over a three-month period. "If I was to sit right down and do it again, I imagine it would take about five to six weeks," he says.

The decision to go with a pc-based system came about when Nass considered employing an IBM System 34 mini, but twenty to thirty thousand dollars made it a major investment. "For about four thousand dollars, you're in business with the pc, and at a minimal financial risk," he says.

Venture Vineyards is rapidly outgrowing its mom-and-pop image. Soon, the two-month shipping season will be extended to three months as the Nasses open a branch of operations in Arkansas, where the grapes ripen several weeks sooner.

Now that the three Nass kids know the business and grape sales are booming, the hardworking Nasses can enjoy working on new dreams and ambitions. And they do. "I get all the crazy ideas and Phyllis discards 90 percent of them," says Nass.

"But it's that 10 percent that really works," says Phyllis, with a grin.

They joke about shucking it all and starting over. "Phyllis and I both feel that we could put on a knapsack and leave the whole thing. Just walk down the street and be successful in something, whatever it was. Like brain surgery," kids Nass.

Why not? It sounds no crazier than growing grapes. ▲

StarLogic Announces Savings on IBM PC Compatible Disk Drives

5¼" Winchester Disk Subsystems from Interface Inc

Includes Winchester disk drive, cabinet, power supply, cable, controller, I/O adapter, and software (JEL) for 1.1 DOS.

5 megabyte Winchester disk drive	$1375.00
10 megabyte Winchester disk drive	$1575.00
15 megabyte Winchester disk drive	$1775.00

Tandon Internal 5¼" floppy drives

Standard sized drive plug-compatible with IBM PC

Single-sided drive—160K bytes	$165.00
Double-sided drive—320K bytes	$235.00
Double-sided drive—650K bytes	$315.00

(includes software patch to 1.1 DOS

IBM PC XT Disk Drives from Interface Inc

Dual floppy disk drives each with 362K bytes storage; both drives mount in "A" position	$ 450.00
10 Megabyte Winchester Subsystem Slave compatible with IBM DOS 2.0	$1095.00

Add-on external drives from Interface Inc

Includes 5¼" floppy disk drive, cabinet, power supply and cable.

Standard sized 5¼" drives

Single-sided drive—160K bytes	$235.00
Double-sided drive—320K bytes	$305.00
Double-sided drive—650K bytes	$385.00

(Includes software patch to 1.1 DOS)

Half-height ThinLine 5¼" drives

Double-sided drive—320K bytes	$285.00
Double-sided drive—650K bytes	$365.00

(Includes software patch to 1.1 DOS)

Telephone Orders Only
MasterCard, VISA or
Cashier's Check COD
(213) 883-0587

StarLogic
20932 Cantara St.
Canoga Park, CA 91301

All storage capacities are IBM Format
IBM is a registered trademark of IBM Corporation
ThinLine is a trademark of Tandon Corporation
JEL is a product of Tall Tree Systems
Prices are subject to change without notice

Amdek's new business system meets your graphic needs

Amdek's Business System is designed to allow your IBM/PC to do more for you. This graphic system can document your data with pie, bars, horizontal bars, lines, points, areas or any combination of professional looking graphs.

THE SYSTEM

HARDWARE

Amdek Color II High Resolution Monitor
Amdek Model — DXY Plotter
Amdek Multiple Adapter Interface Board

SOFTWARE

BPS Business Graphics™

OPTIONAL HARDWARE

Amplot II Plotter — Automatic, 6 Pens
Amdisk III — 3″ Microfloppy Disk Drive System

The system is designed to save you time and money, and to make the computer work for you.

Here's how it works: The computer's data appears on the Color II monitor and the Model DXY plotter will recreate the screen on a 10″ x 14″ format using the BPS Software.

It's easy to use — the system interfaces with the most popular software packages, including dBase II, VisiCalc, SuperCalc and WordStar. And it understands English, so there's no need to learn any foreign computer languages. It's fast — charts can be produced in about two minutes. It's powerful — the system with the MAI board will more than double the memory capacity of your computer. It's economical — the Amdek package will save you over $800 on the individual components.

Now you can make sophisticated graphic presentations to your clients, customers and colleagues using your Amdek Business System.

* BPS and Business Graphics are trademarks of Business & Professional Software, Inc.
* IBM PC is a registered trademark of International Business Machines, Inc.

* VisiCalc, SuperCalc, dBase II and WordStar are trademarks of VisiCorp, Sorcim Corporation and Ashton-Tate, respectively.

2201 Lively Blvd. • Elk Grove Village, IL 60007
(312) 364-1180 TLX: 25-4786

AMDEK CORP.

Amdek . . . your guide to innovative computing!

RELAY™ does what communications software always should have.

There's finally a communications package for your IBM PC® that does all the important things a communications package should do.

RELAY—the complete communications package.

Lots of other software does some of what RELAY can do. But no other package helps you communicate as effectively, in as many ways, as RELAY.

Its on-screen HELP facility answers your questions fast.

RELAY connects to The Source, Dow Jones, CompuServe or practically any dial-in computer, even if it speaks APL. And remembers phone numbers and sign-on procedures as well.

RELAY can send and receive files without limits, even if you aren't there. And that includes Visicalc models, spreadsheets, sales and production figures, electronic mail, Wordstar documents and program files.

Its speed and clearly arranged format let you work quickly and efficiently.

If that were all RELAY did, it would be well worth using. But there's more.

RELAY gives you a powerful full-screen editor. It lets you run programs while you are connected. And RELAY even lets you use your PC to print and edit while sending and receiving files.

Why not communicate with the package that does everything a communications package should do, the way it should be done.

Choose RELAY. It's $89. Phone or write us today.

NY residents add sales tax. Minimum configuration: IBM PC 64k with 1 disk or IBM XT

RELAY. Complete communications power, and much more.

VN personal Computing

60 East 42nd Street, NY, NY 10165
Telephone (212) 697-4747

MasterCard VISA

IBM PC is a trademark of International Business Machines Corp., Wordstar is a trademark of MicroPro Inc., Visicalc is a trademark of VisiCorp.

THE BASIC SOLUTION

BY JOE JUHASZ

In last month's column, we started building a general-purpose Basic input module by creating the routine *Ckkey*. Ckkey, you'll recall, allows you to specify legal keystrokes, specify and test for function keys and other special keys, and control capitalization of input; it also signals illegal keys with a tone.

The Ckkey routine accepts only one key at a time. The next step is to create a routine to accept complete fields of input. We'll do this by creating a "driver" routine, called *Ckfield*, that will use Ckkey.

Ckfield will allow the user to limit the length of data entered into a field (one to seventy-nine characters); specify the row and column where the field will be displayed; use the tab and shift-tab keys to act as enter keys; use the cursor keys within the field; and use the insert, delete, and other editing keys. The key marked *end* will be used to move the cursor to the last nonblank character in the field; control-end will erase all characters above and to the right of the cursor, and control-left-arrow will move the cursor to the start of the field.

Variables used in Ckfield are as follows: F.field$ is a working variable containing the data in the field (do not use this variable within your calling program); Ckfield$ contains the field data on exit from the routine; F.fl specifies the maximum field length; F.row holds the row location of the field; F.col holds the column location of the field; Ckmax specifies the length of the field plus one (to allow for the enter key).

Cn holds the position of the cursor within the field.

Khit holds the number of keys pressed during entry of the field. The escape key (if allowed) sets Khit to 2. If Khit equals 1 on return from Ckfield, then the field was unchanged.

Ins, if true, means we are in insert mode.

Special$ defines the special editing keys in ASCII.

Rtab$ allows use of the tab key as an enter key.

For Ckfield to accept data from a user, it must know the following: the screen location where it's to display the input (F.row, F.col); the number of characters allowed (F.fl); the allowable character set (Minkey, Maxkey, Caller); and the capitalization status (Capson).

Ckfield receives this information by means of certain variables. Once Ckfield is called, it proceeds to call Ckkey continually, to retrieve one allowable keystroke at a time. It continues to call Ckkey until the enter key is pressed or until any allowable "special" key (tab, escape, or the function, control, or alternate keys) is pressed.

On leaving Ckfield, the data entered is stored in the variable Ckfield$. On return from Ckfield, the variables Ck$, Fkey, and Tcki may be tested to determine which key caused return from Ckfield. For example, if on return from Ckfield the variable Tcki equals 72, then the up cursor was the last keystroke pressed. For details see last month's column and the Basic manual, appendix G-7.

Lines 1100 through 1220 show a sample use of Ckfield. Lines 4030 through 4160 initialize certain variables used by Ckkey and Ckfield.

Btrieve™

A b-tree based record retrieval system designed to solve all your application's database needs.

- interfaces to BASIC, Pascal, COBOL and C
- multi-key access to any number of files
- duplicate and modifiable keys
- unlimited number of records per file
- built-in file integrity controls
- unsurpassed access speed
- efficient memory utilization

Compare Btrieve's capabilities to any record management or ISAM system available and we are convinced that you will select Btrieve. Write or call for details today. $145.00

SoftCraft Inc.
P.O. Box 9802, #590 Austin, TX 78766
(512) 346-8380

Requires PC-DOS.
Btrieve is a trademark of SoftCraft, Inc.
PC-DOS is a trademark of International Business Machines Corp.

WESTICO – The Software Express Service that really delivers:

IBM PC SOFTWARE

16 Bit software for IBM PC, Victor 9000, CP/M-86 and MSDOS.

Westico has good news for owners of the new 16 bit microcomputers — a full selection of quality software. Programs for businesses, professionals, and software developers. Westico can provide its CP/M-80 programs for "Baby Blue" and similar 8 bit hardware options. And there's more good news. We deliver more than quality software fast. We deliver Westico. That means you receive Westico's outstanding technical support and expertise when you need it.

MicroGANTT — Sophisticated project planning system which uses Critical Path Method analysis. Visually oriented system makes it easy to interactively define task and project parameters. Budget costs and work hours are also calculated and displayed. Percentage allocation of resources to tasks and partial completion of tasks on the critical path are other features. $395/$25.

STATPAK — Statistics software library in Microsoft BASIC designed to give users an effective alternative to time-sharing. Performs probability calculations, independent variable statistics, discrete & continuous distribution functions, regression analysis, means testing, survey data/contingency tables and more. Includes plotting and data management. $500/$40.

MINIMODEL — Does big financial planning jobs at micro prices for cash flow projections, financial forecasting, venture analysis, and risk analysis. Model limited to 32,000 by 32,000 cells. Report content and format totally under user control. $495/$50.

VERDICT — For law offices with up to 25 attorneys and a total of 35 timekeepers (including paralegals, secretaries, etc.). All time and expenses are distributed to client or other designated overhead accounts. Analysis of billings, aging of receivables, and analysis of each timekeeper's work effort. Produces monthly client review sheets and ready to mail itemized bills. $995/$50.

BILLKEEPER — For professional offices — architects, accountants, engineers, consultants, ad agencies — with all of the features of VERDICT. $995/$50.

MICRO-TAX — Accepts information, summarizes data, computes tax, and prints returns required by the Internal Revenue Service. LEVEL 1 for individuals produces 14 schedules and forms. $195. LEVEL 2 for professionals produces 33 schedules and forms. Includes depreciation, state tax interface, integrated data base for year to year data storage. $1000. LEVEL 3 is a Partnership & Corporate package which produces 19 schedules and forms. $1000.

POSTMASTER — Mailing list system to maintain name and address files. Produces everything from mailing labels to customized letters. $150/$25.

FINALWORD — Full screen interactive word processor with tables of contents, automatic indexes, simultaneous printing and editing. $300/$40.

ASCOM — For telecommunications between micros or micro to main frame. Easy to use full menu mode or expert command mode. Built-in commands for auto-dialing modems and tables for character translation, and suppression. Remote mode for controlling other micros. $175/$30.

C86 — C language compiler for 8088/8086 machines. $395/$35.

CBASIC/86 — Standard microcomputer BASIC language. $325/$30.

JANUS/ADA — Compiler for useful subset of ADA language. $650/$75.

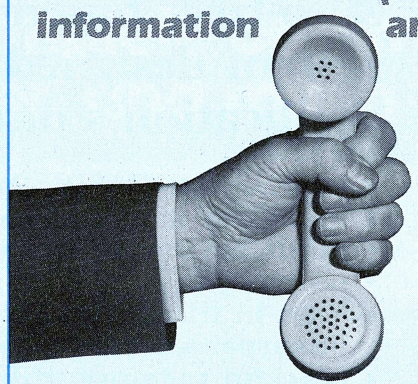
PASCAL/MT+86 — Compiler generates machine language. $800/$40.

SID-86 — Symbolic debugging tool for CP/M-86. $150/$15.

EM80/86 — Emulates execution of CP/M-80 programs. $100/$10.

UT-86 — Utility programs for PC DOS and MS DOS. $180/$20.

The Westico 24-Hour Computer Hotline for 300 baud modems (203) 853-0816 for detailed information and quick access ordering.



4 Ways to order

- **Write** Westico, Inc., 25 Van Zant Street, Norwalk, CT 06855.
- **Call** (203) 853-6880.
- **Telex** 643-788
- **Dial-up** our 24-hour computer (300 baud) (203) 853-0816.

COD, MasterCard and VISA accepted.

Prices do not include shipping and are subject to change. In CT add 7½% sales tax. All sales final.

Manual price may be credited toward purchase of software.

Dealer inquiries invited.

WES-61

•Westico has more than 250 programs that work on a wide variety of microcomputers including ADDS Multivision, Altos, CPT, Cromemco, DEC, Dynabyte, Eagle, Exxon, Facit, Hewlett-Packard, IBM, Intertec, Kaycomp, Monroe, NEC, North Star, Northern Telecom, Ohio Scientific, Otrona Attache, Radio Shack, Sirius, Televideo, Vector Graphic, Victor, Xerox, Zenith. We're working hard to be your software company.

Copyright © 1982 Westico, Inc.

Call for FREE catalog.

WESTICO
The Software Express Service

25 Van Zant Street • Norwalk, Connecticut 06855
(203) 853-6880 • Telex 643-788

```
1000  '*************************************
1010  '*** SAMPLE CALLING SEQUENCE  ***
1020  '*************************************
1030  GOSUB 4030                                  '-initialize variables
1040  '** ----------------------------------------**
1050  '**-- The following accepts a 10-character name at --**
1060  '**-- row 20, col 60 and displays at row 22, col 1. --**
1070  '**-- The only allowable keys are A-Z and space.  --**
1080  '**-- Function Key #1 ends the routine.          --**
1090  '** ----------------------------------------**
1100  LOCATE 20,55: PRINT "NAME";SPACE$(11);      '-show prompt
1110  F.ROW=20: F.COL=60                          '-set row, column of field
1120  F.FL=10                                     '-set max length of field
1130  MINKEY=ASC("A"): MAXKEY=ASC("Z")            '-set min and max range
1140  CAPSON=TRUE                                 '-set capitals on
1150  CALLER=1                                    '-allow spaces
1160  FKEYS=1: FKEY.A(1)=1                        '-allow < F1 >
1170  GOSUB 6000                                  '-call CKFIELD
1180  IF FKEY=1 GOTO 1210                         '-test for < F1 >
1190  LOCATE 22,1: PRINT CKFIELD$;                '-show field
1200  GOTO 1100                                   '-get another
1210  LOCATE 23,1: PRINT "Function Key #1 Pressed—END";
1220  END
1230  '
4000          ' ************************
4010          ' *** INITIALIZATION  ***
4020          ' ************************
4030  KEY OFF: FOR I=1 TO 10: KEY I,"": NEXT      '-turn off function keys
4040  TRUE=-1: FALSE=0                            '-set up TRUE, FALSE switches
4050  DISPLAY=1                                   '-<1>MONO or < 2>GRAPHICS adptr
4060  ENTER$=CHR$(13): BKSPC$=CHR$(8): ESC$=CHR$(27)
4070  DIM FKEY.A(15), LKEYS$(10)                  '-dimension arrays
4080  F.FIELD$=SPACE$(79)                         '-set f.field$ max of 79 chars
4090  RTAB$=CHR$(9): LTAB=15: UPTAB=72: DNTAB=80: RARW=77: LARW=75
4100  I$=CHR$(0): SPECIAL$=I$+"K"+I$+"M"+I$+"S"+I$+"R"+I$+"O"+I$+"s"+I$+"u"
4110                        ' 00+75 /00+77 /00+83 /00+82 /00+79 /00+115 /00+117
4120  '***Set up allowable sets of keys
4130  LKEYS$(1)=" "                  '-CALLER=1 to allow a space
4140  LKEYS$(2)=" 1234567890"        '-CALLER=2 to allow numbers and space
4150  LKEYS$(3)=" 1234567890.-+"     '-CALLER=3 for digits, " ",period, + - signs
4160  RETURN
4170  '
5000          ' ****************
5010          ' *** CK KEY ***
5020          ' ****************
5030  '*** ckkey ***
5040  IF INKEY$><"" GOTO 5040                     '-clear keystroke buffer
5050  FKEY=0: TCKI=0                              '-reset variables
5060  CK$=INKEY$: IF CK$="" GOTO 5060             '-wait, place keystroke in CK$
5070  '** If CAPSON then convert to upper case
5080  IF CAPSON AND CK$>="a"AND CK$<="z" THEN CK$=CHR$(ASC(CK$) AND &HDF)
5090  '** For special keys (such as function keys) INKEY$ returns 00 + xx
5100  '** To process these special keys goto line 5160
5110  CK=ASC(CK$): IF CK=0 GOTO 5200              '-check for special keys
5120  '** Check key and see if it was within allowable range
5130  IF CK>=MINKEY AND CK <=MAXKEY GOTO 5310   '-good keys
5140  '** Following statement is used in field processing
5150  IF CKFIELD.SW AND (CK$=ENTER$ OR CK$=BKSPC$) GOTO 5310
5160  '** Check key and see if it is part of allowable set of keys
5170  IF INSTR(LKEYS$(CALLER),CK$)=0 GOTO 5300 ELSE GOTO 5310
5180                                  '=0 error      NOT=0 okay
5190  '** Process special keys (00 + xx)
5200  TCKI=ASC(RIGHT$(CK$,1))                     '-get second byte of special key
5210  '** Special test to determine if function key (1-10)
5220  IF TCKI>58 AND TCKI<69 THEN TCKI=TCKI-58: FKEY=TCKI
5230  '** Following statement is used in field processing
5240  IF CKFIELD.SW AND INSTR(SPECIAL$,CK$)>0 GOTO 5310
5250  '** Test array of allowable special keys
5260  FOR TI=1 TO FKEYS
5270  IF TCKI=FKEY.A(TI) GOTO 5310
5280  NEXT
5290  '** If you reach here, it was an illegal key
5300  SOUND 50,4: GOTO 5040                       '-tone to signal a bad key
5310  RETURN
5320  '
6000                  ' *****************
6010                  ' *** CKFIELD  ***
6020                  ' *****************
6030  '
```


Actionize your PC

After a hard day, settle down to a real challenge from the Chomper.™ The Chomper is a loveable character who enjoys sweets. But so does his adversary, the Goblin. Avoiding confrontation will be frustrating and exciting. Getting to (even finding) Big Rock Candy Mountain will drive you up a wall. This game incorporates a state-of-the-art random number generator with a period greater than 3.7 thousand billion octillion! And it *does not* reset at start-up.

Requirements

- ☐ A 64K IBM PC System
- ☐ Graphics monitor or TV set (plus monitor or TV interface)
- ☐ Games control board
- ☐ Floppy Disk Drive
- ☐ At least one joy stick for exciting action. Can also be played with just a keyboard.

Allow 6-8 weeks for delivery.

Only $29.95

(NJ res. $31.75)

Send check or MO to
Triplanet Inc.
Box 5207
North Branch, NJ 08876

©1983 TRIPLANET INC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

IS WORDSTAR® AS GOOD AS POWERTEXT®?

QUESTIONS TO ASK YOUR SOFTWARE SUPPLIER BEFORE HE SELLS YOU A WORD PROCESSING SYSTEM FOR YOUR IBM PC.

Ask a computer products dealer for word processing software, and chances are he'll try to sell you Wordstar.

It's a pretty good system. Lots of people use it. And besides, he's got it in his inventory, and you can take it home with you right now.

But before you settle for Wordstar, remember that—whatever system you choose—you'll be using it for a long time. So your decision should be based on *system performance*—not what the dealer happens to have on hand.

That's why you should look into PowerText.

Quite simply, PowerText will do far more for you than Wordstar.

We realize that's a very tough claim. But the Wordstar users who've switched to PowerText will tell you it's true. And if you'll read on, we'll give you some key questions to ask your dealer:

Ask if Wordstar automatically styles your copy for any kind of document you write. Can you tell Wordstar, "This is a letter," and then get a perfect letter, with the date, name and address, salutation, and closing exactly where you want them to be—automatically?

Does Wordstar produce memos, reports, presentations, and scripts in precisely the formats you want without your ever having to worry about where the words go on the paper?

Well, Wordstar *doesn't* do those things for you. But PowerText *does*.

That means with PowerText you can concentrate on what you're writing, not on printed style. You always get a beautiful, perfectly formatted document—automatically.

Just think of how much time and effort these remarkable capabilities will save you. It's almost like dictating to your computer.

PowerText gives you automatic margins. Indents. Spacing. Title page. Envelope or label.

Automatic justification. Centering. Variable pitch. Pagination. Table of contents.

And truly *intelligent* page breaks. (You'll never end up with "Yours truly," all by itself on the last page of your letter.)

And an enormously useful feature that automatically indents and numbers for you when you write numbered paragraphs—a great time-saver when you're doing outlines, reports, or questionnaires.

Plus columnar capabilities so sophisticated and flexible they can handle just about any problem you can think up.

Ask if Wordstar gives you all these features. (It doesn't.)

Of course, both PowerText and Wordstar give you complete editing capabilities. All good word processing systems do.

But PowerText gives you *built-in* form letter capability. With Wordstar, you'll need to buy the Mailmerge® system to produce form letters.

And PowerText gives you automatic headers and footers. *And* boxed copy. *And* print macros. *And* automatic footnote numbers.

And boilerplate inclusion. *And* vertical and horizontal border lines. *And* 132-character lines. *And* superscripts and subscripts.

With PowerText there's no limit to document length. And PowerText accommodates a full 25 percent more data per disk than Wordstar (or standard IBM software).

PowerText is a straightforward, easy-to-learn, easy-to-use system. You'll master it quickly with our superb new 10-lesson tutorial. You get a complete reference manual, too.

PowerText is a run-time, bootable system. It requires at least 64K of memory, two disk drives, and a printer. It supports both serial and parallel printer interfaces, extended memory, and RAM disk.

And, oh yes, be sure to ask your dealer about Wordstar's warranty. (It doesn't have one.)

PowerText does, and it's very simple: The system is warranted for a full five years. Should it ever fail to perform as specified, Beaman Porter, Inc. will fix it at no charge.

If you decide PowerText is the right system for you, you may find your dealer doesn't have it in stock. But he can get it for you, and quickly. Just have him call us at (914) 967-3504.

Or if you wish, you can order directly from Beaman Porter right now, using the coupon below.

If you have any questions about PowerText, by all means call us. We're always available to give you expert help and advice. With Beaman Porter, service and support are always as near as your phone.

PowerText®

COMPLETE POWERTEXT SYSTEM FOR IBM PC: $399.
TUTORIAL/MANUAL ALONE: $25.

BEAMAN PORTER, INC.
High Performance Computer Products
Pleasant Ridge Road, Harrison, NY 10528 (914) 967-3504

BEAMAN PORTER, INC.
Pleasant Ridge Road, Harrison, NY 10528

☐ Send _____ complete PowerText system(s) for IBM PC: @ $399 (prepaid).

☐ Send _____ PowerText tutorial/manual(s) only, @ $25 (prepaid).

(NY residents add appropriate sales tax.)

☐ My check or money order for $_____ enclosed.
Or bill $_____ to my:

☐ Mastercard ☐ Visa

(Mastercard: list 4 digits above your name: _____).

Card No. _____ Exp. Date _____

Signature _____ Date _____

Name _____

Street _____

City _____

State _____ Zip _____

WORDSTAR and MAILMERGE are trademarks of MicroPro International Corp.

```
6040  IF INKEY$ >< "" GOTO 6040                    '-clear keystroke buffer
6050  CKFIELD.SW=TRUE: INS=FALSE                   '-initialize switches
6060  CKMAX=F.FL+1:  KHIT=0:  CN=1                 '  and variables
6070  LOCATE F.ROW,F.COL,1              '-place cursor at start of field
6080  '**---keystroke processing loop---**
6090  LOCATE F.ROW,F.COL+CN-1,1     '-place cursor at current position
6100  GOSUB 5050                                   '-call CKKEY at 5050
6110  KHIT=KHIT+1                                  '-increment KHIT
6120  IF TCKI>0 GOTO 6300                          '-test for 'special' key
6130  IF CK>31 AND CN<CKMAX GOTO 6190              '-test for 'normal' key
6140  IF CK$=ENTER$ OR CK$=RTAB$ GOTO 6400         '-Enter key?
6150  IF CK$=BKSPC$ GOTO 6470                      '-Bkspc key?
6160  IF CK$=ESC$ THEN KHIT=2: GOTO 6420           '-Escape key?
6170  BEEP: KHIT=KHIT-1:  GOTO 6100   '-unknown key; should never get here
6180  '**--normal keys--**
6190  IF INS GOTO 6220                             '-if inserting then go
6200  PRINT CK$;: CN=CN+1: GOTO 6100               '-print key, inc position
6210  '**-inserting--**
6220  IF MID$(F.FIELD$,F.FL,1) < > " " GOTO 6280   '-can we insert?
6230  '**-insert key--**
6240  MID$(F.FIELD$,CN,F.FL-CN+1)  = CK$ +MID$(F.FIELD$,CN,F.FL-CN)
6250  LOCATE ,F.COL,0: PRINT LEFT$(F.FIELD$,F.FL);: CN=CN+1
6260  GOTO 6090
6270  '***---error beep---***
6280  SOUND 50,4: GOTO 6100
6290  '*** TCKI>0
6300  IF NOT INS GOTO 6330                         '-inserting?
6310  IF TCKI=82 GOTO 6620                         '-insert key?
6320  INS=FALSE: LOCATE ,,1,2,10
6330  IF TCKI<75 GOTO 6400                         '-nonspecial key?
6340  ON TCKI-74  GOTO 6470, 6400, 6500, 6400, 6680, 6400, 6400, 6620, 6570
6350                        '75        77        79              82    83
6360                        '<-        ->      <End>           <Ins><Del>
6370  IF TCKI=117 GOTO 6540                        '<-Ctrl-End>
6380  IF TCKI=115 THEN CN=1: GOTO 6090             '<-Ctrl-Lcurs>
6390  '***---EXIT---***
6400  LOCATE ,,0,2,10: GOSUB 6740                  '-get field from screen
6410  CKFIELD$=LEFT$(F.FIELD$,F.FL)                '-store in ckfield$
6420  CKFIELD.SW=FALSE                             '-turn off field switch
6430  RETURN '<--------------------- R E T U R N ---------------------->
6440  '
6450  '*** <Lcursor> - move cursor left within field        ***
6460                    'if cn = 1 then can't go left; buzz ***
6470  IF CN>1 THEN CN=CN-1:  GOTO 6520 ELSE GOTO 6280
6480  '*** <Rcursor> - move cursor right within field            ***
6490                    'if cn>=ckmax then can't go right; buzz ***
6500  IF CN<CKMAX-1 THEN CN=CN+1: GOTO 6520 ELSE GOTO 6280
6510  '*** Drop keys
6520  IF INKEY$>< "" GOTO 6520 ELSE GOTO 6090
6530  '*** < Ctrl >< End> - erase field from above cursor and to the right ***
6540  LOCATE ,,0: PRINT SPC(F.FL-CN+1);
6550  GOTO 6090
6560  '*** <Del> - delete character above cursor, shift remaining field to left
6570  ISTART=CN+1: T2=F.FL-CN
6580  IF T2>0 THEN GOSUB 6770                      '-get part of field from screen
6590  PRINT MID$(F.FIELD$,ISTART,F.FL-CN+1);" ";
6600  GOTO 6090
6610  '*** < Ins > - get into or out of insert mode
6620  IF INS THEN LOCATE ,,,2,10: INS=FALSE: GOTO 6100
6630  '**--Set cursor depending on display type--**
6640  IF DISPLAY=1 THEN LOCATE ,,,10,3 ELSE LOCATE ,,,6,1
6650  INS=TRUE: GOSUB 6740
6660  GOTO 6090
6670  '*** < End >- move cursor past last nonblank character
6680  GOSUB 6740                                   '-get field
6690  FOR CN=F.FL TO 1 STEP-1                      '-find last nonblank
6700    IF MID$(F.FIELD$,CN,1)< > " " GOTO 6720
6710  NEXT
6720  IF CN < > F.FL THEN CN=CN+1
6730  GOTO 6090
6740  '***---get field from screen 1 byte at a time using SCREEN function---***
6750  '***---if entering at line 6770, ISTART is set to position in field---***
6760  ISTART=1
6770  LOCATE ,,0                                   '-turn cursor off
6780  FOR I1=ISTART TO F.FL                        '-get field, one byte at a time
6790    MID$(F.FIELD$,I1,1)=CHR$(SCREEN(F.ROW,F.COL+I1-1))
6800  NEXT
6810  RETURN
```

▲

Personal Computer SMARTWARE™

MergeCalc™ $125

- Consolidates VisiCalc® spread sheets
- Compares two or more VisiCalc® spread sheets

Applications MergeCalc merges VisiCalc® files and extends the utility of VisiCalc®. One of the shortcomings of VisiCalc® is the inability to consolidate, merge or manipulate multiple VisiCalc® models automatically. With MergeCalc, you can perform operations between your models without changing the models in any way. MergeCalc is ideally suited to add segments of a total business into a consolidated model. This enables all types of complex analyses, such as variance analysis, percentage change reports, time change reports, share of market analysis, incremental sales or investment analysis.

LoadCalc™ $95

- Converts textfiles to DIF™ files

Applications: LoadCalc creates DIF files from textfiles, so you can move mainframe or minicomputer data into VisiCalc®, VisiTrend/Plot, VisiWord or any program that uses DIF. LoadCalc allows selective conversion of the data, so you only get what you want. No programming required. With LoadCalc you can load "Actuals" from the mainframe into your "Budget" spreadsheet and *compare* the numbers.

DocuCalc™ $95

- Prints organized documentation of VisiCalc® spread sheets

Applications: You need DocuCalc is you are building fairly complex VisiCalc® models and want an easy way to review your work. It also makes your models easy for someone else to review. . . even if they don't understand VisiCalc®. If you are an auditor and your clients use VisiCalc® for essential business reports, you can meet all audit requirements easily with this program.

Dealer inquiries invited

Send me a catalog! ST5

CYPHER, 121 Second St., San Francisco, CA 94105

NAME _____

COMPANY _____

ADDRESS _____

CITY _____ STATE _____ ZIP _____

800-SMARTWARE
Visa/MC accepted
In California 415-974-5297

Customize Your Keyboard with PROKEY

for WordStar, Visicalc, Supercalc, dBasell, Volkswriter, EasyWriter, T.I.M., Multiplan. . .*

And That's Only the Beginning

How many times have you wished that you could change the way a program behaves? You've wanted a destructive backspace or better function keys in WordStar, full use of the function keys in Visicalc or dBase II, or cursor movement keys that are separate from the numeric keypad.

Now there's a quick and easy way to give your own special meanings to over 125 keys and key combinations on the IBM PC keyboard.

Now There's PROKEY

And not only does PROKEY let you substitute the meaning of one key for another. "ProKeys" can be defined as **strings** of characters; **sequences** of commands; in fact, **anything** you can type.

By combining a program's native commands, you can create powerful new commands such as "move a paragraph" or "address an envelope". Procedures that were once too long and slow, or too complicated and error-prone are now at your fingertips.

Increased productivity and ease of use replace errors and tedium.

And PROKEY Does Even More

PROKEY can be the control program for an integrated system. Your favorite word processor, spreadsheet, data base and communications programs can now work **together** to do more for you than ever before.

And with PROKEY you can create turnkey systems so that unskilled personnel can use the computer efficiently and effectively.

System Requirements: IBM PC with one disk drive, 64Kb of memory, and IBC PC DOS. (WordStar requires 96Kb of memory).

*And most other programs.

PROKEY Features

- PROKEY is a full-time, background program; you can define a new keystroke anytime, without leaving your work.
- There are over 125 definable "ProKeys".
- ProKeys can be saved in editable, printable files.
- ProKeys can contain control characters, "fill-in-the-blank" fields, arguments, even ProKeys themselves.
- PROKEY is delivered with an interactive tutorial; less than a dozen commands makes PROKEY easy to learn and use.

PROKEY is an extraordinary new product, not available on **any** computer until its debut on the IBM PC.

Some people call PROKEY a keyboard enhancer, some a macro processor, some a control program. Everyone calls PROKEY **marvelous.**

And PROKEY retails for only $75.00.

How can something so **good** be so inexpensive? Because it's elegant, not complicated. Everyone needs it. And we're planning on selling **a lot.**

Use our toll-free (orders only) line to order PROKEY today:

(800) 227-3800 ext. 217
(800) 792-0990 in Ca.

Or if you'd like more information, call (206) 632-3603 or write to:

RoseSoft
P.O. Box 5850
Seattle, WA 98105

The PROKEY Users Guide is available for $5.00, applicable to purchase.

— Available at participating retailers —

WordStar, Visicalc, Supercalc, dBasell, Volkswriter, EasyWriter, T.I.M., and Multiplan are trademarks or registered trademarks of MicroPro, VisiCorp, Sorcim Corp., Ashton-Tate, Lifetree Software, Inc., IUS, Innovative Software, and Microsoft, Inc.

BOARDS & BUSES

by Steve Schmitt

Last month's column dealt with the complex problem of evaluating Winchester disks for the Personal Computer. Continuing on that theme, this month we'll examine the 20M Hardfile from Tallgrass Technologies and IBM's new 10M Winchester drive.

The Hardfile. Tallgrass Technologies's 20M Hardfile, which comes as a separate unit, features an integral cartridge tape—a must for proper backup. The tape unit holds up to 12.5 megabytes on a single cartridge; disk and tape together give you a total of 32.5 megabytes on line, all at a cost of only $3,150.

Installing the Hardfile is easy. All the software routines provided by Tallgrass Technologies are menu-driven, including the configuration routine. The procedure leads you through several simple steps that allow specification of the number of logical units, the number of directories per logical unit, and the drive identifier (A:, B:, D:, and so on). You can also set duplicate directories and read-after-write attributes for the disk.

Duplicate directories are great for the rare occasion when a primary directory gets clobbered. The read-after-write option verifies that all write operations are reliably performed (100 percent correct). In environments that process critical data, these features are important; you do, however, pay a moderate performance penalty for them.

Like the Corvus drive discussed last month, the Hardfile comes with an interface board, a ribbon cable, and a separate power cord. Installation and configuration take only about twenty minutes, provided you've read the manuals. One warning: Placing the interface card in a Tecmar Expansion Unit may render the disk system inoperable. This probably is a result of the bus buffering or of some DMA anomalies of the Tecmar unit. If you do use an expansion unit, just place the board in one of the pc's slots.

Documentation for the Tallgrass system follows the industry standard: short and lacking in detailed information. The system comes with a thirty-four-page installation and user guide, an eleven-page technical reference manual, and a disk drive reference guide. Although the installation procedure is covered carefully and completely, the other aspects of the system are not. Considering the cost of a Winchester disk system, you have a right to expect more. Otherwise, however, this is a superlative product.

Perhaps the best feature of the Hardfile is the tape backup system. The tape unit is mounted in the front (for easy insertion of the DC 300XL cartridges), and a menu-driven tape utility controls tape motion, the saving and restoring of drives, and the checking of tape contents. It takes just under ten minutes to save a 10M logical unit. And the software automatically verifies all data written to tape. Because backup is such a vital function, a good mechanism, such as the Hardfile's, is essential.

The Hardfile is quite a performer, as you'll note from its performance statistics. Surprisingly, the two physical drive characteristics that usually have the most influence on performance—average seek time and transfer rate—are not particularly outstanding. Nevertheless, Tallgrass's figure of merit (see last month's column for an explanation of this concept) looks good; quality software and controller design are the key.

The function of the controller is the heart

Script

Script is the easiest-to-use word processor on the market today.

- **Script** provides a full page display of what you are working on. Margins, columns, and tabs work the way you expect them to work. Printed copy looks the way you want it to look.
- **Script** uses the IBM keyboard the way you expect it work.
- **Script** has the advanced features you want in a word processor.
- **Script** manages your disk files for you. Even if the electric supply fails, **Script** will protect your files.

Script is ideal for preparing letters, reports, resumes, publications, dissertations, and legal documents.

Script is remarkably simple for a powerful word processor. This simplicity is achieved by a combination of control menus and easy-to-remember commands like INPUT, VIEW, EDIT, SEARCH, and PRINT.

Script has editing functions that let you center the text in a line, insert or delete any amount of text, roll up text to adjust for deletions (even within columns), and fix the format of documents so they look the way you want them to look.

Script uses your printer's capabilities, including optional letter quality print. You can justify text, use underlined, bold, or italic typefaces, and use supercripts and subscripts.

Script's powerful GET and PUT commands let you move any amount of text where you want it and construct contracts or other documents from standard passages.

The **Script Users Manual** is organized so you can learn to produce a letter, prepare a resume, or type a report in a few minutes. In a few hours you can learn to process any kind of document using **Script.**

Script requires an IBM Personal Computer with 64K of RAM and one disk drive. A second disk drive is useful. All compatible printers are supported.

- Send $190 for **Script** and the **Script Users Manual.** Be sure to specify the kind of printer you have.
- Send $11 for the **Script Users Manual** only.

HBS HARPER BUSINESS SYSTEMS

Harper Business Systems
910 - 179th Court N.E. / Bellevue, WA 98008
(206) 643-9762

Engineered and crafted like no other software

Choose a Quality Computer Services hard disk system for your old or new microcomputer

1. Because it is ultra-reliable and warranteed to stay that way.

A hard disk drive from Quality Computer Services is compatible with just about any microcomputer, including those listed at the right. So rugged that hundreds are operating on five continents—including many remote sites where service is not available. When you buy one you get a free warrantee for a full year. (It's free because we don't think you'll ever have to use it.)

Learn more about QuCeS hard disk systems—choice of 6, 12, 20 or 40 megabytes; easy hookup; expansion and backup options; new removable 5 megabyte Winchester disk; high-performance specifications; and name of nearest dealer.* Just return the coupon. Or if you prefer, call or write QuCeS.

* Dealer inquiries invited.

2. Because it offers up to 40 million bytes of high-speed performance.

It's nice to know that QuCeS prices are very competitive. Our price for 20 megabytes for example, including 1-year warrantee, attach software and all hardware, is just $2999.

3. Because you'll get the best ... for a little less.

QuCeS hard disk systems are compatible with Apple II®, Epson™, Heath/Zenith™, IBM®, TRS-80® I, II, III, XVI, Osborne™, many S100™ based, and most other popular microcomputers.

Choose QuCeS when you want the best ... for a little less

Quality Computer Services
178 Main Street
Metuchen, New Jersey 08840

Please send me:
- ☐ More information.
- ☐ Name of dealer.
- ☐ Call me at
  ( ) _____

Name _____

Title _____

Company _____

Address _____

_____

NEW!

Optional cartridge disk for on-line/off-line backup storage of up to 5 megabytes per cartridge.

QCS Quality Computer Services inc

Quality Computer Services

178 Main Street ■ Metuchen, New Jersey 08840 ■ 201/548-2135
Toll-free number: (800) 631-5944

Test set	Hardfile to RAM
160K file	2.59 seconds
64 2K files	18.26 seconds
	RAM to Hardfile
160K file	3.57 seconds
64 2K files	34.16 seconds

	Performance gain over floppies	
	Read	Write
160K file	348%	269%
64 2K files	279%	368%

THROUGHPUT/CAPACITY FIGURE OF MERIT

Throughput: 7.7 accesses per second
Capacity: 19.67 million bytes
Performance (maximum): capacity × throughput = 19.67 × 7.8 = 151.5
Cost per performance unit: $3,150 / 151.5 = $20.79

HARDFILE PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

Cost: $3,150
Version date (TG-3000): February 1983, v3.05
Configuration requirements: 64K system memory, 1 160K drive
Storage specifications:
- 20.4 million bytes (unformatted)
- 19.7 million bytes (formatted)

Average seek time: 120 milliseconds
Peak transfer rate: 6.25 million bits per second
Rotational speed: 3,600 rpm
Documentation:
- Installation and user guide, 34 pages
- Technical reference, 11 pages
- Miniscribe product manual (drive), 35 pages

Package components:
- Winchester drive, integral cartridge tape, and power supply
- IBM pc interface board
- 1 160K floppy disk
- Installation program, software drivers, and diagnostics

Physical specifications:
- Height 5.5 inches
- Width 15.25 inches
- Depth 12.0 inches
- Two disk platters
- Disk diameter: 5.25 inches

Manufacturer:
Tallgrass Technologies
9207 Cody
Overland Park, KS 66214
(913) 492-6002

Table 1.

of the Hardfile. All disk-read requests result in the reading of an entire track, not just the specified sector. This approach is possible because the controller contains 40K of RAM (a track holds about 10K). Also, if an operation requests data that's already in the RAM buffer, no disk access is actually performed. Because it avoids unnecessary disk reads, the Hardfile did particularly well on our second performance test, where the disk was asked to read sixty-four 2K files. Every second disk access in this test is to the directory track—which the Hardfile keeps in its controller RAM.

Table 1 summarizes the Hardfile's performance characteristics.

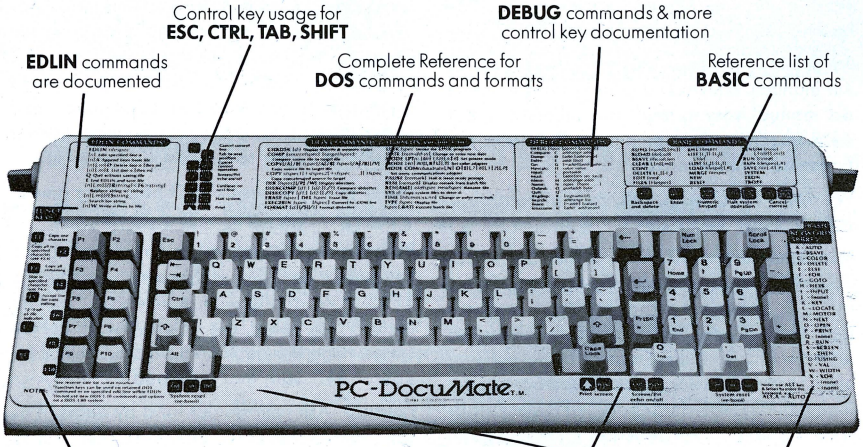
The IBM 10M Drive. IBM has finally provided a hard disk of its own for the pc. Its advantage, at least in the short term, is that it works with DOS 2.0. Because this disk was tested with a different version of the operating system (the Tallgrass and Corvus disks were tested with DOS 1.1), comparisons may be a little inexact, but they should give you a general idea of how the XT measures up.

Take Your Computer's Commands And Put Them Where They Belong. On Your Keyboard.

PC-DocuMate™ is a documentation template that fits the keyboard of your IBM PC. So the information you want is where you need it. PC-DocuMate templates are professionally designed, logically organized and comprehensive. Each template is printed on both sides on durable, non-glare polystyrene and is color-matched to your PC keyboard.

PC-DocuMates now available for:
- DOS/BASIC (as shown)
- VISICALC™
- WORDSTAR™
- VOLKSWRITER™
- Plus a custom "do-it-yourself" template (includes special pen and eraser)

Available May 1983:
- MULTIPLAN™
- 1-2-3™
- SUPERCALC™
- EASYWRITER II™
- dBASE-II™



EACH TEMPLATE IS ONLY $14.95 (includes shipping)

No-Risk, Moneyback Offer: If you are not completely satisfied, return your PC-DocuMate template to us (undamaged) within 10 days for a full refund.

Please send personal check, money order, or credit card information. Foreign orders add $5.00 (except Canada). No COD's please. Telephone orders: Call 919/787-7703 (24 hrs) NC residents add 4% sales tax.

Systems Management Associates
P.O. Box 20025, 3700 Computer Dr.
Raleigh, N.C. 27619 Dept. D-2

Dealer Inquiries Invited.

See us at booth #941 at PC '83, June 17-19 in San Francisco

Test set	Disk to Nul:	Performance gain over floppies Read	Write	Figure of merit ($/unit)
Tallgrass Hardfile	11.12 seconds	409%	430%	$20.79
IBM	18.26 seconds	222%	401%	$26.50
Corvus	18.26 seconds	44%	226%	$76.90

IBM THROUGHPUT/CAPACITY FIGURE OF MERIT
Throughput: 10 accesses per second
Capacity: 10.65 million bytes
Performance (maximum): throughput × capacity = 106.5
Cost per performance unit: $26.50

Table 2.

The IBM hard disk can occupy the space normally used by a floppy disk drive, or it can be placed in the new IBM expansion unit. If you have a standard (pre-XT) pc and you want to add the hard disk to its system unit (instead of getting the expansion unit), you'll first need to replace the system power supply with a heavier-duty model. And, of course, you'll need the new hard disk controller board. The controller board supports two 10M disks.

All told, upgrading an existing pc, without getting the expansion unit, costs approximately $2,800 (not including the cost of a new system ROM and DOS 2.0); upgrading by means of the expansion unit costs about five hundred more. The other way to get the hard disk, of course, is simply to buy an XT (for about five thousand dollars).

IBM supplies two software routines to back up the hard disk: *backup* and *restore*. Both these DOS commands transfer data between the hard disk and floppies; as mentioned in April, backup to floppy is not the most efficient way to protect a Winchester's data.

A configuration utility is also provided. A really nice feature of this software allows you to specify additional memory buffers for file operations. This can significantly enhance disk operation.

Because none of the RAM disk software for DOS 1.1 works with version 2.0, the standard performance tests could not be run with the new IBM disk. Therefore, the test was modified slightly. Instead of writing to RAM, the copy output was directed to device Nul: (also known as the bit-bucket—a dumping ground for unwanted data). This procedure avoided the extraneous factors associated with writing to a real device or disk drive. Note, though, that this approach is useful only for reading the disk, not for writing to it.

Results of the modified performance tests are shown in table 2. Figure-of-merit values accompany the test findings.

The Effect of DOS 2.0 on Disk Systems. DOS 2.0 has some valuable new features, especially the file system enhancements. A hierarchical file system, redirectable I/O, and Unix-like pipes add some real punch. A nice addition is the capability to use an external terminal for control of the pc—very handy if you're calling in over a modem.

All these improvements impact software that relied on the structure of DOS 1.1. Such programs won't work with DOS 2.0. This includes hard disk systems, RAM drives, and some application-software products. Before long, however, most manufacturers will be offering updates to keep abreast with IBM. ▲

PALANTIR™
(Pal-an-TEER)
Word Processing

PALANTIR™

Pronouncing it is the hardest part

Mastering **Palantir** Word Processing is a snap, if you don't worry about how to say it.

If you've never seen a computer before, you'll want to step through our relaxed and friendly lessons, just to learn some of the terms.

But you won't hurt our feelings if you *never* read the manual. We worked awfully hard to make our manual easy to read and understand, but we worked even harder to make **Palantir** easy to use *without* a manual.

We aren't the only ones saying that **Palantir** is easy to use.

In a recent review (*80 Micro*, September 1982) **Palantir** was compared to Select™ and Scripsit™ 2.0. It was not surprising (to us, anyway) that the reviewer found **Palantir** easiest to learn and to use. (Select was third.) But even we were surprisesd when he also rated our tutorial highest. We, too, had believed Select's ads about typing "T" for Teach™.

Just because **Palantir** is easy, that doesn't mean it can't perform. The reviewer also said, "**Palantir**'s ease of use is not at the sacrifice of power or efficiency."

And the reviewer didn't even see *Mailout*™—a form-letter function so simple that real people—*like you*—can use it without a programmer. Create letters, labels, reports—repetitive files of all kinds—by adding a few straight-forward commands to use variables, conditionals and nested files. It even has four-function integer math if you want to get tricky.

Other word processors can't beat it for power, and they never get close on usability.

Palantir doesn't cost you an arm and a leg You can get **Palantir** Word Processing, not for the $745 of Word Star with Mail Merge™, not for the $595 of Select, but for only $450. For the closest thing to a dedicated word processor this side of $10,000, that's not bad.

Palantir. Ask your dealer for it by name. If *he* can't pronounce it, we answer to almost anything that begins with "P".

Say it again—"**Pal-an-TEER**." The rest is easy.

Designer Software™
HOUSTON

3400 Montrose Blvd., Suite 718
Houston, Texas 77006
713-520-8221 Telex 790510

Now available for the IBM® Personal Computer

Palantir, Mailout and Designer Software are trademarks of Palantir, Inc.
WordStar and Mail Merge are trademarks of MicroPro International Corporation; Select and Teach are trademarks of Select Information Systems, Inc.; Scripsit is a trademark of Tandy Corporation; IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corp.

Print in special fonts, SPECIAL FONTS! SPECIAL FONTS, *SPECIAL FONTS*, or create your own special fonts!

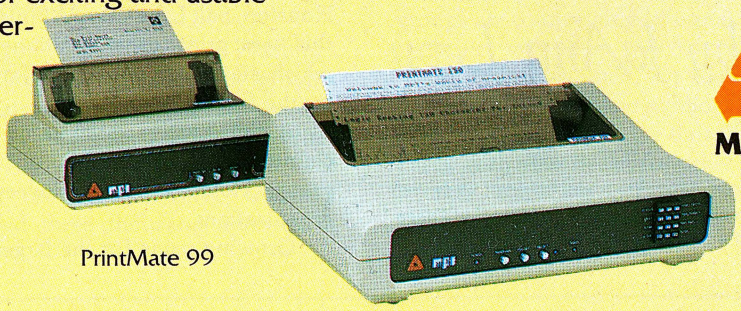
PrintMates™ with AP-PAKs™ go all out to help you get your message across. With an ordinary printer you're limited to ordinary printing. Not so with PrintMates. They let you do more with your computer—choose from 60 different type styles, print characters up to ⅝ of an inch high and even create your own logo and special fonts.

Applications Packages called AP-PAKs support PrintMates and most popular microcomputers with software and hardware for exciting and usable graphics printing. You can intermix text with graphics on the same line and even print the screen with AP-PAKs.

PrintMates print great on any computer system, and with an AP-PAK you can do more. Special AP-PAKs are provided for OEM's who want to differentiate and enhance their systems with a PrintMate printer.

You can do more in style when you mate your system with a PrintMate and AP-PAK—and for less than just another printer.

Call us toll-free at 1-800-821-8848 for more information and your sample of PrintMate's styles.



PrintMate 99

PrintMate 150

The Printer People

mpi

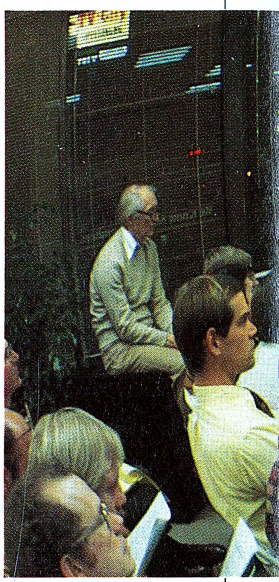
Micro Peripherals, Inc.
4426 South Century Drive
Salt Lake City, Utah 84107
1-800-821-8848

Made in U.S.A

A Little More Help from Your Friends

by JoAnn Levy

What do Silicon Valley engineers, North Dakota farmers, and D.C. architects have in common? If you guessed IBM pcs, you're right, and if you guessed user groups, you're right again. Right after their computers, pc users are keen on other pc users, or so it seems from the numbers of them flocking together to share information, problems, and programs.



Less than a year ago, a survey turned up forty groups (*Softalk*, July 1982). That number has now more than doubled, while club membership has tripled and then some. Representative is John Field's San Diego group, which, in ten months, increased its forty members to one hundred fifty. This March, one hundred fifteen of them jammed the local ComputerLand showroom to hear Peter Norton discuss everything from his utility programs to peanuts and popcorn.

"When we have a speaker like Peter," says Field, "space becomes a real problem. When I started this, I thought maybe twenty or thirty. We've got one hundred fifty now and could probably double that by next year. And now that we're getting out and contacting high-powered speakers, we need an auditorium; we've outgrown ComputerLand."

The membership of some clubs is in knock-your-socks-off numbers. In one year, California's Silicon Valley club mushroomed from six members to five hundred. One of New York City's three clubs gained two hundred members following a write-up in the *Times*, and now numbers seven hundred. Washington, D.C.'s, Capitol PC Users' Group, which started with twenty-six in February 1982, now boasts thirteen hundred members. But the high score goes to the Boston Computer Society: Its IBM pc interest group recently tallied 1,870 members.

Other groups with one hundred or more members can be found in Phoenix, Seattle, Tucson, San Diego, San Francisco, Portland, southwest Connecticut, Atlanta, Chicago, Ann Arbor, Minneapolis, Long Island, Cincinnati, Philadelphia, Houston, Salt Lake City, Winnipeg, Toronto, and, by the time this sees print, other locations as well. Cleveland's group, which started organizing in January, fielded sixty members by the first of March.

A conservative estimate of total membership across the country is ten thousand, not counting corporation-based groups closed to nonemployees or affiliation with national organizations.

Growing pains for the larger groups, which long ago ex-

Opposite page: It's standing room only as the rapidly growing San Diego user group packs ComputerLand's showroom to hear Peter Norton.

ceeded capacity limits at the local ComputerLand, are manifested mainly in a constant scramble for meeting places. Joe Rigo of New York City credits the "right place, right time, right computer" for his group's growth but confesses that it's becoming a "monthly circus" to seat the turnout. They're meeting in a college lecture hall that accommodates one hundred thirty, with a usual show of one hundred eighty. Plans are in the works for dividing into two meeting rooms, with split programs.

Randy Bullard's Atlanta group meets at the county courthouse for free. The problem of no-cost meeting places plagued the Phoenix group until it settled on a smorgasbord restaurant. High school gymnasiums, community rooms at banks, company cafeterias, and public libraries all serve. The behemoth Capitol group descends monthly, some five hundred or more strong, on Bethesda's naval hospital; the Boston group on MIT.

What do all these folks do besides compliment one another on their taste in name-brand computers? Question-and-answer periods are probably the reason most members join. Saul Lowitt of Florida's Manasota group boasts proudly, "We've never had a question that someone couldn't answer."

Most groups have a standard format of speakers, demonstrations, and reviews. Variations on the theme include special-interest discussions, videotaping presentations to exchange with other clubs, and providing overhead monitors so all members can see the screen. Fringe benefits include newsletters and membership directories, some listing each member's equipment so like can talk with more like.

Most clubs are especially proud of their software libraries, whether the programs are written by members or accessed from bulletin boards, the method used by the Fargo, North Dakota, club.

The bulletin board prize goes, hands down, to Washington, D.C.'s, Capitol Users' Group. Mike Todd, the group's organizer and now official chairman of the board, reports that it has "eleven or twelve." On February 20, Todd held his first national IBM pc users' telecommunication conference through CompuServe, with thirty participants; within a month, CompuServe recorded three thousand accesses to GO-PC-131.

Group purchasing is often a club objective. Capitol caused a small ruckus with its group buy of Quadram boards when members negotiated a price less than dealers were paying. Todd reports that the group now "won't do business at less than dealers' prices." Dave Foulger says his two-hundred-fifty-member Southwest Connecticut group—one of the oldest, organizing in November 1981—avoids club buying and accompanying difficulties. But Marvin Freifeld is "trying to break the cycle of high prices" by asking manufacturers to use his Long Island group for beta testing, and reports "some cooperation."

The energetic Portland group, with some eighty of its one hundred twenty members regularly getting together, supplies a consultant list to computer stores, takes a booth at computer fairs, and actively supported Oregon state senator Jeannette Hanby's proposed computer-literacy legislation.

Business and technical people comprise most clubs, but Ron Kester of Pittsburgh's South Hills Computer Club reports that ten of its members are "children chauffeured by parents." South Hills offers family rates so mom and dad can learn a few things, too.

Which brings up the subject of dues. Almost all clubs want them, primarily to pay for newsletter printing, postage, and other organizational costs. One club demands that members be paid up just to get in the door. Two North Dakota groups share both a newsletter and a software library, with a "no-programs-without-dues" policy. Terry Alley of South Bend, Indiana, reports that the northern Indiana group, which levies no dues, solved its fund-raising problem by buying wholesale disks in lots of one hundred, which they sell to themselves at $2.50 over cost.

Regardless of dues practices, size, or meeting place, most groups are comfortably informal, with everyone from novices to techies more than welcome.

So following, then, for the unaffiliated, are the IBM pc user groups open to the public. The list is not exhaustive; new groups are forming all the time. If there's no club in your area, check with your dealer for other pc owners and start one. All it takes, according to David Nussbaum of one of southern California's San Fernando Valley groups, is "one lunatic with two friends."

systemics

Simple and Economical Small Business and Personal Software

DesKit! $149.95
NEW — MAY 1983

- Five-in-One office productivity software in compiled BASIC
- Name & Address, File cards with search & sort, Simple word processing, Appointment & date book, Desk Calculator
- Speed your work flow at home or office with all these functions at your fingertips
- Sales people, small business & professionals — ORDER DesKit!

EZEntry $99.95

- Fast compiled BASIC
- On screen order entry for phone or mail order sales
- Stores 500 orders per disk
- Prints custom invoices
- Up to 200 product codes
- Automatic extension, taxes
- Wholesale & retail pricing
- Source code available

EZLabel + $49.95

- Create sorted Mail Merge files
- Fast compiled BASIC
- Single-key auto-entry
- Fast search & sort
- Prints 1 or 2 up labels
- 1000 addresses per diskette, 2000 on double-sided.
- Sort by zip code or last name
- Sort by user defined codes

EZMemo + $49.95

- Fast compiled BASIC
- Custom form letters using addresses from EZLabel files
- Very easy-to-use word processing
- Create, save & recall memos
- Centering, justification
- Print in any IBM PC type style
- Line by line editing
- Designed for novice users

systemics

3050 Spring Street
West Bloomfield, Michigan 48033

At your dealer, by mail or call:
313 - 851-2504

John Field, San Diego: "I just wanted to be one of the members."

David Nussbaum, San Fernando Valley: "I opened the book and said 'Huh?'"

USER GROUPS: WHERE AND WHEN

The name, in each case, is a contact person, followed by mailing address, not *meeting address. Call for further information.*

ALABAMA

Birmingham. Chet Ellis, ComputerLand, 215 West Valley Avenue, Birmingham, AL 35209; 205-942-8085. Meets first Saturday; dues $20 per year; newsletter.

Mobile/Pensacola. Jim McGinnis, 124 Meadow Wood Loop, Daphne, AL 36526; 205-626-9558. Meets third Saturday.

ALASKA

Anchorage. Mark Bolzern, General Computer Services, 213 West Sixth Street, Anchorage, AK 99501; 907-338-6263. Meets third Thursday; dues $10 per month; bulletin board.

ARIZONA

Mesa/Tempe. Margaret Mead, 2119 East Pueblo, Mesa, AZ 85204; 602-892-8008. Meets monthly; $5 membership fee; newsletter.

Phoenix. Fred Linch, Phoenix IBM PC Users' Group, Box 44218, Phoenix, AZ 85064; 602-266-6634. Meets third Tuesday; dues $12 per year; newsletter; SIGs.

Tucson. Theresa Baudier, Box 1489, Tucson, AZ 85702; 602-293-0611. Meets third Tuesday; dues $10 per year; newsletter.

ARKANSAS

Little Rock. Wally Anderson, Razorback PC Club, 3000 Cleburne, North Little Rock, AR 72116; 501-758-0148. Meets first and third Mondays; dues $15 per year.

CALIFORNIA

East Bay Area. Mark Turrin, Diablo Valley PC, 416 Kahrs Avenue, Pleasant Hill, CA 94523; 415-937-9378. Meets first Wednesday; dues $25 per year; newsletter.

Fresno. Raul Betancourt, 6750 North Woodrow, Fresno, CA 93710; 209-294-2788. Meets first Monday; dues $15 per year; newsletter.

Los Angeles. Neil Zachary, Box 4136, Los Angeles, CA 90028; 213-937-1314. Meets second Tuesday; dues $35 per year; newsletter.

Marin County. William O. Ward, 21 Tamal Vista Boulevard, Suite 186, Corte Madera, CA 94925; 415-927-1212. Meets last Tuesday; dues $25 per year; newsletter; bulletin board.

Modesto. Liz Leedom, Box 1122, Modesto, CA 95353; 209-578-2358. Meets first Thursday; newsletter.

North Orange County. NOCCC IBM PC Users' Group, Box 3616, Orange, CA 92665; 714-998-8080. Interest group of North Orange County Computer Club; meets first Sunday; dues $15 per year; newsletter.

Orange County. Glenn A. Emigh, 1533 Sherwood Village Circle, Placentia, CA 92670; 714-996-4464. Meets second Wednesday.

Sacramento. Dave Burhans, Jr., 8122 Holm Oak Way, Citrus Heights, CA 95610; 916-723-9745 (evenings). Meets third Wednesday; dues $10 per year; newsletter; SIGs.

San Bernardino. Lou Bednorz, Inland PC

USRGP, 23147 Palm Avenue, Grand Terrace, CA 92324; 714-825-9660. Call for information.

San Carlos. Tex Thoman, Peninsular IBM-PC Users' Group, 376 El Camino Real, San Carlos, CA 94070; 415-593-8275. Meets first Saturday.

San Diego. John Field, Box 87770, San Diego, CA 92138; 619-421-9686. Interest group in San Diego Computer Society; meets third Tuesday; newsletter.

San Fernando Valley. David Nussbaum, 11558 Riverside Drive, Suite 207, North Hollywood, CA 91602; 213-985-8337. Meets first Tuesday; dues $15 per year; newsletter.

San Fernando Valley. Ray Kirk, 5923 Murietta, #2, Van Nuys, CA 91401; 213-994-3811. Meets second Thursday; dues $15 per family.

San Francisco. SF IBM PC Users' Group, Box 4411 Geary Boulevard, Suite 13, San Francisco, CA 94118. Meets third Monday; dues $20 per year; newsletter; SIGs; write for information.

San Francisco. Max Brioski, SFPCC, 1732 Washington Street, Suite 4, San Francisco, CA 94109; 415-775-8882. Meets every fourth Thursday; dues $15 per year; newsletter.

San Jose. Syd Geraghty, 7219 Shea Court, San Jose, CA 95139; 408-629-9402. Call for meeting information; dues $25 per year; newsletter.

Santa Barbara. Stu Swartz, 721 Cliff Drive, Santa Barbara, CA 93109; 805-966-2919. Meets third Thursday; dues $10 per year.

Santa Cruz. Dave Roehr, ComputerLand, 1955 Forty-first Avenue, Capitola, CA 95010; 408-476-6170. Call for information.

South Bay. Michael A. Immel, Box 665, Lomita, CA 90717; 213-647-2739 (days), 213-325-7533 (evenings). Write or call for meeting information; dues $20 per year; newsletter.

Sunnyvale. Nancy Nehring, Silicon Valley Computer Society, Box 60506, Sunnyvale, CA 94088; 408-984-2558 (evenings), 408-980-8519 (days). Meets second Wednesday; dues $30 per year; newsletter; SIGs.

Thousand Oaks. Norm Blessum, 171 East Thousand Oaks Boulevard (ComputerLand), Thousand Oaks, CA 91360; 805-492-1003. Meets fourth Thursday; dues $10 per year; newsletter.

COLORADO

Boulder. Steve Leibson, 4040 Greenbriar Boulevard, Boulder, CO 80303; 303-494-4062. Interest group in Denver Amateur Computer Society; dues $12 per year; newsletter.

Denver. Chris Van Essen or Chris Carson, Rocky Mountain PC Interest Group, 8972 East Hampden Avenue, Suite 169, Denver, CO 80231; 303-694-9038. Meets every third Wednesday.

CONNECTICUT

Southwest. Dave Foulger, 69 River Street, New Canaan, CT 06840; 203-966-9378. Meets fourth Tuesday; newsletter subscription, $5.

West Hartford. Rich Paterson, ComputerLand, 131 South Main Street, West Hartford, CT 06110; 203-561-1446. Meets first Wednesday; newsletter.

FLORIDA

Boca Raton. Wyatt Bell, College of Boca Raton, 3601 North Military Trail, Boca Raton, FL 33431; 305-994-0770, ext. 14 or 83. Call for information.

Sarasota. Richard Reynolds, Manasota IBM-PCUG, 1102 Mallorca Drive, Bradenton, FL 33529; (813) 792-5400. Meets third Wednesday; dues $15 per year; newsletter.

GEORGIA

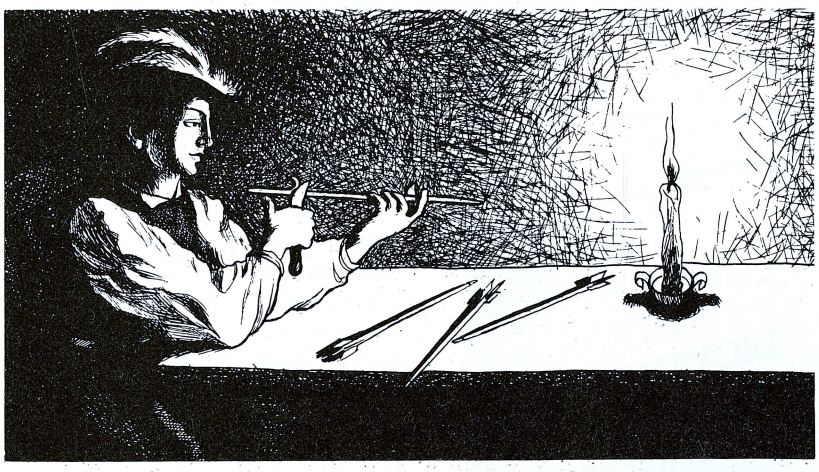
Atlanta. Randy Bullard, 2965 Atterberry Court, Decatur, GA 30033; 404-634-9585. Meets second Wednesday; dues $20 per year; newsletter.

HAWAII

Honolulu. Doug Long, 1750 Kalakaua, Suite 3-168, Honolulu, HI 96826; 808-735-5769. Meets second Tuesday; dues $10 per year;

WORDSMITH

The Word Processor



The archer crafted his arrows to fly straight, true, and accurately because he never knew what dangers lurked in the forest. **Wordsmith** ensures that you won't go into the word processing jungle alone.

Wordsmith's full screen multi-window editor utilizes the full capabilities of the IBM PC. **Wordsmith** can divide text into chapters, sections, and lists, as well as provide a table of contents.

Arm yourself with the best. Get **Wordsmith** today!

QUALITY AT A REASONABLE PRICE, $125.

MANUAL ALONE, $25.

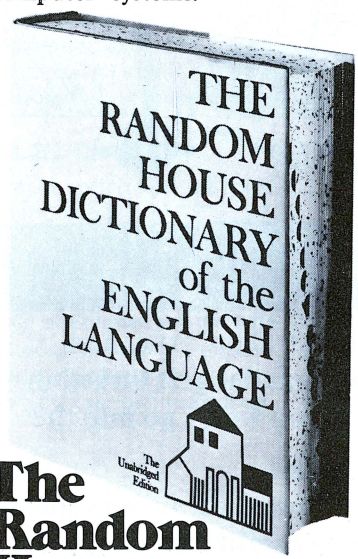
SYMMETRIC SOFTWARE

2005 BALBOA BLVD., SUITE 256
NEWPORT BEACH, CALIFORNIA
92663
(714) 887-8595

master charge VISA

Less for Your Money

If you do word processing on your personal computer, you probably know that there are many programs for sale to help you with your spelling. But the biggest spelling error you'll ever make is paying too much for your spelling correction software. The Random House ProofReader gives you less for your money – less trouble, that is, and fewer spelling errors. The Random House ProofReader is based on the world famous Random House Dictionary. It contains up to 80,000 words, depending on your disk capacity. You can add new words with the touch of a key. It shows you the error and the sentence it's in. It instantly suggests corrections. It even rechecks your corrections. And it costs half as much as other programs with far less power. The Random House ProofReader is compatible with all CP/M 2.2®, MS-DOS® and IBM Personal Computer® systems.



The Random House Proof Reader $50

For orders or information, see your local dealer or call 505-281-3371. Master card and VISA accepted. Or write Random House ProofReader, Box 339-T, Tijeras, NM 87059. Please enclose $50 and specify your computer model, disk size and memory.

Random House and the House design are registered trademarks of Random House, Inc. CP/M is a registered trademark of Digital Research, Inc. IBM and IBM Personal Computer are registered trademarks of International Business Machines, Inc. MS-DOS is a registered trademark of Microsoft, Inc.

newsletter.

IDAHO

Boise. Bruce Burns, ComputerLand, 11872 Chinden Boulevard, Boise, ID 83704; 208-939-2433 (evenings). Call for information.

ILLINOIS

Chicago. James L. Szafranski, 5195 Castaway Lane, Barrington, IL 60010; 312-934-8133. Meets second Thursday; dues $15 per year.

INDIANA

Fort Wayne. George Gynn, 9904 West Goshen Road, Fort Wayne, IN 46818; 219-693-3147. Meets third Tuesday; dues $15 per year; newsletter.

Indianapolis. David Reed, 6704 Hoover Road, Indianapolis, IN 46260; 317-259-7892. Meets fourth Monday; dues $15 per year single, $20 family; newsletter.

South Bend. Terry Alley, M.D., Northern Indiana IBM PC Users' Group, 316 North Ironwood, South Bend, IN 46615; 219-289-5506 (days), 219-291-3979 (evenings). Autumn Revolution chapter.

IOWA

Cedar Falls. Lee Ann Moore, ComputerLand, Black Hawk Village Shopping Center, Cedar Falls, IA 50613; 319-277-1700. Meets first Monday.

Des Moines. Gary Wilcox, Box 246, Des Moines, IA 50301; 515-967-5880. Call for information.

KANSAS

Kansas City. Dr. R. Wayne Thompson, 11005 West Sixtieth Street, Shawnee, KS 66203; 913-631-0110. Meets first Monday; dues $15 per year; newsletter.

Topeka. Becky Hinton, Topeka Public Library, 1515 West Tenth Street, Topeka, KS 66604; 913-233-2040. Meets third Monday.

KENTUCKY

Louisville. Clyde Jenkins, 680 Fourth Avenue, Louisville, KY 40202; 502-584-8157. Call for information.

LOUISIANA

New Orleans. Bob Starr, ComputerLand, 3517 Nineteenth Street, Metairie, LA 70002; 504-588-6276. Meets first and third Wednesdays; dues $18 per year; bimonthly newsletter.

MAINE/NEW HAMPSHIRE

Portsmouth. Cynthia Harriman, 57 South Street, Portsmouth, NH 03801; 603-436-1608. Call for information.

MARYLAND

Baltimore. Ed Honabach, Baltimore IBM PC Users' Group, 1910 Trout Farm Road, Jarrettsville, MD 21084; 301-666-6344 (days), 301-557-9965 (evenings). Meets first Tuesday; dues $10 per year; newsletter.

Baltimore. Chip Hayden or Alan Burke, IBM PC Business Users, 40 West Chesapeake Avenue, Suite 300, Baltimore, MD 21204; 301-296-4600. Monthly SIG meetings; semiannual conference.

MASSACHUSETTS

Boston. Mike Rohrbach, Box 307, Wellesley Hills, MA 02181; 617-235-8830. Interest group in Boston Computer Society; meets second Thursday; dues $20 per year; monthly magazine; bulletin board.

MICHIGAN

Ann Arbor. Will Weber, Box 7545, Ann Arbor, MI 48107; 313-665-4407. Meets third Thursday; dues $18 per year, $12 for students and seniors; newsletter; bulletin board.

MINNESOTA

Minneapolis. Peter LeNeau, Box 3163, Minneapolis, MN 55403; 612-339-9071. Meets second Tuesday; dues $10 per year; newsletter.

MISSOURI

Saint Louis. Dave Zumbro, Box 837, Saint Louis, MO 63188. Meets first Tuesday; dues $35 per year; newsletter.

NEW JERSEY

Central. Mike O'Donnell, Box 42, Fanwood, NJ 07023; 201-754-7263. Interest group in Amateur Computer Group of New Jersey. Meets first Friday; dues $14 per year; newsletter.

North. Irving Lang, North Jersey IBM PC, 7 West Forty-fifth Street, New York, NY 10036; 212-869-5066, or Joe McDermott, 201-489-3877 (evenings). Meets second Thursday; dues $20 per year, family rates; newsletter.

NEW YORK

Buffalo. Linda Fall, 265 Kings Highway, Snyder, NY 14226; 716-839-0574. Meets second Monday; dues $20 per year; newsletter; bulletin board.

Long Island. Marvin Freifeld, 3 Lindron Avenue, Smithtown, NY 11787; 516-724-0574. Interest group of Long Island Computer Association; meets second Friday; dues $10 per year; newsletter; SIGs.

New York City. David Gillett, 687 Broadway, New York, NY 10012; 212-254-9191. Interest group in New York Amateur Computer Club; meets third Wednesday; dues $10 per year.

New York City. Eric A. Jaffe, Cornell Medical University, 1300 York Avenue, New York, NY 10021; 212-472-6140. Meets third Wednesday; dues $10 per year; SIGs.

New York City. Helaine Head, Manhattan Micro, 360 Central Park West, New York, NY 10025; 212-222-9027. Meets first Monday; newsletter.

Rochester. Dale Dewey, Picture City PC Programming Club, 7284 High View Trail, Victor, NY 14564; 716-924-5565. Meets first Wednesday; dues $12 per year; newsletter.

White Plains. Dave Hodgson, 822 Pines Bridge Road, Ossining, NY 10562; 914-762-5248. Meets first Thursday; dues $15 per year; newsletter.

NORTH DAKOTA

Fargo. Loren D. Jones, 1339 Seventh Avenue South, Fargo, ND 58103; 701-235-7573 or 701-280-2608. Meets third Monday; newsletter.

Grand Forks. John D. Hilley, 717 Ives Street, Buxton, ND 58218; 701-847-2935. Meets first Thursday; joint newsletter with Fargo club.

OHIO

Akron/Canton. Raymond H. Schilling, Stark Technical College, 6200 Frank Avenue N.W., Canton, OH 44720; 216-494-6170. Meets first Monday; dues $10 per year; newsletter.

Cincinnati. Jerry Daiker, Box 3097, Cincinnati, OH 45201; 513-741-8279. Meets third Tuesday; dues $15 per year; newsletter.

Cleveland. Roy McCartney, Greater Cleveland PC UG, 30704 Royalview Drive, Willowick, OH 44094; 216-944-5173. Meets first Saturday; dues $15 per year; newsletter.

Youngstown. Eugene Rhodes, ComputerLand, Western Reserve IBM-PC, 2000 North Road S.E., Warren, OH 44484; 216-544-4191. Meets second Tuesday; dues $15 per year, individuals, $20 families, $25 businesses; newsletter.

OKLAHOMA

Tulsa. Walt Hailey, Box 1133, Tulsa, OK 74101; 918-663-2693. Interest group in Tulsa Computer Society; meets third Monday; dues $10 per year; newsletter; bulletin board.

OREGON

Eugene. Greg Estes, Box 5070, Eugene, OR 97405; 503-687-0398. Meets third Thursday.

Portland. Rich Rohde, 12260 Southwest 124th Street, Tigard, OR 97223; 503-620-6862. Meets second Wednesday; dues $20 per year; newsletter; SIGs.

PENNSYLVANIA

Philadelphia. Bennett Landsman, 2041 Harbour Drive, Palmyra, NJ 08065; 609-786-1441. Interest group in Philadelphia Area Computer Society; meets third Saturday; dues $22 per year; newsletter.

Pittsburgh. Chuck Glassmire, 29 Coulter Street, Pittsburgh, PA 15205; 412-922-1022. Interest group in Pittsburgh Area Computer Club; meets third Sunday; newsletter.

Pittsburgh. Victor Merrell, South Hills Computer Club, 1692 Northgate Drive, Pittsburgh, PA 15241; 412-221-6383. Meets second Thursday; $15 initiation, dues $10 per year, family rates; newsletter.

SOUTH DAKOTA

Rapid City. Gary Gall, ComputerLand, 738 Saint Joe Street, Rapid City, SD 57701; 605-348-5384. Call for information.

TENNESSEE

Knoxville. Wayne Morrison, 853 West Woodchase, Knoxville, TN 37922; 615-966-1474. Meets second Monday; dues $10 per year; newsletter.

Knoxville. Ross Burrus, Science Applications, Knoxville Independent Users' Group, Plaza Tower, Suite 801, Oak Ridge, TN 37830; 615-482-6649. Call for information.

TEXAS

Austin. Charles Weller, Central Texas IBM PC UG, 325 Explorer, Austin, TX 78734; 512-261-6566. Meets first Tuesday; dues $35 per year; newsletter.

Dallas. Alan C. Elliott, North Texas IBM PC UG, 1028 North Madison Avenue, Dallas, TX 75208; 214-688-2767 (days), 214-941-8475 (evenings). Meets third Saturday; dues $24 per year; newsletter.

Dallas/Fort Worth. Samuel P. Cook, Southwest PC UG, 309 Lincolnshire, Irving, TX 75061; 214-253-6979. Meets third Saturday; dues $30 per year; newsletter; SIGs.

Houston. Rob Taylor, Houston Area League of PC Users, 8023 Shady Grove, Houston, TX 77040; 713-937-3592. Meets first Tuesday; dues $25 per year; newsletter; bulletin board.

San Antonio. Mike Sullivan, Alamo PC Organization, 4807 Clemson, San Antonio, TX 78249; 512-828-7926. Meets first Thursday; dues $15 first year, $10 thereafter.

San Antonio. Ken Holcombe, Texas Users' Group, 178 Tipperary, San Antonio, TX 78223; 512-333-7163. Call for information.

UTAH

Salt Lake City. Dean Bishop, Utah Blue Chips, Box 11901, Salt Lake City, UT 84147; 801-355-4617 (days), 801-561-3417 (evenings). Autumn Revolution chapter; meets third Wednesday.

VIRGINIA

Richmond. Jim Love, Central Virginia Users' Group, Box 34446, Richmond, VA 23234; 804-271-6173. Meets fourth Thursday; dues $20 per year; newsletter.

WASHINGTON

Olympia. Dr. Roger Kuhrt, 2030 Baker Terrace, Olympia, WA 98501; 206-943-8755. Call for information; newsletter.

Seattle. Sandra Stowell, PNW IBM Users' Group, Box 3363, Bellevue, WA 98009; 206-226-2578. Meets third Saturday; dues $10 per year; newsletter.

Spokane. Maurice Feryn, Route 1, Box 394, Mead, WA 99021; 509-466-3685. Meets last Tuesday.

WASHINGTON, D.C.

Mike Todd, Capitol PC Users' Group, 1414-C Wright Circle, Bolling AFB 20336; 202-561-5187 or 202-433-4380. Meets third Monday; dues $25 per year; newsletter; SIGs; bulletin boards (300 baud), 703-560-0979.

WEST VIRGINIA

Charleston. Farris VanMeter, ComputerLand, 224 Seventh Avenue, South Charleston, WV 25303; 304-744-7962. Meets first Wednesday.

8087 SUPPORT for the IBM PC

Speed up your PC with these fine products:

8087 CHIP Call

87/88 GUIDE™

This user's guide contains all the information required to drive an 8087 from assembly language or the BASIC Interpreter. It is a valuable companion to the IBM MACRO Assembler and includes listings of 8087/8088 programs which run on the IBM PC.

$19.95

87 MACRO™

A library of assembly language MACROS which access all 8087 instructions from the IBM MACRO Assembler. Includes commented source listings of frequently called 8087 utility procedures. **$150**

87 BASIC,™ 87 PASCAL™ AND 87 FORTRAN™

Libraries of drivers which work with the IBM Compilers to produce super-fast execution modules.

each $150

FASTPAK + 8087™

This package includes a copy of our 87/88 GUIDE™, a MicroWare-tested 8087 with installation instructions and one of the following powerful modules: 87BASIC™, 87PASCAL™, 87MACRO™, or 87FORTRAN™.

$375

64K RAM CHIPS..... **$54**

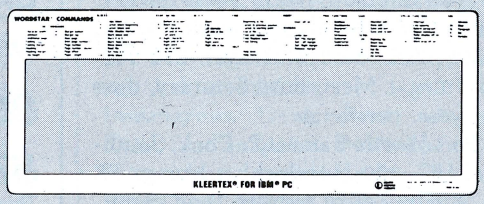
MicroWare is your complete clearing house for 8087 related products. Call for our complete catalog.

IBM and IBM Personal Computer are registered trademarks of IBM Corp. 8087 is a trademark of Intel Corp. 87/88 GUIDE, 87 MACRO, 87 BASIC, 87 PASCAL, 87 FORTRAN, 87 COBOL and MicroWare are trademarks of MicroWare, Inc.

MicroWare P.O. Box 79 Kingston, MA 02364 (617) 746-7341

IMMEDIATELY VISIBLE PROGRAM COMMANDS FOR THE IBM® PC

KLEERTEX® TEMPLATE



$19.95 Each (Single-sided)

$32.95 Each (Combined reversible)

- ALPHABETICAL LISTING OF COMMANDS
- QUICK ACCESS
- EASY TO READ
- FITS OVER KEYBOARD
- NON-GLARE SURFACE
- DURABLE PLASTIC
- COLOR COORDINATED

CONTACT YOUR LOCAL DEALER OR MAIL ORDER FORM TO:

CREATIVE COMPUTER PRODUCTS ™
P.O. BOX 85152 MB134
SAN DIEGO, CA 92138
(619) 268-0793

ALSO AVAILABLE FOR APPLE® II, OSBORNE 1™ AND KAYPRO® II

IBM is a reg. TM of International Business Machines Corp. WORDSTAR is a reg. TM of Micro Pro International Corp. SUPERCALC is a TM of Sorcim, Inc. dBASE II is a TM of Ashton-Tate, Inc. VISICALC is a reg. TM of Visicorp. EASY WRITER II is a TM of Information Unlimited Software. KLEERTEX® Templates are not sponsored or approved by or connected with International Business Machines Corp., Micro Pro International Corp., Sorcim Inc., Ashton-Tate Inc., Visicorp or Information Unlimited Software.

CREATIVE COMPUTER PRODUCTS is an independent company specializing in Sophisticated Solutions for computer operators.

CUT HERE

Please send me the following KLEERTEX® at _____ each plus $1.95 shipping and handling charge:
(California residents add 6% sales tax) (Overseas customers add $5.00 per order)

SINGLE-SIDED - $19.95 Each

____ EASY WRITER II® Commands
____ VISICALC® Commands
____ WORDSTAR® Commands
____ SUPERCALC® Commands

COMBINED REVERSIBLE - $32.95 Each

____ EASY WRITER II®/SUPERCALC® Commands
____ EASY WRITER II®/VISICALC® Commands
____ WORDSTAR®/SUPERCALC® Commands
____ WORDSTAR®/VISICALC® Commands
____ dBASE II® Commands

I WANT TO PAY FOR KLEERTEX® AS FOLLOWS:

☐ Check Enclosed ☐ Master Card
☐ Money Order ☐ Send Catalog Only
☐ VISA (PLEASE PRINT CLEARLY)

I use a _____ computer.
I need a KLEERTEX® of _____ _____ Program Commands.
Please notify me when it is available.

CARD NO. _____ EXP.DATE _____
SIGNATURE _____
NAME _____
ADDRESS _____
CITY _____ STATE _____ ZIP _____

☐ PLEASE SEND YOUR FREE CATALOG FEATURING A HOST OF WONDERFUL TIMESAVERS.

VISA © CREATIVE COMPUTER PRODUCTS™ 1982

INTERNATIONAL INQUIRIES TELEX: 697120 DATAMAX SDG ATTN: DEPT 303

master charge

WISCONSIN

Madison. Philip Niehoff, Box 83, Madison, WI 53701; 608-255-7641 (evenings). Meets second Wednesday; dues $15 per year; newsletter.

Milwaukee. Gerald Freitag, 3028 South Eighty-fourth Street, West Allis, WI 53227; 414-541-2600. Call for information.

CANADA

Edmonton. Gerry J. Danen, 106 Abbotsfield Road, Edmonton, Alberta T5W 4S9; 403-464-8283 (days), 403-474-0732 (evenings). Meets third Tuesday.

Toronto. Andrew Hagan, The PC Club of Toronto, Box 266, Station A, Toronto, Ontario M5W 1B2; 416-881-6714. Meets third Tuesday; dues $20, family rates; newsletter.

Vancouver. Mike Street, Box 48517, Vancouver, British Columbia V7X 1A2; 604-271-3883. Meets third Wednesday; newsletter.

Victoria. Kevin Morrison, 2175 Lansdowne Road, Victoria, British Columbia V8P 1B5; 604-592-1320. Call for information; dues $25 per year.

Winnipeg. Dennis Bayomi, 5 Thackeray Crescent, Winnipeg, Manitoba R3K 0G9; 204-888-0718. Meets third Thursday; dues $20 per year, $12 under eighteen, $25 family; newsletter.

NATIONAL ASSOCIATIONS

Autumn Revolution, Box 55329, Tulsa, OK 74155; 918-663-3436. Annual dues of $30 includes ten issues of newsletter; software library, public domain and member-written (royalty arrangement); technical library; bulletin board; technical assistance by telephone.

International Personal Computer Owners (IPCO), Box 10426, Pittsburgh, PA 15234; 412-561-1857. Bimonthly newsletter, 150-program software library, commercial program discounts; U.S. dues $20 per year, Canada and Mexico $25, all others $50.

Personna Computer Association, Box 759, Point Pleasant, NJ 08742; 201-840-0300. Dues of $45 per year include newsletter, discount hardware/software services; software exchange; annual and regional conferences; Tymnet newsletters, tutorials, and bulletin board. Canadian affiliate: PCA, Box 251, Ajax, Ontario L1S 3C3; 416-498-9659.

UCSD p-System Users' Society (USUS), Box 1148, La Jolla, CA 92038. Individual dues, $20; institutional dues of $500 include reproduction rights to quarterly newsletter and software library; SIGs; bulletin board; GT Telemail; semiannual conferences.

OTHER

Amateur radio buffs interested in pc/radio applications such as Teletype and Morse code should contact Alvin J. Loeckle, Jr., 10338 Sagplum, Houston, TX 77089; 713-481-0736. ▲

There's power . . . then there's POWER!

Unleash Your IBM® PC Capabilities with these Powerful Products from . . .

Memory Technologies, Inc.

The **Versa-RAM®** offers from 64k to 512k bytes of error-checked memory on one board. Entirely assembled and tested, full year warranty. Fully socketed for future expansion and completely compatible with all available IBM hardware and software.

Versa-RAM Plus® offers multi-function memory plus I/O board. Expandable from 64k to 256k and offers additional power by including two RS-232 serial ports and one parallel printer port.

Versa-Ware® RAM Disk/Spooler boosts your IBM PC's power capability by allowing emulation of one or two 160k floppy drives or one 320k floppy. Power is further enhanced when **RAM Spooler** allows use of **RAM** as a printer buffer. The PC operates at full speed while the printer continues to print. That's power!

See your local IBM PC dealer for a closer look at **Versa-RAM** and **Versa-Ware** by **Memory Technologies**. Or contact us direct for more information. **Call toll free 1-800-348-3377.**

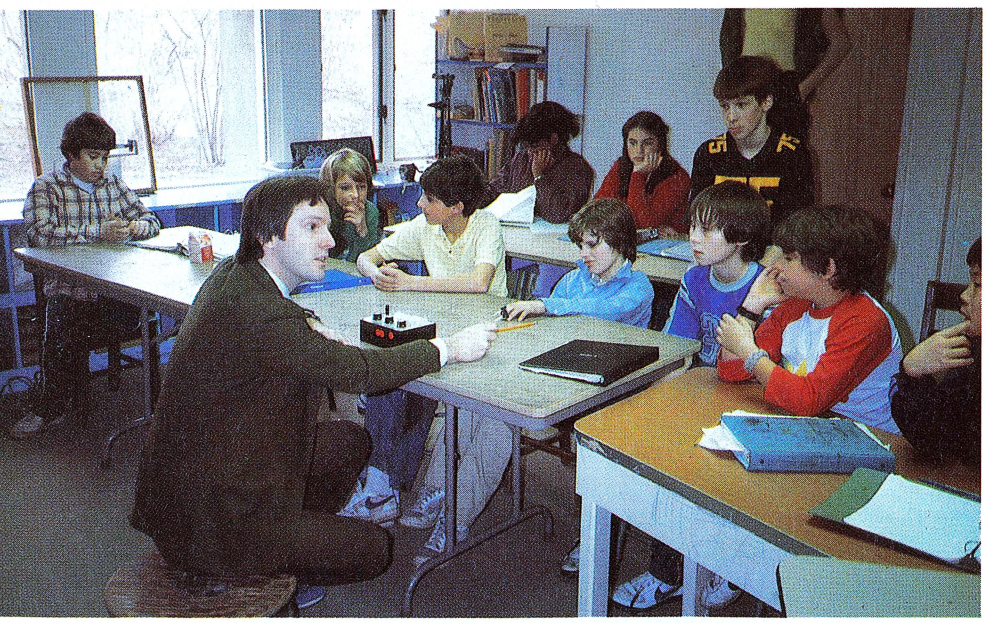
IBM is a trademark of International Business Machines Corp.

Memory Technologies, Inc.

4343 Grand Prix Drive • Logansport, Indiana 46947 • (219) 722-1454

by Roe R. Adams III

TOM SNYDER
Teaching the Future Today



The setting is a fifth-grade classroom in a Cambridge, Massachusetts, private school. The year, 1980. An experiment is in progress here. Everyone in the class is standing up, holding hands and forming a large, irregular loop. At one end of the loop, two students standing next to each other are grasping the poles of a galvanometer, and the galvanometer is emitting a weak electric current. Each time the current moves completely through the human circuit, a buzzer sounds.

Although it's fun to participate in and interesting to watch, this part of the experiment isn't especially impressive. But now the teacher moves the students around, regrouping them into two parallel lines. The circuitry is rigged so that the buzzer buzzes only when there's a closed circuit in each of the two lines. Voila, a human *and* gate. From *and* gates to *or* gates to *xor* gates, the class literally walks through all the fundamental elements of a complex logic machine. The basics of computer science are absorbed by fifth-graders.

This educational breakthrough took place at a private school called Shady Hill. The teacher was Tom Snyder, author of the critically acclaimed *Snooper Troops* programs.

Thomas F. F. Snyder, thirty-three, graduated from Swarthmore College with a Bachelor of Arts degree and from Leslie College with a master's degree in education and an abiding love of rock 'n' roll. Following the siren call of late-sixties pop music, Snyder became a recording artist with Capitol Records in 1968. Four years later he retired from the record business—temporarily, at least—to teach science and music at Shady Hill.

Shady Hill follows the open classroom model that became popular in the sixties. The school's biggest innovation has been the development of the concept of the *central subject*. Each grade follows one theme throughout an entire school year. Fourth-graders study the Greeks, while fifth-graders delve into the Middle East. Higher grades concentrate on Africa, American history, India, and the twentieth century in overview. Each of the usual major courses—art, science, social studies—is related to the central subject of a particular grade.

In keeping with the school's basic educational philosophy, Snyder was not told what to teach, or how to teach. When he was hired, he was told only "to learn, work hard, experiment, and explore new approaches."

Teachers at Shady Hill work with the same children for several years. Snyder gets to know kids when they start the fifth grade and teaches them until they complete the seventh, resulting in a strong teacher-student rapport. Snyder attributes the scope of his accomplishments as an educator to this nurturing environment.

Educational Robotics. One of Snyder's earliest educational innovations was Personk, a two-part machine consisting of a small mobile robot and a primitive computer resembling a wooden octopus. The computer has a round column in the center and angled arms radiating off the top. Each arm has controls that affect the robot's movement.

This simulation calls for the participation of ten children, assigned to positions A through J. (Snyder chose K to represent the simplified computer; hence, the name Personk.)

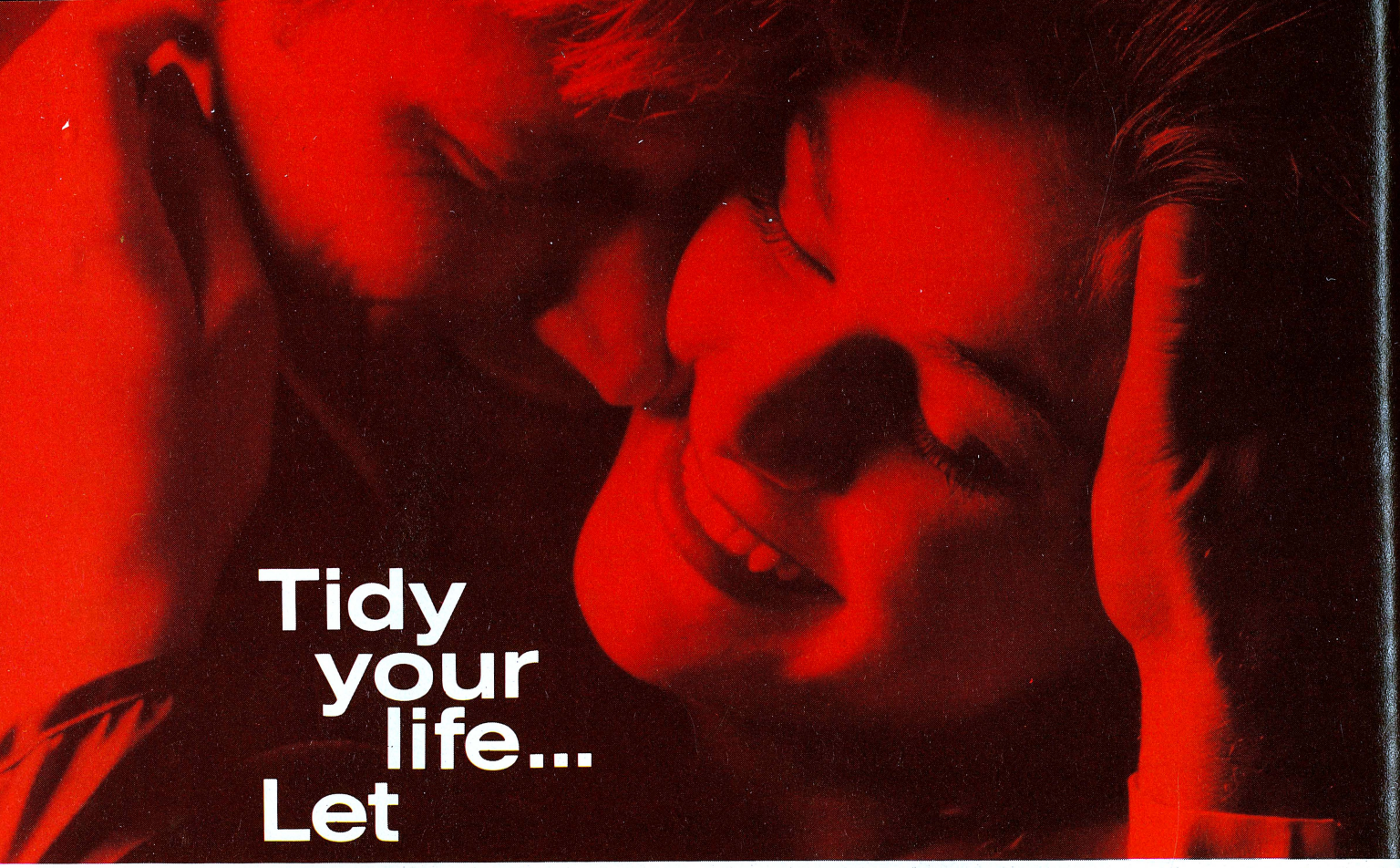
The children's objective is to get the robot, located in another

Illustration by Weldon O. Lewin

room out of sight, to accomplish a particular task. Each student receives feedback for his controls but is not told what aspect of the robot he is controlling. Therefore, cooperation is essential.

Personk was so successful that Parker Brothers expressed an interest in acquiring Snyder's design. Snyder agreed to a meeting in January of 1978 with that company's head of game acquisitions. In preparation for the meeting, Snyder put tremendous effort and many dollars into making Personk more attractive. When he arrived at Parker Brothers, Snyder discovered that he had confused the dates; the meeting had been scheduled for the day before.

"It took me only a few moments to realize that subconsciously I had decided to miss the meeting. I just wasn't ready to leave the known, comfortable world of teaching to enter the intense, competitive world of business." Snyder did, however, seek a new outlet



SHOEBOX™

schedule your affairs!

The fact is, you're probably spending too much time trying to keep track of your time and your expenses. Aren't there other things you'd like to do?

Do you suffer from any of these symptoms?

- **Missed appointments**
- **Blown deadlines**
- **Forgotten birthdays or anniversaries**
- **Lost expense records**
- **Unbilled project or client hours**
- **Late expense reports**
- **Trouble remembering what you've done or whom you've seen**
- **Lack of direction**
- **Uncertain priorities**
- **Not enough time for the really important things**

If you answered "yes" to any of the above, SHOEBOX can help you. It's a complete system for managing time and expenses that's *really* easy to use. This SHOEBOX can hold and organize all those little scraps of information that turn so quickly into a hopeless jumble.

SHOEBOX provides unique features:

- **Appointments management:** An intelligent calendar that lets you plan your daily schedule, as far ahead as you like.
- **Reminders:** A separate, intelligent things-to-do list and tickler file—great for deadline items *and* recurring chores.
- **Expense recording:** Room for detailed entry of single or multiple expenditures connected with any appointment or reminder—including account, category and comments.
- **Recurring schedule items:** Put it in once, and it will reappear as many times as it needs to, no matter what the pattern of recurrence—whether it's the every-Tuesday meeting, a quarterly tax deadline or your mother-in-law's birthday.
- **Advance notice:** As much early warning of an item as you need.
- **Printed schedules:** Quick, hardcopy take-along schedules.
- **Expense Reports:** Detailed expense summaries for any period of time you select, organized by account or category.
- **Check-offs:** Mark reminders completed, or let the undone ones stay with you until they're cleared up.
- **Histories:** Recall all your past appointments or reminders involving a given person or subject.
- **Multiple-user:** Share your SHOEBOX but retain privacy for your information with password protection.
- **One for all:** A single operator can coordinate schedules for many individuals
- **Ease of use:** *No* knowledge of programming languages required...Single-keystroke commands...Lots of *on-screen* help for the new user...
Help *always* available—never more than a keystroke away...A User's Manual that's actually readable...Sensible defaults for data-entry options.

SHOEBOX offers a lot. What does it ask of you? Just an *IBM Personal Computer* (or compatible system) with 128K of memory, one floppy-diskette drive and, optionally, a printer that can put at least 80 characters on a line.

Suggested retail price is **$195**

MasterCard VISA

TECHLAND SYSTEMS INC. (212) 684-7788
25 Waterside Plaza, NY, NY 10010

SHOEBOX is a trademark of Techland Systems Inc. for its schedule-and-expense management software.

for his creative talents. He turned to microcomputers.

Snyder's first computer was a Radio Shack Model I, which he bought in late 1978. He adapted Personk to the computer, then began to experiment again. The software simulations he started developing for his classroom turned out to be quite different from anything that had been done before for microcomputers.

Wariness of the drill-and-practice approach to educational software led Snyder to conceive of the learning environment. For the first time, the social side of microcomputers—group participation and student collaboration—were the focus of the software. The emphasis was on group dynamics and basic skills rather than on the actual use of the computer.

"The computer is intended to be a servant or a tool," observes Snyder. "I prefer to have students take an active role with the computer, by making them responsible for keeping track of information and having them work together in small groups."

In 1980, on the advice of Harvey Brudner, formerly head of Westinghouse Learning, Snyder signed a contract with McGraw-Hill to produce the Search Series.

The Search Series consists of five simulations for fifth through twelfth-graders. The subjects covered are geography, geology, community relations, energy exploration, and archaeology. Each program in the series is designed to be used with an entire classroom, and all class record-keeping is handled on disk. Each student receives a special workbook in which to record observations and data, and each student participates in an in-depth educational adventure.

The Computer Learning Connection. Becoming more involved in the creation of educational software led Snyder to form Computer Learning Connection in 1980. A little venture capital got the company off the ground, and two part-time programmers helped produce the software. *Snooper Troops: The Granite Point Ghost* would be the company's first offering.

At the time the new company was formed, Ann Waddington Snyder, Tom's wife, was teaching fifth grade at Shady Hill. Her class served as a developmental ground for *Snooper Troops*. In its original form, the program was a group activity. Twenty detective students were running all over the computer-generated town, independently gathering clues. At recess, everyone got together and compared notes.

In 1981, Rick Abrams joined the company to handle product marketing and to ease Snyder's workload. At this point Snyder began redesigning *Snooper Troops*. The revised version preserved the Hardy Boys-Nancy Drew flavor of the original but allowed one or two children, as well as groups of children, to solve the mysteries.

In 1981, Bank Street College in New York and an organization called Intentional Educations asked Snyder to do some simulations for a proposed television adventure series. Software was to be used in the federally funded project. One module Snyder created simulated the events involved in navigation. Groups of kids using it pretend they are on ships looking for whales to study. In the process they learn to use radar, sonar, and a telescope, and how to do detailed mapping. As is the case in most of Snyder's work, cooperation is of the utmost importance here.

The following year, a newly formed publishing company called Spinnaker Software was seeking innovative educational software. Snyder's first two *Snooper Troops* adventures, *The Granite Point Ghost* and *The Disappearing Dolphin*, were the company's first acquisitions. Both programs were highly successful.

William Bowman, chairman of Spinnaker, attributes the success of the *Snooper Troops* programs to the fact that they combine fun with solid learning. "Students are taught the fundamentals of note-taking and data organization while they are having a good time."

This past February, Snyder reorganized his company into Tom Snyder Productions and relocated it just off Harvard Square in Cambridge. Here, Snyder has dozens of play-testers eager to try out his ideas. Among them are students from several nearby Cambridge schools, as well as children from Shady Hill. The kids go to Snyder's offices after school and play-test the games he is working on, an arrangement that has provided valuable feedback to Snyder and has helped many young people to become computer-literate.

In Search Of. . . . Craig Bergstrom, a ten-year-old, codesigned Snyder's latest game, *In Search of the Most Amazing Thing*. "Craig came to feel as though he was one of our regular programmers," Snyder notes. "He was working with pencil and paper, thinking out problems, rather than using the joystick to play games."

The new game starts off slowly in order to allow children to develop confidence in their ability to accomplish simple tasks using the computer. As the game progresses, the tasks get more and more complicated. The intrepid traveler learns decision-making, map-reading, music-writing, trading skills, and even how to fly a hot-air balloon. Much of the game involves dealing with aliens. Players learn to negotiate with the aliens rather than to destroy them.

In Search of the Most Amazing Thing was written and developed on the IBM Personal Computer, then translated to other computers. Snyder is so pleased with the way the project went that he has decided to use the pc for all his future software development.

Snyder is now busy working on an unusual computer game for children who have difficulty conceptualizing letters. In this game, the player must climb up the letters of a word the size of Mount Rushmore. The letters form a stone bridge across a valley. When the student gets to the other side, she must identify the word just crossed in order to be allowed to pass through a gate to the next word. Because the letters of the word are so big, the child can't see the entire word or even the entire letter she is in the process of climbing. Instead of learning by sight alone, the child learns the shapes of letters through the imaginary experience of crawling around on them; kinesthetic awareness enhances visual awareness. For kids who have difficulty seeing or decoding the letters, or who have a tendency to reverse them, this is a particularly valuable experience.

"A child who has been on top of a four-hundred-foot letter and has been able to slide down the slanted part of an R or climb on the inside of an H will have a real grasp of letters," declares Snyder.

Snyder recently collaborated on a book entitled *Practical Guide to Computers in Education*, published by Addison-Wesley. Although he enjoyed working on the book, the notion of putting novels on the computer is what really sparks his interest these days. Much of his program-writing could easily fall into this category. The programmer likes to describe himself as a software novelist, saying he borrows heavily from fiction-writing techniques in creating his software.

Snyder's vision of the future goes beyond the format of the novel to include short stories and stage plays on the computer. He feels that much of the important literature of the future will be accessible through computers and that ultimately software novelists will achieve the same prestige and public acclaim as mainstream authors.

When he thinks about the future, Snyder isn't the least bit worried that he will become a servant to the computer or cease to function as a teacher, just because the computer is used in the classroom. "I like to think of myself as an advocate for children and technology," he asserts. "Not the advocate of technology for children, but of the kids in relation to technology."

The shape of the future can be altered by the dreams of today. Powerful dreams yield powerful changes. Tom Snyder shares those dreams with the leaders of tomorrow, our children. ▲

tradetalk

Δ **IBM** (Boca Raton, FL) is offering Information Unlimited Software's *Easywriter* on the pc in Europe. The program has been specifically adapted to five European languages: British, French, German, Italian, and Spanish. Each version has undergone dual-level translations, first at **IUS** (Sausalito, CA), then through IBM translators in the targeted countries.

Δ **Microsoft** (Bellevue, WA) has appointed **Scott Oki** vice president of international operations. Oki will oversee the company's recently created subsidiaries in the United Kingdom and other European countries, as well as ASCII Microsoft in Japan—Japan's largest publisher of computer magazines. Formerly director of international operations, Oki also served with the Sequoia Group, a marketer of turnkey medical office computer systems.

QUALITY • CUSTOM DESIGNED

P.C. DUST COVERS
AND
TRAVEL BAGS

PRICED TO SELL
SATISFACTION GUARANTEED

DUST COVER
One cover designed to fit over the IBM monitor and P.C., a second cover to protect the keyboard. Attractive and made of heavy-gauge, anti-static vinyl with reinforced, stitched seams for durability.

PROTECT YOUR INVESTMENT

TRAVEL BAG
Attractive and durable with ease of use in mind. Made of the heaviest gauge Cordura for security. Holds P.C. with separate compartment for keyboard and another for accessories.

PRICES
Dust Cover $14.95
Travel Bag 34.95
Order Both For Only $44.90
SAVE $5.00!

Freight included for orders within the Continental U.S. Money order, check or C.O.D. Washington residents add 7.8% sales tax. Send order to:

PERSONAL COMPUTER ACCESSORIES
16625 Redmond Way, Suite 107
Redmond, Washington 98052
(206) 882-0385

If not completely satisfied, return product(s) within 30 days for 100% refund.

Δ A thirty-thousand-square-foot R&D lab and production line facility is the new home of **Microscience International** (Mountain View, CA). Address: 575 East Middlefield Road, Mountain View, CA 94043; (415) 961-2212. The company was formerly located in Palo Alto. Δ **Marsha F. Adams** has joined Microscience as director of marketing. Adams brings fifteen years of experience, having served as marketing consultant to a number of Bay Area companies, including Adda, Orrox, Transamerica, Via Video, Lucasfilm, and Syntex. At Strategic Inc. in San Jose, Adams coordinated technology impact analysis. She has also published articles and lectured on the subject.

Δ A $10-million line of credit has been extended to **Atasi** (San Jose, CA) by the Bank of the West. A spokesman for the bank said the firm "represents a well-positioned company in a growth sector of the computer industry. We were impressed by the strength and expertise of Atasi's management team as well as its achievements in product quality and performance." The funds will be used to meet the company's rapidly growing shipping rate of hard disk drives. Δ **Dr. Richard Oswald,** established industry consultant with more than twenty years' design experience, has been named vice president of technology at Atasi. "The addition of such a highly qualified individual is particularly exciting for a high-growth company like ours," says company president Frank Gibeau. Oswald spent eleven years at the IBM San Jose Development Laboratory involved with the IBM 3340, 3344, 3350, and 3370 disk files. He has also done consulting work in disk-file control systems and custom analog integrated circuits.

Δ **Alfred J. DiBlasi** has recently resigned as vice president of the programming division at **Berliner Computer Center** (New Hyde Park, NY) to do some consulting work, then settle down to his own retail computer center. A key person in the company's creation, DiBlasi, twenty-one, feels the computer field is still in its infancy, with plenty of room for new endeavors.

Δ **Robert B. McCullough** has left **Datamac** (Sunnyvale, CA) to pursue other interests. McCullough will continue to serve as chairman of the board and a board member, but will not be involved in day-to-day operations. The company wishes him the best.

Δ **State of the Art** (Costa Mesa, CA) has appointed **Dale Caravona** national sales manager. Caravona was formerly with Siemens, a manufacturer of electronic equipment, where he served as regional marketing and sales manager for two years. Prior to that, he served seven years with Abbott Laboratories. Δ **Jim Hennings** has been appointed director, professional markets, for State of the Art. Hennings will establish educational programs for sales representatives, retailers, and users. Prior to joining the company, Hennings was with Market Share, a sales-representative firm.

Δ A major media effort will be launched in the second half of this year by **Epyx/Automated Simulations** (Sunnyvale, CA), which has appointed **Chiat/Day** (New York, NY) as its new advertising agency. Spending during the next twelve months is expected to exceed one million dollars. Jay Chiat, president of the agency, says, "We are very pleased to have won as a new account such a well managed and dynamic company." The account will be handled from the San Francisco office. A combination of technical and consumer expertise will be applied to the Epyx campaign, accented with an entertainment viewpoint, according to the agency. Δ **Michael C. Katz**, former vice president of marketing and corporate communications at Coleco Industries, has been named president and chief officer at Epyx. Katz will oversee creation, marketing, and distribution of the company's games. He has held a variety of executive posts in consumer products marketing for the past fifteen years, including the last seven in the toy and electronic games industry at Mattel as well as Coleco.

Δ **Corona Data Systems** (Westlake Village, CA) has received $5.5 million in first-round venture capital from a venture capital group. The money will be used to retire current outstanding debt. Δ Also, the company has announced the election of two new members to its board of directors: **Leonard P. Lundin,** senior vice president of operations at Tandon; and **William P. Egan,** a partner in the firm Burr, Egan, Deleage, & Co. Lundin will contribute experience in low-cost-large-volume

production, and Egan will be of assistance in the financial area.

Δ **Compaq Computer** (Houston, TX) has elected **Benjamin M. Rosen,** a general partner of Sevin Rosen Partners, a venture capital firm, to chairman of the board. Rosen, a well-known electronics industry analyst and former publisher and author of the highly regarded *Rosen Electronics Letter*, has been a board member since the company's incorporation. Rod Canion, a cofounder of the company, serves as president and chief executive officer. Δ Joining Compaq as vice president of sales and service is **H. L. "Sparky" Sparks**, formerly director of retail sales for the pc at IBM. Sparks is a twenty-year veteran of IBM, and established and managed

sand; *Digital Retailing* reaches twenty-three thousand retailers, wholesalers, and suppliers.

Δ Expanding right along, **Source Telecomputing** (McLean, VA) has created a major new department to guide the development of the information and services it provides—specifically packaging and programming information. The new product development department will initially be staffed by seven people drawn from other departments, headed by **Barbara Newland**, former director of marketing. Prior to joining Source, Newland was a regional systems analyst and account executive for Xerox and a Peace Corps volunteer who taught English in Western Samoa. The others on her staff are: **Jeana Hood**, manager of product acquisition; **Pat Lobenstein, Julie Pek,** and **Beth Silverman**, new product managers; **Robin Cobbey**, manager of product research; and **Taylor Walsh**, manager of product standards. In a related assignment, **Jane Brown**, former manager of database acquisitions, has been named manager of business analysis.

Δ **Ziff-Davis Publishing** (New York, NY) is launching a new magazine this month, geared to the professional and advanced pc user. Under the helm of **Will Fastie,** formerly with *Creative Computing* and *PC*, *PC Tech Journal* will be a bimonthly publication dealing with operating systems, hardware components, software development tools, communications, networks, and so on. According to Fastie, the magazine will "appeal to professionals interested in the design and implementation of systems and others with a higher degree of technical experience."

Δ **MicroRIM** (Bellevue, WA) recently expanded into a new location. New corporate address: 1750 112th Avenue N.E., Bellevue, WA 98004.

Δ **Borman/Williams** (New York, NY) has been selected to handle product publicity and corporate public relations for **Software Arts** (Wellesley, MA). Miller Communications formerly handled the company's account, but a mutually agreed-upon parting was made when Miller acquired the Lotus Development account. Software Arts's *VisiCalc* and Lotus's *1-2-3* are vying head on for the lion's share of the spreadsheet market. Borman/Williams also handles Bose, an international audio products manufacturer, and Dusseldorf Trade Shows. ▲

SATORI SOFTWARE presents

SPECIALIZED DATA-BASE PROGRAMS

BULK MAILER

A profesional mailing list program that includes a sophisticated duplication search and an incredible 32,000 name capacity with hard disk (2400 names with a dual drive, 1200 names with a single drive). Very straight forward and easy-to-use.

- **Duplication Elimination**
- **Broad Coding Capability**
- **Can upgrade to hard disk**
- **Zip and Alpha sorts**
- **1-UP,2-UP,3-UP & 4-UP labels**
- **Default Options**
- **Remarks line**
- **Plus other marketing features**

Apple II/IBM PC diskette version - 2400 names (dual drive) or 1200 names (single drive)**$125.**

Apple II/IBM PC hard disk version - up to 32,000 names **$ 350.**

INVENTORY MANAGER

Perfect for retailers, distributers or any business involved with sales. Can track 2700 items (1200 items on a single drive system), and provides numerous information reports.

- **Stores up to 2700 items**
- **Up to 99 vendors**
- **Prints purchase orders**
- **Easy stock up-dates**
- **Lists stock sold & gross profits**
- **Prints suggested orders**
- **Sorts by vendor, department, profit**
- **Many more features**

"Inventory Manager is among the most complete programs of its type on the market today" SOFTALK, Dec. 1982

Apple II version - 2700 items (dual drive) or 1200 items (single drive) **$150.**
IBM PC version - 2700 items **$150.**

LEGAL BILLING

Very friendly and complete legal billing system. Allows a great deal of user control.

- **Prints customized statements**
- **Prints aging reports**
- **Up to 200 clients**
- **Up to 4000 transactions**
- **Includes Trust Accounts**
- **User designated codes**
- **Automatic interest added**

Apple II or IBM PC version - $350.

Available at your dealer or order directly from:

SATORI SOFTWARE

5507 Woodlawn N.
Seattle, WA 98103
(206) 633-1469

tradetalk

Δ **IBM** (Boca Raton, FL) is offering Information Unlimited Software's *Easywriter* on the pc in Europe. The program has been specifically adapted to five European languages: British, French, German, Italian, and Spanish. Each version has undergone dual-level translations, first at **IUS** (Sausalito, CA), then through IBM translators in the targeted countries.

Δ **Microsoft** (Bellevue, WA) has appointed **Scott Oki** vice president of international operations. Oki will oversee the company's recently created subsidiaries in the United Kingdom and other European countries, as well as ASCII Microsoft in Japan—Japan's largest publisher of computer magazines. Formerly director of international operations, Oki also served with the Sequoia Group, a marketer of turnkey medical office computer systems.

QUALITY • CUSTOM DESIGNED

P.C. DUST COVERS
AND
TRAVEL BAGS

PRICED TO SELL
SATISFACTION GUARANTEED

DUST COVER
One cover designed to fit over the IBM monitor and P.C., a second cover to protect the keyboard. Attractive and made of heavy-gauge, anti-static vinyl with reinforced, stitched seams for durability.

PROTECT YOUR INVESTMENT

TRAVEL BAG
Attractive and durable with ease of use in mind. Made of the heaviest gauge Cordura for security. Holds P.C. with separate compartment for keyboard and another for accessories.

PRICES
Dust Cover $14.95
Travel Bag 34.95
Order Both For Only $44.90
SAVE $5.00!

Freight included for orders within the Continental U.S. Money order, check or C.O.D. Washington residents add 7.8% sales tax. Send order to:

PERSONAL COMPUTER ACCESSORIES
16625 Redmond Way, Suite 107
Redmond, Washington 98052
(206) 882-0385

If not completely satisfied, return product(s) within 30 days for 100% refund.

Δ A thirty-thousand-square-foot R&D lab and production line facility is the new home of **Microscience International** (Mountain View, CA). Address: 575 East Middlefield Road, Mountain View, CA 94043; (415 961-2212. The company was formerly lo cated in Palo Alto. Δ **Marsha F. Adams** ha joined Microscience as director of market ing. Adams brings fifteen years of experi ence, having served as marketing consult ant to a number of Bay Area companies, in cluding Adda, Orrox, Transamerica, Vi Video, Lucasfilm, and Syntex. At Strategi Inc. in San Jose, Adams coordinated tech nology impact analysis. She has also pub lished articles and lectured on the subject.

Δ A $10-million line of credit has been ex tended to **Atasi** (San Jose, CA) by the Ban of the West. A spokesman for the bank sai the firm "represents a well-positioned com pany in a growth sector of the computer in dustry. We were impressed by the strengt and expertise of Atasi's management team a well as its achievements in product qualit and performance." The funds will be used t meet the company's rapidly growing ship ping rate of hard disk drives. Δ **Dr. Richar Oswald,** established industry consultar with more than twenty years' design exper ence, has been named vice president of tech nology at Atasi. "The addition of such highly qualified individual is particularly ex citing for a high-growth company like ours," says company president Frank Gibeau. Oswald spent eleven years at the IBM San Jose Development Laboratory involved with the IBM 3340, 3344, 3350, and 3370 disk files. He has also done consulting work in disk-file control systems and custom analog integrated circuits.

Δ **Alfred J. DiBlasi** has recently resigned as vice president of the programming division at **Berliner Computer Center** (New Hyde Park, NY) to do some consulting work, then settle down to his own retail computer center. A key person in the company's creation, DiBlasi, twenty-one, feels the computer field is still in its infancy, with plenty of room for new endeavors.

Δ **Robert B. McCullough** has left **Datamac** (Sunnyvale, CA) to pursue other interests. McCullough will continue to serve as chairman of the board and a board member, but will not be involved in day-to-day operations. The company wishes him the best.

Δ **State of the Art** (Costa Mesa, CA) has appointed **Dale Caravona** national sales man-

marketing and corporate communications at Coleco Industries, has been named president and chief officer at Epyx. Katz will oversee creation, marketing, and distribution of the company's games. He has held a variety of executive posts in consumer products marketing for the past fifteen years, including the last seven in the toy and electronic games industry at Mattel as well as Coleco.

Δ **Corona Data Systems** (Westlake Village, CA) has received $5.5 million in first-round venture capital from a venture capital group. The money will be used to retire current outstanding debt. Δ Also, the company has announced the election of two new members to its board of directors: **Leonard P. Lundin,** senior vice president of operations at Tandon; and **William P. Egan,** a partner in the firm Burr, Egan, Deleage, & Co. Lundin will contribute experience in low-cost-large-volume

production, and Egan will be of assistance in the financial area.

Δ **Compaq Computer** (Houston, TX) has elected **Benjamin M. Rosen,** a general partner of Sevin Rosen Partners, a venture capital firm, to chairman of the board. Rosen, a well-known electronics industry analyst and former publisher and author of the highly regarded *Rosen Electronics Letter*, has been a board member since the company's incorporation. Rod Canion, a cofounder of the company, serves as president and chief executive officer. Δ Joining Compaq as vice president of sales and service is **H. L. "Sparky" Sparks**, formerly director of retail sales for the pc at IBM. Sparks is a twenty-year veteran of IBM, and established and managed the pc's distribution channels and dealer network.

Δ Anticipating product demand, **Software Libraries** (Pasadena, CA) has moved into a new twelve-thousand-square-foot headquarters facility. The space will be shared with Exclamations, an affiliated greeting card publishing firm.

Δ **Lotus Development** (Cambridge, MA) has announced that **G. Mead Wyman** has joined the firm as vice president of finance and administration. Wyman was formerly with Prime Computer and brings extensive experience in the financial management of rapidly growing entrepreneurial companies to his position.

Δ **Newsweek** (New York, NY) and **Digital Retailing** magazine (New York, NY) have teamed up for a first: a *Personal Computer Guide* advertising supplement to appear in the October 31 issue of *Newsweek Executive Plus*, the company's special business edition, as well as the November issue of *Digital Retailing*, a trade magazine. The sixteen-page supplement will be an all-inclusive guide to selecting personal computers, complete with charts and comparisons. *Newsweek* has a circulation of nine hundred thousand; *Digital Retailing* reaches twenty-three thousand retailers, wholesalers, and suppliers.

Δ Expanding right along, **Source Telecomputing** (McLean, VA) has created a major new department to guide the development of the information and services it provides—specifically packaging and programming information. The new product development department will initially be staffed by seven people drawn from other departments, headed by **Barbara Newland**, former director of marketing. Prior to joining Source, Newland was a regional systems analyst and account executive for Xerox and a Peace Corps volunteer who taught English in Western Samoa. The others on her staff are: **Jeana Hood**, manager of product acquisition; **Pat Lobenstein, Julie Pek,** and **Beth Silverman**, new product managers; **Robin Cobbey**, manager of product research; and **Taylor Walsh**, manager of product standards. In a related assignment, **Jane Brown**, former manager of database acquisitions, has been named manager of business analysis.

Δ **Ziff-Davis Publishing** (New York, NY) is launching a new magazine this month, geared to the professional and advanced pc user. Under the helm of **Will Fastie,** formerly with *Creative Computing* and *PC*, *PC Tech Journal* will be a bimonthly publication dealing with operating systems, hardware components, software development tools, communications, networks, and so on. According to Fastie, the magazine will "appeal to professionals interested in the design and implementation of systems and others with a higher degree of technical experience."

Δ **MicroRIM** (Bellevue, WA) recently expanded into a new location. New corporate address: 1750 112th Avenue N.E., Bellevue, WA 98004.

Δ **Borman/Williams** (New York, NY) has been selected to handle product publicity and corporate public relations for **Software Arts** (Wellesley, MA). Miller Communications formerly handled the company's account, but a mutually agreed-upon parting was made when Miller acquired the Lotus Development account. Software Arts's *VisiCalc* and Lotus's *1-2-3* are vying head on for the lion's share of the spreadsheet market. Borman/Williams also handles Bose, an international audio products manufacturer, and Dusseldorf Trade Shows. ▲

SATORI SOFTWARE presents

SPECIALIZED DATA-BASE PROGRAMS

BULK MAILER

A profesional mailing list program that includes a sophisticated duplication search and an incredible 32,000 name capacity with hard disk (2400 names with a dual drive, 1200 names with a single drive). Very straight forward and easy-to-use.

- **Duplication Elimination**
- **Broad Coding Capability**
- **Can upgrade to hard disk**
- **Zip and Alpha sorts**
- **1-UP,2-UP,3-UP & 4-UP labels**
- **Default Options**
- **Remarks line**
- **Plus other marketing features**

Apple II/IBM PC diskette version - 2400 names (dual drive) or 1200 names (single drive)**$125.**

Apple II/IBM PC hard disk version - up to 32,000 names **$ 350.**

INVENTORY MANAGER

Perfect for retailers, distributers or any business involved with sales. Can track 2700 items (1200 items on a single drive system), and provides numerous information reports.

- **Stores up to 2700 items**
- **Up to 99 vendors**
- **Prints purchase orders**
- **Easy stock up-dates**
- **Lists stock sold & gross profits**
- **Prints suggested orders**
- **Sorts by vendor, department, profit**
- **Many more features**

"Inventory Manager is among the most complete programs of its type on the market today" SOFTALK, Dec. 1982

Apple II version - 2700 items (dual drive) or 1200 items (single drive) **$150.**
IBM PC version - 2700 items **$150.**

LEGAL BILLING

Very friendly and complete legal billing system. Allows a great deal of user control.

- **Prints customized statements**
- **Prints aging reports**
- **Up to 200 clients**
- **Up to 4000 transactions**
- **Includes Trust Accounts**
- **User designated codes**
- **Automatic interest added**

Apple II or IBM PC version - $350.

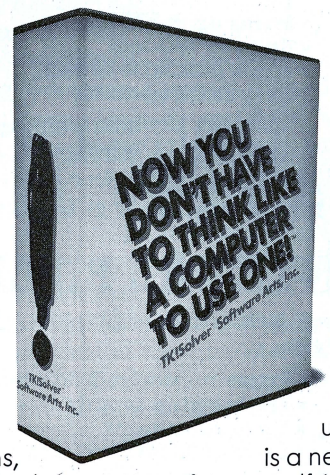
Available at your dealer or order directly from:

SATORI SOFTWARE

5507 Woodlawn N.
Seattle, WA 98103
(206) 633-1469

CRUNCH!

The inventor of VisiCalc,® the world's leading software product, introduces TK!Solver™—the revolutionary way to crunch problems on a personal computer.



With VisiCalc, Software Arts™ created an entirely new application for personal computers—the electronic spreadsheet.

Now Software Arts has developed TK!Solver, another entirely new and different application for personal computers—the problem solver. Business and financial problems. Scientific and engineering problems. Architectural and building design problems. Any kind of problem you can dream up, in any area.

What's so revolutionary about that? Simply this: the power of the TK!Solver program comes from the ease with which you can set up problems, vary assumptions, find solutions, and display results. All the facilities needed to solve the problems—simple or complex—are built-in, and need not be developed. Once you have stated your problem, simply enter the known values, then solve the problem with a single keystroke.

For even easier problem solving use a TK!SolverPack™ in which models for solving common problems in such areas as finance, engineering and education have already been formulated by professionals in these fields.

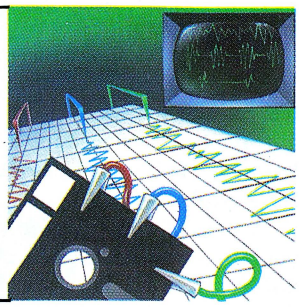
There is no software product in existence that solves problems as quickly, flexibly, and easily as TK!Solver—The Problem Cruncher™. In fact, no other software product even works the way TK!Solver does. It is a necessity for personal computer owners. See for yourself. Visit your nearest computer store for a demonstration and find out how much you can do with a personal computer when it thinks as flexibly as you do.

Software Arts™

27 Mica Lane, Wellesley, MA 02181

TK!Solver, TK!SolverPack and TK!Solver—The Problem Cruncher are trademarks of Software Arts, Inc. Software Arts is a trademark of Software Arts, Inc. and Software Arts Products Corp. VisiCalc is a trademark of VisiCorp. Copyright © 1983. Software Arts, Inc. All rights reserved.

marketalk reviews



Unless otherwise indicated, software listed runs in DOS 1.1 or 2.0 with either display adapter and requires 64K and at least one disk drive.

Graph'n' Calc. By Don Williams/Marton. As its name implies, *Graph'n' Calc* is a graph and spreadsheet program. As its name also implies, graph is primary and spreadsheet is strictly secondary.

What its name doesn't hint at is the power in this business-forecasting tool. Author Don Williams has a modicum of expertise in the field. He spent several years with IBM and is the author of *Desktop Plan*. What he's done in *Graph'n' Calc* is take business forecasting into the visual medium. In so doing, he's overlaid the basic graphing and spreadsheet functions with sophisticated statistical modules that would take man-days for a user to build into *VisiCalc* or *1-2-3*.

In an era when more is better, Williams has taken the opposite approach. His spreadsheet is strictly limited to ten rows and one hundred columns. If that seems unnecessarily constraining at first glance, it actually works out to be more than enough space for serious forecasting purposes. *Graph'n' Calc* isn't intended to compete with the big guys in financial modeling. You can't enter your entire general ledger for the past umpty-ump years into the model and play "what if."

What you can do is take the key numbers out of that general ledger and actually watch while *Graph'n' Calc* first analyzes the trend of the numbers, then measures the correlation of the real numbers against adjusted numbers, extrapolates your numbers for future reporting periods, and, if necessary, adjusts those numbers for seasonal variations.

As an experiment, a set of real monthly sales numbers, omitting those for the most recent twelve months, was entered into *Graph'n' Calc*. The program was then asked to perform all its wonders and extrapolate the given data into the next twelve months. The results were eerily accurate, as if the software or the microprocessor were sneaking looks at the withheld data.

Graph'n' Calc determines these extensions of data with a series of sophisticated invokable statistical functions. Given a historical base, the program can find trends, apply them to the future, adjust the numbers for seasonal variations, and test the accuracy of the projections with exponential smoothing techniques.

That would be dandy enough in a spreadsheet program, but this one goes further by drawing it all out graphically. You can get line charts, bar graphs, stacked bar graphs, pie charts, and practically everything else except a Yogi Bear animated cartoon. The graphic features are smooth and easy to use and work readily with the IBM—read that Epson—printer or any compatible printer. The test data graphed just fine on a Star Micronics Gemini-10.

Printing the graphs gives a permanent hard-copy record of the progression of the model—showing which alternatives promise the most or what's in store for the next six months for various product lines.

Graph'n' Calc gives you even more. You can save each graph to disk—nineteen to a double-sided disk. Then you can set up a slide show, with the graphs flashing on-screen either at your command or at preset intervals during a presentation. This ability to prepare the data easily for visual presentation should make *Graph'n' Calc* a favorite among managers needing to sway their vice presidents and directors.

Desk Top Computer Software has gone the full route to give pc owners a usable product. They've even included *Fundamentals of Forecasting*, a book published by Reston Publishing Company, to give the beginner a sound foundation. Another nifty touch is the use of two monitors, if you're so equipped. The program requires a graphics adapter to display the graphs. If you also have a monochrome monitor installed, it'll leave the last graph on the graphics screen and put the text on the monochrome.

Graph'n' Calc is a dandy product that would be even dandier if it weren't so slow. It's written in Basic. There is a compiled version for an additional $100 that is faster, but much of the lost time is in disk access—an area not materially enhanced by compiling, although a hard disk would significantly speed up access time. On the other hand, the pc is a slow machine. If speed was the criterion for buying a system, you should have bought a Fortune or a Corvus.

By itself, *Graph'n' Calc* goes a long way toward reversing the trend of using the pc as merely an extension of the printed medium. It's a useful and friendly adjunct to any business or department and should find its niche. If it doesn't, author Williams will have to figure he's snakebit. First *VisiCalc* eclipsed *Desktop Plan*, now perhaps *1-2-3* will eclipse *Graph'n' Calc*. Both his products deserve better. art

Graph'n' Calc, by Don Williams/Marton, Desk Top Computer Software (Suite 29–303, 303 Potrero Street, Santa Cruz, CA 95060; 408-458-9095). Requires a graphics adapter. $199.

FriendlyWare P.C. Arcade. By Michael D. Yaw, James J. Davis, Alan Vanchura, Jr., R. B. Roberts, and Anthony Chumak. If you've ever wondered what the excitement's all about down at the pizza parlor where the kids hang out, here's your chance to get your feet wet without losing a week's pay in quarters and being humbled by eight-year-olds. This package of ten games, with good documentation as well as on-screen instructions, uses text-mode graphics. Not only will your monochrome monitor suffice, you can use your keyboard for controls, if for you playing with a joystick is about as likely as doing the hula at your neighbor's luau.

ASCII Man, sporting the traditional yellow garb (if you have a color monitor) and grin, has fairly offhand instructions that seem to assume you know the rules for the famous dot-eater game. If you don't, ask anyone about four feet tall.

Eagle Lander requires the dexterity of an octopus, the coordination of a Harlem Globetrotter, and the cool of an ice cream cone. If you resemble such a configuration, you just might land the space ship without smashing it to smithereens. Novice game players will find it easier to land a job.

Bug Blaster gives new meaning to the word sting; two bugs and a worm(!) will get you if you don't keep movin', shootin', and wipin' out the toadstools where the creepy-crawlies hide.

Gorilla Gorilla resurrects the famous twosome of King Kong and Fay Wray. The big ape bombs you with coconuts as you ladder-and-leap your way to the rescue, hopping bamboo elevators, and swinging your trusty coco-masher.

Star Fighter TX-16 is not for the person whose best reflex is triggered by a rubber hammer to the knee: The galaxy pirates will turn you to cosmic dust before you launch your first missile. This is a test for the ace space pilot.

Shooter is designed for the fortunate few whose stress level is too low. They're invited to shoot down fighter planes and dodge bombs for a while.

You say you stopped donating quarters to *Pong* machines when you discovered your houseplant has faster response time than you do? *Brick Breaker* lets you practice returning the old ball until you destroy a brick wall.

Hopper gives you five rabbits to get safely to five hutches on the other side of a road and a river with obstacles designed to turn bunnies into pancakes. A good game for beginners and philodendrons.

Robot War pits your robot against theirs in a maze-and-rays encounter. Your increasing skill is rewarded with mazier mazes where robots breed like steel rabbits.

PC Derby is the game for the person whose reaction time is bested by the backyard fence. This is strictly spectator stuff, with seven horses heading for the finish line. Add your own excitement with a little wager on the side. Better than watching goldfish.

The copy-protected disk (guaranteed free lifetime replacement) boots automatically; no need to use DOS or transfer system commands. A "boss-is-coming" function key that turns playtime into a bar graph, and twenty-four-hour phone support, suggest that FriendlySoft appreciates keeping a busy executive's aggravation to a minimum. JI

FriendlyWare P.C. Arcade, by Michael D. Yaw, James J. Davis, Alan Vanchura, Jr., R. B. Roberts, and Anthony Chumak, FriendlySoft (3609 Smith-Barry Road, Arlington, TX 76013; 817-277-9378). $49.95.

The Word Plus, Easyproof, and **Random House Proofreader.** Help is at hand for the multitudes once humiliated by eighth-grade spelling bees. Even those who stayed the rounds only to be defeated by *aardvark* will welcome the proliferating electronic spelling checkers. With varying success, they ensure two *ms* in *accommodate* and flag glaring typos (type *how* instead of *who* and the electronic dictionary can't help; it recognizes nonwords but not nonsense).

These three programs are compatible with a variety of word processors; all are preconfigured for *WordStar* and will fit on a double-sided disk with it. All were tested on a 64K system with two drives.

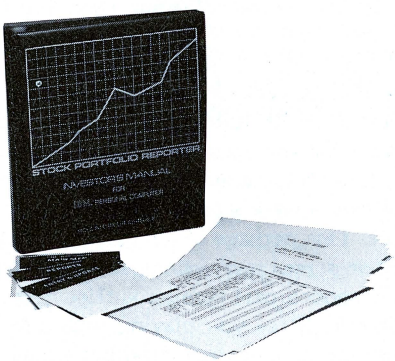
Using these programs is a simple matter of exiting from your word processor to DOS and issuing a two- or three-key command that initiates comparison of your document file to the program's dictionary, compilation of an unmatched-word list, and a correction procedure. Documentation ranges from excellent (*The Word Plus* includes a quick-reference guide) to adequate.

For comparison, each of the three programs was tested against the same nontechnical document file of approximately three thousand words, about fourteen double-spaced pages, containing four intentional typos: *progam, riters, produceds, WorldWar.*

All of the programs flagged several proper nouns that one wouldn't expect to find in dictionaries, although two of them recognized *Hoffman*. Some fairly common words went unrecognized by one program or another. None of these dictionaries included *cloned*, two didn't have *derivative, subsists,* or *archival*. And one or another didn't know *roams, safeguarded, misunderstanding,* or *transitory*. Fortunately, all three programs permit the addition of words to their dictionaries, so future usage won't be questioned. Each also permits you to create auxiliary dictionaries, an option especially

STOCK PORTFOLIO REPORTER®

A POWERFUL TOOL FOR THE IBM PC INVESTOR . . .



Now you can get concise reports with:

- STOCK PRICES (Automatically with Dow Jones News/Retrieval. Easy interface with the Hayes Smart Modem.)
- DIVIDEND YIELDS
- TOTAL COST AND MARKET AMOUNTS
- GAINS AND LOSSES (per share and total)
- PRICE/EARNINGS MULTIPLES
- PERCENTAGE GAINS AND LOSSES
- RELATIVE STRENGTH INDEXES that relate the price action of each stock to that of a market index of your choice.
- PORTIFOLO SUMMARY STATISTICS on all of the above

WITH THESE FEATURES:

- STOCKSORT™ lets you sort any column of information (yields, P/E'S, gains/losses, etc. from high to low)
- Classify your stocks into groups that best fit your needs-STOCK PORTIFOLO REPORTER also sorts by group and figures average for each group.
- Choice of screen display or presentation quality printed reports.
- Easy to use-Each display is titled for quick reference in the Investor's Manual.

Only $179 at your IBM PC dealer, or write or call us directly:

MICRO INVESTMENT SYSTEMS, INC.
P.O. Box 8599
Atlanta, Ga. 30306
(404) 892-3194

DEALER INQUIRIES INVITED

Requires: PC-DOS, 128K of memory, Communications Adapter card, 80 column display, printer, modem and subscription to Dow Jones.

IBM is a registered trademark of IBM Corp.
Dow Jones News/Retrieval is a registered trademark of Dow Jones & Co. Inc.
Hayes Smartmodem, while not a trademark is a product of Hayes Microcomputer Products, Inc.

VISA

MICRO INVESTMENT SYSTEMS, INC.
Quality Investment Software at an Affordable Price

MasterCard

TAKE THE NEXT STEP

The IBM* P.C. was your first step.

Breakthroughs follow each other. The IBM P.C. and now the NEXT STEP from Execuware. IBM gave you the Personal Computer to meet your business needs. NEXT STEP gives you the power to make it happen. NEXT STEP allows you to solve your problems without the limitations of pre-packaged software. Create your **own** solutions. State the problem—Execuware's NEXT STEP will solve it!

NEXT STEP stores and retrieves information in the format **you** devise, then electronically programs itself! Once programs and reports are developed by NEXT STEP, its editing capabilities and help screens assure that others use them consistently. . . productively.

Automate to fit **your** needs. Use NEXT STEP to improve your business. Improve cash flow. Strengthen sales efforts. Improve production efficiency. Give management the information it needs to run your business more profitably. . . **Your** way.

Now. . . it's time to take the NEXT STEP

Until now, no software product for the IBM P.C. could tackle the multitude of business problems that affect your bottom line.

. . .Take the NEXT STEP.

EXECUWARE®

MICROCOMPUTER SOFTWARE FOR EXECUTIVES FROM AERONCA, INC.

7415 Pineville Matthews Road, Intercontinental Plaza, Suite 300, Box 10, Charlotte, North Carolina 28211 (704) 541-1199

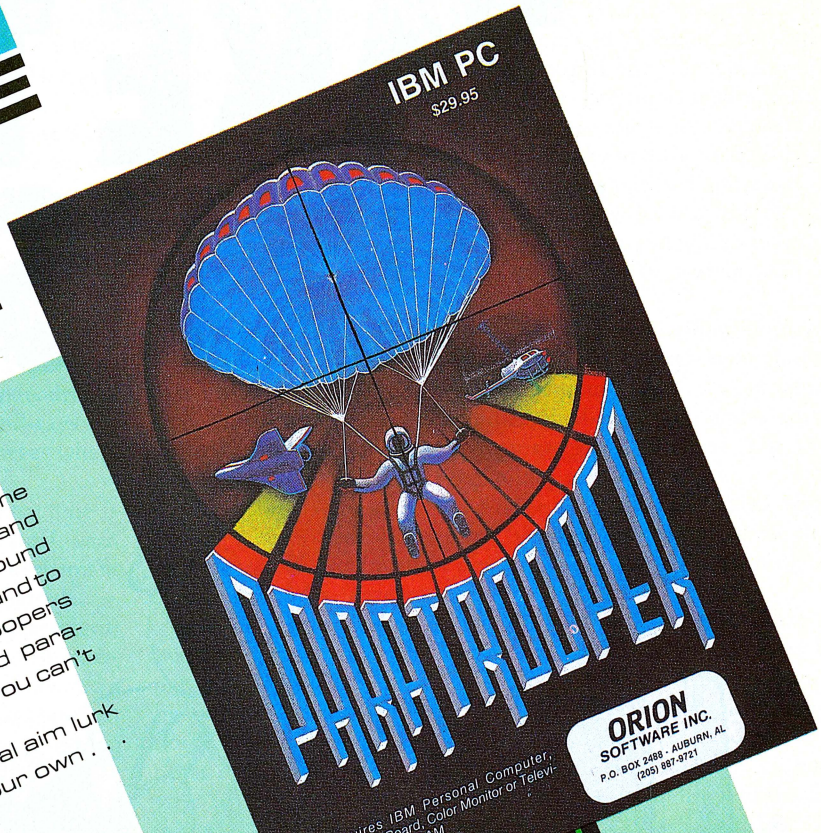
*IBM P.C. is the trademark of International Business Machines.

ORION SOFTWARE

Arcade Quality, Homecourt Advantage—

PARATROOPER—

. . . You're the only defender left alive . . . the enemy has closed in, tested your defenses, and is sending in paratroopers to launch a ground assault. . . Your one remaining rapid-fire land to air cannon must prevent the paratroopers from landing! Four successfully landed paratroopers will stage a ground attack—you can't stop a ground attack! . . . Beware . . . enemy jets with lethal aim lurk behind the horizon . . . You're on your own . . . Good luck . . .*



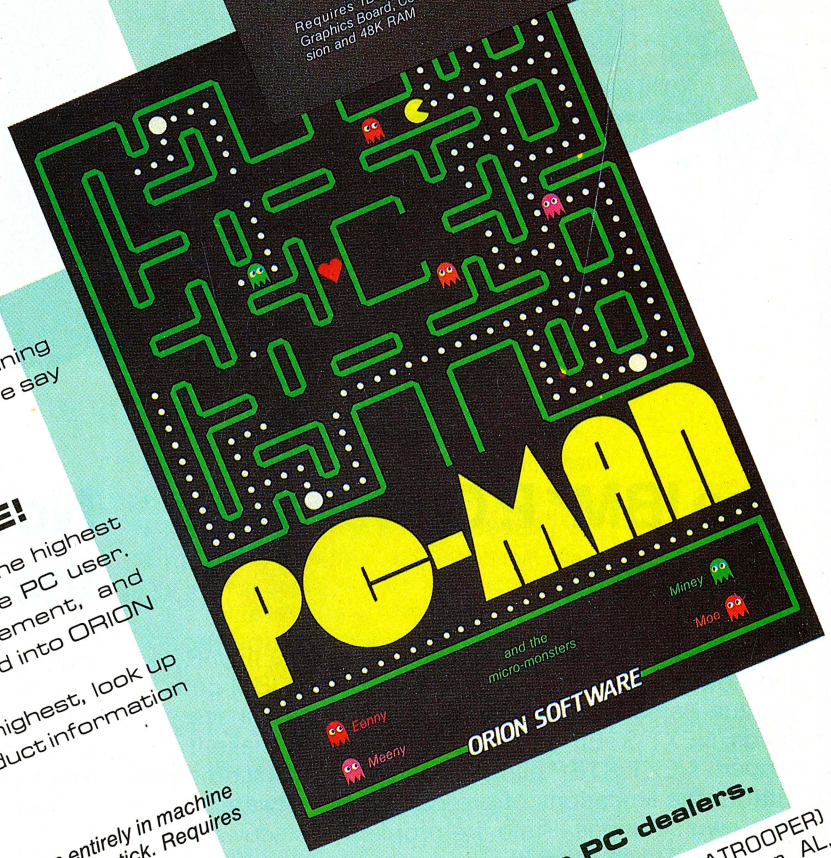
PC-MAN AND THE MICRO MONSTERS—

Beautiful colors! Arcade quality graphics! Stunning resolution! Exciting music and sound! Need we say more?*

AND THERE IS MORE!

ORION SOFTWARE is producing only the highest quality games and accessories for the PC user. Excellent resolution, gripping excitement, and sparkling graphics are always included into ORION games.

When your expectations are the highest, look up to ORION. Call or write for our product information guide at the address below.



*Both PC-MAN and PARATROOPER are written entirely in machine language and can be played with a keyboard or joystick. Requires color graphics adaptor, 48 K RAM.

Available at ComputerLand® and other fine PC dealers.

To order direct send $34.95 (PC-MAN) or $29.95 (PARATROOPER) to: ORION SOFTWARE, P.O. Box 2488, Dept. 283, Auburn, AL, 36830. (205) 887-9721.

MasterCard VISA

useful for technical documents.

The Word Plus took sixty-five seconds to compare the test file to its forty-five-thousand-word dictionary, and another twenty-five seconds to compile an alphabetical list of thirty-eight unmatched words. Its on-screen menu permits viewing each word in context; you can then correct it, add it to the dictionary, mark it in the file, or discard (ignore) it. An automatic correction procedure took thirty-five seconds to correct the four implanted typos and mark three of them (an optional procedure). The marking symbol lets you use your word processor's search mode to locate corrected words that, because of changed length, necessitate line rejustification or paragraph reforming.

The Word Plus displays its word list in caps, and its correction procedure does not recognize capitalization. A correction of the typo *WorldWar* produced *World war* in the test document; the upper-case *W* was input but ignored, a failing that flaws an otherwise excellent program. Oasis reports that it has developed a different program for correcting style and punctuation, including capitalization.

Nevertheless, *The Word Plus* is rich with options, some useful, others merely curious. *Lookup* shows you similar words from which you may select the correct spelling. For the intentional typo *produceds*, *Lookup* displayed three similar words—*produced*, *producers*, and *produces*—in fourteen seconds. For *riters*, a typo created by a lost initial *w*, *Lookup* offered, in ten seconds, *riders*, *rioters*, *rites*, and *rivers*. Obviously, first letters must be correct or this option is useless. Interestingly, although *copyright* was recognized by the dictionary, the program flagged *copyrighted* and claimed it had no similar word.

If your printer doesn't do proportional spacing, use *Hyphen* to insert soft hyphens into a document to tighten justified lines, an option especially useful for narrow-column formats. *Find* helps solve or create crossword puzzles through global searches. Need a five-letter word starting with *T*? Just type *find T*****. This option lets you peek into the dictionary. Type **A*** and the dictionary's entire *A* listing scrolls. It reveals some interesting words, including *Apalachicola* and *Azerbaijan*—the former a river in northwestern Florida and the latter a constituent republic of the USSR. Oasis claims, "Our dictionary includes the words that people really use." Who do they know that you don't?

Playing around with *Find* reveals a number of proper names in the dictionary, among them: *Ragna, Maura, Samar, Maira, Laban.* The people at Oasis really do know people you don't.

WC is simply a word count. The test document totaled 3,146 words courtesy of this option. *Homonym Help* is for those folks who get sound-alike words confused. *HH* won't tell you which word you want if you don't know the difference between *capital* and *capitol*, but it reminds you of the alternative. This option goes to great lengths to be helpful. The list, to which you can add your own tripper-uppers, includes *celery/salary* for those who confuse their salads with their paychecks.

Dictsort alphabetizes any word list you want to give it, and *Wordfreq* reveals how often you're using words. The test document, for example, had *the* 173 times, *program* 63 times, *programs* 14 times, and *programmers* 3 times. You have to figure out for yourself what use you have for such information.

Easyproof counts words simultaneously while checking your document against the fifty-thousand-word dictionary but is otherwise strictly no-frills. Unlike *The Word Plus* and *Proofreader*, it does not correct errors; it only marks them. You have to go into the document through your word processing program and make the corrections yourself.

Easyproof tallied only twenty-four unmatched words in the fifty-four seconds it took to compare the test document against its

STOCK MARKET INVESTORS: Calling this toll-free number can be the best "investment" you'll ever make.

1-800-392-2669

Discover the Market Maverick—a revolutionary stock market program for the Apple II* and IBM-PC** computers—with a combination of money making/money saving features that you won't find in any other program at any price!

Ours is a decision-making tool. Ours is based on a model with 9 years of proven performance. Ours is used by professional investors. Ours has the longest published Wall Street track record of any model of its type. And ours is fully supported statistically!

With the Maverick, you not only pinpoint stocks with the greatest upside potential, but you can avoid those that are over-extended and get out before price reversals.

Record of success.
For 9 years ending 11/30/82, the top 10% of stocks which the model identified as most attractive rose 222.4% and the least attractive 10% fell 11.2%! Two years ago, 14 of the 20 most overvalued stocks were in the energy sector. By 7/30/82, they had declined 53%. Meanwhile, the 20 most undervalued stocks (J.C.Penney, Philip Morris, McDonald's, etc.) appreciated 4.3%.

In the recent bull market, from 7/82 to 11/82, the most attractive 10%, led by MCI, Tandem, NME, and Mitel, gained 45% while the DJIA rose only 29%.

The Maverick helps you to be early in recognizing either neglected or overstated stocks, thereby giving you the needed perspective to profitably go against the crowd.

Call us toll-free.
No operators, your call comes direct to FSI people who have the answers. Ask about system requirements. Ask about our *$25 Home Demo Package* (which we apply to the $175.00 purchase price when you buy). Ask about some of the successes that users tell us about. You'll never really know how incredible the Market Maverick is until you try it!

FINANCIAL SOFTWARE, INC.
11401 Westridge Circle, Chardon OH 44024
For our free no-obligation brochure or more information, call (from outside Ohio)
1-800-392-2669
In Ohio, call 216-338-6811

*Apple II is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. **IBM-PC is a trademark of IBM.

dictionary. Although it found several words the other programs didn't, and caught the intentional typos *progam* and *WorldWar* (which it displayed in upper and lower case), it missed *produceds* and *riters*. It failed on these two errors because *Easyproof* recognizes common prefixes and suffixes and happily appends them to any word you like. If you want to add an *r* to *rite* under the same principle that turns *ride* into *rider*, do it; this program won't object. Likewise, any word can have a plural form; *Easyproof* doesn't mind if you add an *s* to *produced*. Norell admits this limitation but offers no solution.

Easyproof does not provide an on-screen menu for your list of unmatched words, but you have only four choices: *i*(gnore), *m*(ark), *a*(dd), and *r*(oot). You would ignore a word, like a proper noun, that you wouldn't likely use often, or mark an error for later correction. You can add to the dictionary a correctly spelled word you expect to use frequently, or a root word like *store*, which would cause *Easyproof* to recognize such derivations as *restore*, *storing*, *stores*, and so forth.

Easyproof's options do not extend much beyond saving your list of misspelled words on disk, using one of the various "switches."

Like *Easyproof*, the **Random House Proofreader** automatically gives you a word count; it then sorts your document's words. The program took twenty-five seconds to count the test document's words and another twenty seconds to sort them. So far so good. The next two minutes and seven seconds were spent watching the letters of the alphabet disappear one at a time as the fifty-thousand-word dictionary read the word list against itself. (Smaller and larger lexicons are available, dependent on machine capacity.) After finally achieving Z, *Proofreader* announced it had failed to match forty words in the test document.

A command menu permits correction (automatically showing the word in context, a nice feature), review (for rechecking, with no context display), marking, or display of word list. *Review* is a handy and timesaving option. You can quickly dismiss from the list those words that you know to be correctly spelled and that you won't want to add to the dictionary.

The correction routine allows you to correct the word, ask for dictionary assistance, add the word to the dictionary, or accept the word without adding it to the main or auxiliary dictionaries. This last option is unusual; it permits you to acknowledge the word's correctness and thereby avoid reviewing its subsequent appearance in your document, but not add it to the dictionary. Also, the *Proofreader* dictionary will "learn" words during the correction procedure, a variation on the *accept* mode. After your document is corrected, "learned" words can be added to the dictionary or placed in a separate file.

Proofreader flagged the four implanted errors and took less than a minute to correct them. However, all four occurred in the first two pages of the fourteen-page document, and the program, which does not abandon a file after correcting marked words, required another minute to complete the file search.

Despite its relatively slow performance, this program does nicely everything you'd expect a dictionary to, including capitalization correction. Its menus are helpful and well designed. Not the least of its attractive features is its price.

Incidentally, only one of these programs recognized *aardvark*—the same folks, not surprisingly, who bring you *Apalachicola*. JI

The Word Plus, Oasis Systems (2765 Reynard Way, San Diego, CA 92103; 619-291-9489). $150.
Easyproof, Norell Data Systems Corporation (3400 Wilshire Boulevard, Box 70127, Los Angeles, CA 90010; 213-257-2026). $49.95.
Random House Proofreader, Aspen Software Company (Box 339, Tijeras, NM 87059; 505-281-1634). $50.

NEW...

Meaning & Understanding from Your Financial Statements

Get more than facts & figures, get insight and direction!

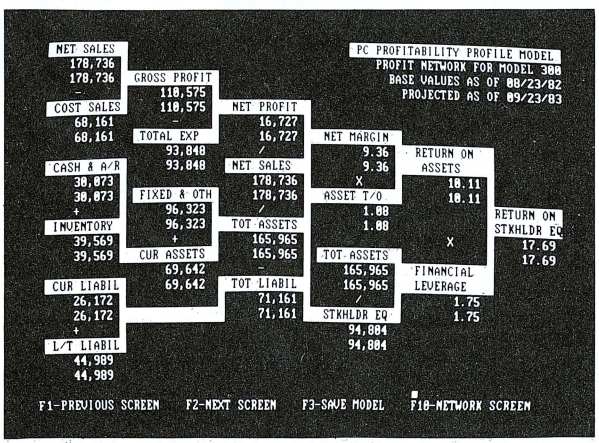
Profitability Profile Model

At last . . . A program that will enable financial managers in today's highly competitive business world to confidently respond to these questions . . .

- How does a 4% decrease in inventory effect our financial position?
- How will a change in interest rates effect our bottom line?
- What are the effects of a 3.5% change in sales?

The PC PROFITABILITY MODEL provides a means of analyzing the impact of financial decisions on 30 common business performance indicators.

Key financial position strategies may be simulated online and the effects are categorized, formulated, and displayed as business ratios and percentages.



CRS INC.
Computer Related Services, Inc.
Pembroke V—Dept PPM
Virginia Beach, Va 23462
804-499-8914

To Order Yours

call with your VISA or MC number or, send check to CRS, Inc.

Features:

Base and Projected Value Comparisons
Automatic Balancing of Input
Menu Driven & User Friendly
Four Liquidity Ratios
Ten Financial Coverage Ratios
Nine Profitability Percentages
Seven Activity Ratios
Profitability Network Display
'What if' Input as Dollars or Percentages

These profitability measurements become a meaningful aid when compared to industry average statistics or similar guidelines provided by banks and other financial institutions.

ONLY $195.00—BANK CARDS ACCEPTED

Virginia Residents add 4% sales tax

Minimum PC system: 64K, DOS 1.0, 1 diskette

The Full Power of the IBM/PC at Your Fingertips

THE IBM/PC GUIDE and Free Utilities Diskette Build Mastery With Every Chapter

From the very first chapter (and without assuming *any knowledge whatsoever*), THE IBM/PC GUIDE teaches you techniques . . . tips . . . secrets you won't find anywhere else.

You acquire mastery of the IBM/PC the easy way . . . the sensible way. With hands-on examples that build your knowledge and sophistication step by step.

You work at your own pace. No need to be a speed-typist or an experienced programmer. With THE IBM/PC GUIDE, you just open the book, turn on your IBM/PC, and begin to learn. There's no technical jargon, no high-level math. THE IBM/PC GUIDE is written in clear, simple English. It's lighthearted . . . friendly. And it's fun.

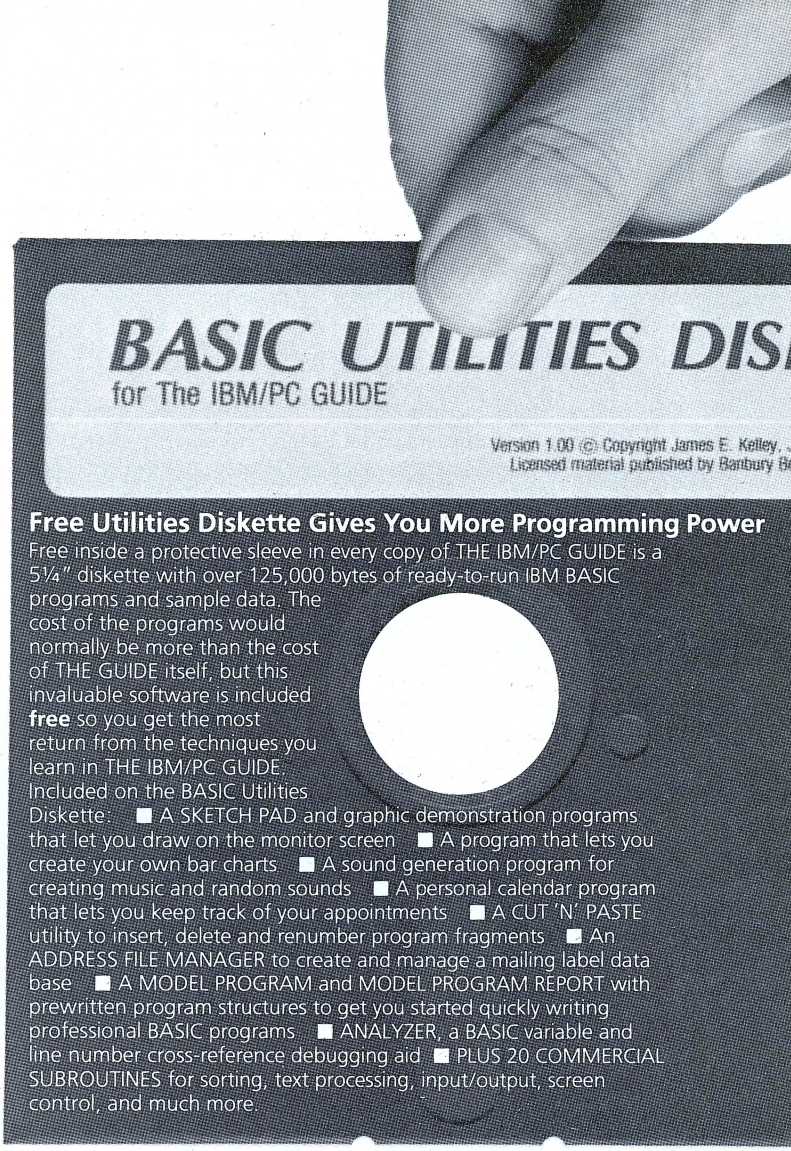
The Software That's Not There

Whether you bought your IBM/PC for business applications, for home use or for word processing, you're compelled to choose from software that *someone else* wrote. Software that may or may not fill your specific needs.

THE IBM/PC GUIDE offers you a solution. In just a few evenings, THE GUIDE will teach you fundamental programming principles so you can create your own business and home data management programs. Programs for your use . . . for your needs . . . for handling information the way you want. And in doing so you will acquire a spectacular understanding of IBM's remarkable computer.

Order By Phone

To order your *rushed* copy of THE IBM/PC GUIDE call, toll free: 1-800-345-8500, ext. 49 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.



Free Utilities Diskette Gives You More Programming Power

Free inside a protective sleeve in every copy of THE IBM/PC GUIDE is a 5¼" diskette with over 125,000 bytes of ready-to-run IBM BASIC programs and sample data. The cost of the programs would normally be more than the cost of THE GUIDE itself, but this invaluable software is included **free** so you get the most return from the techniques you learn in THE IBM/PC GUIDE. Included on the BASIC Utilities Diskette: ■ A SKETCH PAD and graphic demonstration programs that let you draw on the monitor screen ■ A program that lets you create your own bar charts ■ A sound generation program for creating music and random sounds ■ A personal calendar program that lets you keep track of your appointments ■ A CUT 'N' PASTE utility to insert, delete and renumber program fragments ■ An ADDRESS FILE MANAGER to create and manage a mailing label data base ■ A MODEL PROGRAM and MODEL PROGRAM REPORT with prewritten program structures to get you started quickly writing professional BASIC programs ■ ANALYZER, a BASIC variable and line number cross-reference debugging aid ■ PLUS 20 COMMERCIAL SUBROUTINES for sorting, text processing, input/output, screen control, and much more.

THE IBM/PC GUIDE and FREE DISKETTE will soon be available in stores. But if you act now we'll mail you a copy the same day we receive your order and send it FIRST CLASS MAIL!

Please send this coupon to: ST3

Banbury Books, Inc.
Box 426 · Wayne, PA 19087

Please rush me _____ copies of THE IBM/PC GUIDE plus my Free Utilities Diskette at only $29.95 each.

☐ Check ☐ VISA ☐ MasterCard

Card Number _____ Exp. Date _____

RUSH my IBM/PC GUIDE to:

Name _____
(Please print)

Title _____

Company _____

Address _____ Apt. _____

City _____

State _____ Zip _____

PA residents add 6% sales tax.

Plan 1040. Everyone who's writing software for the pc, everyone who wants to write software for the pc, and everyone who would just like to see the pc perform to maximum capacity needs a copy of *Plan 1040*. That's in addition, of course, to those tax professionals who will likely acquire it for its stated purpose—to assist tax professionals in counseling their clients on tax planning matters before it's too late.

As a tax planner, *Plan 1040* is pretty nifty—not as nifty as a comparable one from Aardvark, but then the price tag, at $150, isn't as hefty either.

But as a piece of programming art, *Plan 1040* is rivaled so far only by *1-2-3*.

The program is being brought to the pc after development on some of IBM's minicomputers. That doesn't necessarily explain its potency, because it's written in 8088 machine code, which is not your standard minicomputer programming environment. But it probably explains the commitment to performance that permeates the entire package.

Software 1040, which publishes the program, had an easier task than some other publishers had. The firm was able to assume that it would be selling to pc owners knowledgeable in both taxes and in the operation of their pcs. That meant they didn't need to write a bunch of code to make screens pretty. It also allowed the company to make better use of the pc keyboard than most other packages extant.

The result is a superior piece of software that authors at home in the microcomputer world could learn from. A minor example is its handling of print output. No long screens of output configurations here. The authors know what their program does, so they've configured it themselves, using both normal and extended typefaces. Likewise, their consideration of the user. How many times have you had to reset your printer for top of form because the last program you used just stopped wherever the page ended? This isn't a problem with *Plan 1040*. It sends a form feed to get your printer ready for the next output. That reflects the minicomputer background, where print requests are often queued up, with the requester dependent on the prior users to have advanced the paper to top of form. A small thing, but a lesson micro authors could well learn.

If *Plan 1040* sets a performance standard, pc owners will have much to look forward to.

Plan 1040 is set for 1983. Tax professionals and the tax-knowledgeable will find it a speedy and useful adjunct in preparing for next April 15. art

Plan 1040, Software 1040 (10 Nevada Drive, Box 1010, New Hyde Park, NY 11042; 516-775-5566). $150.

PCcrayon. By Al McFarland and Joe Juhasz. This well designed program can draw and store virtually any graphic shape or character font. Arcs, circles, straight lines, or dots are easily combined with keyboard-entered text or specially created characters to form a seemingly endless variety of graphic images.

PCcrayon creates and stores five types of screen images: drawings, graphic symbols, vector symbols, keyboard text, and scenarios—combinations of images that can be several screens in length. When replayed, a scenario is similar to a slide show. Colors are available within the limits of BasicA, including control of foreground, background, and area painting.

You can draw lines, arcs, circles, and dots in nine widths. Single-key control with the cursor keys moves a + symbol in any of eight directions, and a toggled "worm" mode causes the cursor to draw as it moves. The cursor's coordinates are displayed at the lower left of the screen, and the cursor moves in any increment—usually one or ten dots per keystroke—when the insert key is toggled.

Drawings are entire screen contents stored on disk in *xxx.drw* files, each consuming over 16K because the full contents of the color graphics/adapter card memory are saved.

Graphic symbols generally are small pictures or symbols drawn on specified portions of the screen. You designate upper-left and lower-right corners of the symbol to be saved, and the resulting image is added to the currently open *xxx.gsm* file. You can create several of these files, each containing up to twenty symbols.

Vector symbols—line drawings that can be displayed with variable angles, sizes, or colors—are used primarily to create character fonts or graphic symbols requiring rotation and scaling. The vector creation mode displays a forty-by-forty dot matrix on which you define a unique character by connecting any sequence of points. Vector symbols are stored in the currently open *xxx.vsm* file, which can contain any number of images, limited only by disk capacity.

You create graphic and vector symbols with eighteen single-key commands; an additional eighteen commands, preceded by "Z", provide housekeeping functions.

You can animate sequences of previously created symbols (graphics or vectors) by *floating* them between any two points on-screen, at a choice of nine speeds. A status display reminds you of the cursor drawing increment, line width, background or foreground colors, or worm mode on/off.

PCcrayon's text mode enters text strings from the keyboard to the screen, locates them anywhere in the display area, plus moves, copies, and changes colors. There are two text styles: *standard* uses the ROM character set; *vector* uses a vector symbol file. Vector text strings can be scaled and rotated; standard text strings cannot. Both styles can be combined with symbols to form more complex symbols, drawings, or scenarios.

A scenario can be created from almost any sequence of *PCcrayon*'s commands, including recall of graphic and vector symbols from disk, animation of symbols or text on the screen, and changes in color, size, or rotation. A capture file (*xxx.cap*), created by recording the sequence of keystrokes, stores even long and complex scenarios compactly. The demonstration scenario on the *PCcrayon* disk runs

PC/FORTH™

Complete FORTH program development systems for the IBM® Personal Computer. Packages include interpreter/compiler with virtual memory management, line editor, custom screen editor, assembler, decompiler, utilities, file and record access modules, and many demonstration programs. 150 page user manual. $100.00

Software floating point, Intel 8087 support, color graphics extensions, and target compiler available at additional cost.

Specify PC-DOS or CP/M-86®. One disk drive and 48 kbytes RAM required. Software supplied on 5¼ inch single sided soft sectored double density diskettes.

Laboratory Microsystems
4147 Beethoven Street
Los Angeles, CA 90066
(213) 306-7412

IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corp.
CP/M is a registered trademark of Digital Research, Inc.

APPLE • ATARI • IBM • COM-64

The Official

FROGGER™

by SEGA®

Frogger hops to IBM! Sierra On-Line brought this popular coin-op game to the Apple, Atari and Com 64. Now we're bringing the helpless critter home to IBM PC owners!
Frogger is available for $34.95 from your local dealer or directly from Sierra On-Line, Inc., Sierra On-Line Building, Coarsegold, CA 93614 (209) 683-6858. VISA, Mastercard, Check, COD accepted. Add one dollar for shipping.

® and TM designate trademarks of Sega Enterprises, Inc.
© 1981 Sega Enterprises, Inc.
SIERRAVISION is a trademark of Sierra On-Line, Inc.

SIERRAVISION™

Sierra ON-LINE INC

approximately three minutes and twenty seconds and uses only 9.9K of disk space. Twenty-six of the single-key and Z commands can be captured to create a scenario.

The scenario mode, interestingly, simulates the principles of the Canadian Telidon videotex system. A videotex system is a public or private database network providing graphics-oriented information via telephone systems, to subscribers with specially modified TV sets. A decoder card in the modified TV interprets codes representing arcs, lines, points, rectangles, and polygons, along with display coordinates, colors, rotation, scaling, and so forth.

Both *PCcrayon*'s scenario mode and the Telidon system interpret codes to create graphics displays. The difference is that Telidon uses hardware, while *PCcrayon* uses a Basic program called *pcreplay.bas*. Although *PCcrayon* does not have a built-in communications function like the Telidon decoders, it could be modified to allow periodic reading of asynchronous communications input and subsequent display of one or more scenarios. Conceivably, *PCcrayon* could be a "poor man's" videotex system.

Three other files, *gsym.usr*, *vsym.usr*, and *replay.usr*, contain instructions and routines for interfacing Basic programs to graphic symbol, vector symbol, and scenario replay files. This capability could interface analytical or computational routines in Basic to corresponding graphic images in an *xxx.gsm* file, which would permit computer-aided instruction (CAI) and computer-aided design (CAD). This would also be an alternative to interfacing communications to *PCcrayon* to transmit graphics.

A recent enhancement allows *PCcrayon* to use electronic disk utilities—up to four drives—for both program and data files, a welcome addition, since disk accesses can become bothersome during intensive graphic design work. An anticipated business-graphics utility will allow creation of pie, bar, and line charts, which would make *PCcrayon* the equal of some standalone business graphics packages. Interfacing such utility software as print spoolers would add even more versatility, by reducing the eight-minute print cycles for screen-graphics dumps.

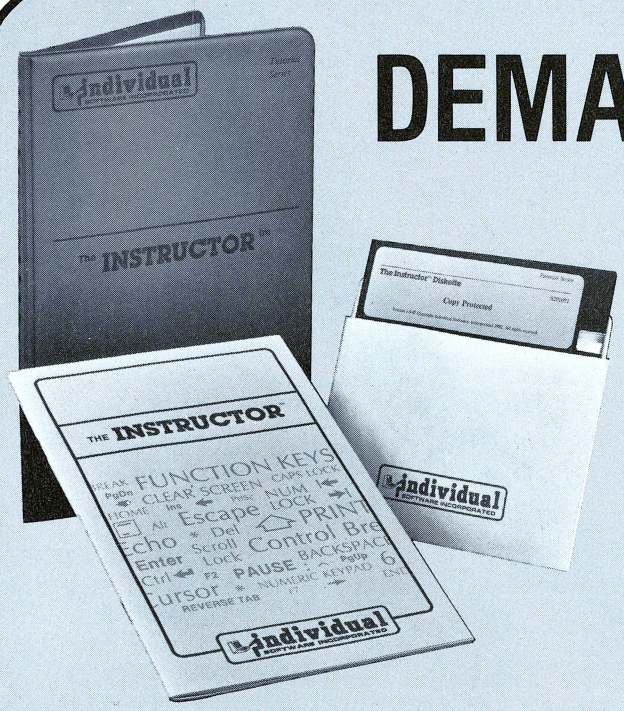
PCcrayon gets high marks for user-friendliness, with good use of prompts and effective error-trapping. However, it has its share of minor faults, including a tendency for the keyboard buffer to overload when you try to move the cursor rapidly from point to point. A solution would be to interface other input devices to *PCcrayon*; light pens, graphic tablets, and joysticks would undoubtedly improve drawing performance. The drawing of arcs is somewhat difficult; there is no visual reference for selecting the three required points, but this could be improved by a display of dots as each point is entered. As mentioned, eight minutes are required to dump a graphics drawing, which hampers production of large quantities of illustrations. *PCcrayon* works adequately on a good composite monitor or TV, but an RGB monitor greatly improves color and definition, particularly on detailed symbols.

The program works well with DOS 2.0, and the new DOS utility, *graphics.com*, allows direct screen printing of dot graphics to the Epson MX-80 printer equipped with Graftrax. With this utility, which should not be too difficult to interface, a drawing that takes eight minutes to print with *PCcrayon*'s Z-Print command will print in about a minute and a half. Also, the *graphics.com* program aligns drawings with normal paper orientation, a big help for book illustrations. The QuadBoard electronic disk program, *qd.exe*, works with DOS 2.0 and can be used with *PCcrayon* for file storage.

PCcrayon is a versatile, comprehensive, and flexible graphics application package, and more than reasonably priced. bc

PCcrayon, PCsoftware (4155 Cleveland Avenue, San Diego, CA 92103). $44.95. ▲

DEMAND THE BEST



"The best . . . introduction to the IBM PC around."
—PC Magazine, The Independent Guide to the IBM PC

Being the leader means daring to be different. **The INSTRUCTOR**™ is.

Any tutorial software can make you read screens of text and then press a key to go on. That's not much better than manuals.

To become the best interactive training software you've got to make imaginative use of the PC's capabilities. **The INSTRUCTOR**™ does just that.

It's #1 because of its creative screen displays, interesting graphics, appropriate sound effects, and ease of use. Designed for the novice, its practice exercises are so appealing and effective, this tutorial software will spoil you.

Recognized as the leader by training experts, it's already the number one choice of thousands. And it's priced the best too—**ONLY $44.95** suggested list.

Available everywhere. Contact your local BusinessLand, Computer Depot, Computer Mart, ComputerLand®, Entre Computer Center, IBM Product Center or other IBM PC dealer or software retailer. If unavailable, send check for $44.95 plus $2 shpg. and hndlg. (CA residents incl. 6½% sales tax) to Individual Software.

Requires PC-DOS, 64KB, at least 1 drive, and a monochrome or color display.

individual
SOFTWARE INCORPORATED

24 Spinnaker Place, Redwood City, CA 94065
(415) 591-4166
Phone & dealer inquiries welcome.

PASCAL

E·X·T·E·N·D·E·D

Part Two of Three Parts · by Dara Pearlman

If you've learned another computer language before Pascal, you've probably noticed that Standard Pascal has certain drawbacks. Particularly striking are its primitive string-handling abilities, its limited input-output statements, and its inability to peek into specific memory locations.

To compensate, most Pascal compilers now include extensions, making the language both more powerful and easier to use. *Super arrays*, for example, give greater control over memory allocation. *Address pointers* allow you to peek and poke, Basic style, into internal memory.

Recycling Memory Resources. Pascal's advantage for small computers is its ability to allocate memory dynamically. When you compile your program, you don't need to reserve an area of computer memory for your data. When you run the program, Pascal allocates the memory necessary to store data and will free the memory when you no longer need it.

Pascal procedures *new* and *dispose* reserve and free memory from a Pascal memory pool called the *heap*. In this process, pointers connect the heap variables to each other, which is handy for linked lists and data trees.

But Standard Pascal is at a loss if you want to use heap memory for a simple array. In this case, you must declare your array size in advance in a statement such as

```
VAR NUMBER_TABLE: ARRAY [1..10] OF
INTEGER;
```

You can't adjust the size of the array at run time.

However, that limitation disappears with IBM Pascal's *super array*. You can use heap memory for arrays and wait until run time to decide array size. Figure 1 on the next page shows how.

First, though, let's look at the data structures. The *type* declaration is

```
INTEGER_ARRAY = SUPER ARRAY [1..*] OF
INTEGER;
```

The asterisk represents the upper bound of the *super array*, which remains undeclared until run time. The only size limit is that the array cannot be larger than 32,766 (*maxint*−1) bytes.

Then we declare a pointer to the *super array*:

```
VAR INPUT_ARRAY:  ^INTEGER_ARRAY;
```

This is how Standard Pascal usually establishes a pointer variable. To refer to the actual contents of *input array*, we use the pointer referent form of the variable, with the caret "^" coming after the

variable name: *input array*∧.

Using figure 2, we're ready to walk through the executable part of the program. Where the program asks for the number of integers in the table, we type 6. The program uses this *array limit* to allocate the correct amount of heap memory in the statement

NEW (INPUT_ARRAY, ARRAY_LIMIT);

To check and see what happened, IBM Pascal's predeclared *sizeof* function will give the array size in bytes (in this case, 12), and the *upper* function will give the upper limit of the array (6). Don't use these functions on a heap array that hasn't been allocated or has already been returned to the heap. Your program will crash.

Now we enter the values into the table. To refer to each element in the array, we use pointer referent notation with the index I: *input_array*∧*[I]*. We examine the contents of the array by writing the numbers back out to the screen, and then we return the array storage area back to the heap with

DISPOSE (INPUT_ARRAY);

You wouldn't use this complex technique for such a small array, but it helps use available memory to best advantage when you're working with several very large arrays.

It could come in handy also when you're working with the special IBM Pascal types derived from *super arrays*, the *string* and the *lstring* discussed last month. We postponed details of the pointer referent *string* and *lstring*, but having introduced the *super array*, let's discuss them now.

Pointer on a String. The formal definition of *string* is

TYPE STRING = SUPER PACKED ARRAY [1..*]
OF CHAR;

and the formal definition of the variable length *lstring* is

TYPE LSTRING = SUPER PACKED ARRAY [0..*]
OF CHAR;

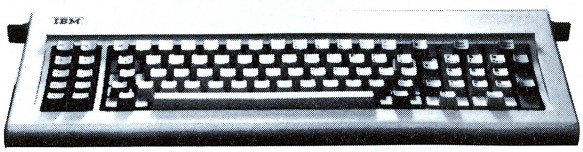
```
PROGRAM SUPER_ARRAY (INPUT, OUTPUT);

TYPE
        INTEGER_ARRAY=      SUPER ARRAY [1..*] OF
                            INTEGER;

VAR
        INPUT_ARRAY:        ∧ INTEGER_ARRAY;

        ARRAY_LIMIT,
        I:                  INTEGER;

BEGIN (*PROGRAM SUPER_ARRAY *)
        WRITE ('Enter number of integers in array..');
        READLN (ARRAY_LIMIT);

        (* Allocate memory to array *)
        NEW (INPUT_ARRAY, ARRAY_LIMIT);

        WRITELN ('Size of input array in bytes is ',
                 SIZEOF (INPUT_ARRAY∧,
                 ARRAY_LIMIT));
        WRITELN ('Upper limit of array is ',
                 UPPER (INPUT_ARRAY∧));
        WRITELN ('Please enter an integer after ''?''
                 prompt.');
        (* INPUT LOOP *)
        FOR I := 1 TO ARRAY_LIMIT DO
                BEGIN
                WRITE ('?');
                READLN (INPUT_ARRAY∧[I])
                END;

        WRITELN ('Values in array are:');
        (*Output Loop*)
        FOR I := 1 TO ARRAY_LIMIT DO
                WRITELN (INPUT_ARRAY∧[I]);

        (*Free memory allocated for array*)
        DISPOSE (INPUT_ARRAY);

END.    (*PROGRAM SUPER_ARRAY*)
```

Figure 1.

```
Enter number of integers in array..6
Size of input array in bytes is      12
Upper limit of array is      6
Please enter an integer after ''?'' prompt.
?45
?33
?46
?78
?9
?22
Values in array are
        45
        33
        46
        78
         9
        22
```

Figure 2.

WHAT'S WRONG WITH THIS PICTURE?



Nothing. But keyboard design can cause critical errors, which you can now avoid with **KEYFIXER.**™ Precision-molded plastic collars that easily slip on and enlarge your existing RETURN key, TAB key and both SHIFT keys. Greater accuracy with **no permanent alteration!** To order, send check or money order for $19.95 to:

Vertex Systems | KEYFIXER™ For IBM PC

7950 W. 4th St., Dept. T, Los Angeles, CA 90048
Or call (213) 938-0857 for VISA/MC.
Allow 2-3 weeks for delivery.

For the *string*, the usual *super array* size limit applies; it can be no longer than 32,766 bytes. The *lstring*, which stores length information in the first byte of the array, can be no longer than 255 bytes.

Since the two string types are special cases of the *super array*, we can use the same technique to dynamically allocate memory for a *string* or *lstring* from the heap. Suppose, for example, we wanted to wait until run time before declaring storage of a *string* called *name*. Normally, we would define the maximum length for *name* in a statement like

VAR NAME: STRING(20);

where the maximum length is 20. Instead, we can define *name* as a pointer to the type *string*:

VAR NAME: ∧STRING;

Suppose we read the length we need into the variable *length*. We can then create storage for *name* from the heap with

NEW (NAME, LENGTH);

just as we did with the integer *super array*. And as with the regular *super array*, we must refer to the contents of the variable *name* with the pointer referent notation *name*∧. Finally, when we're done with *name*, we can free the storage using

DISPOSE (NAME);

The Right Address. IBM Pascal also uses pointers to locate specific memory addresses, similar to Basic's *peek* and *poke*. But before seeing how, let's take a look at the way IBM Pascal classifies numbers and builds memory addresses.

In addition to the Standard Pascal numerical types of *integer* and *real*, IBM Pascal uses the numerical type *word* for handling memory addresses. A *word* is a positive whole number between 0 and 65,535. The upper limit, which has the predeclared name *maxword*, could also be referred to as "64K −1" or "2^{16} −1." With that range, a *word* variable can fit into two bytes of memory, a size often called a "word."

You can use a *word* in much the same way you use an *integer*, either in arithmetic or as the index of an array. Although you can't mix *integers* and *words* in the same statement, IBM Pascal has functions for converting an *integer* to a *word* and vice versa. The function *wrd* will change any ordinal type, including a character, to a *word*. For example:

WORD_TEN := WRD (INTEGER_TEN);

The function *ord* will change it back again, as in:

INTEGER_TEN := ORD (WORD_TEN);

Word has a subtype called *byte*, which, not surprisingly, is one byte long and has a value range from 0 to 255. You can use it in arithmetic together with *words*, and with IBM Pascal address pointers to talk to the operating system.

The sixteen-bit size of the *word* is ideal for IBM pc memory addresses, because the internal registers of the pc's main processor are sixteen bits, or one word, long. Each byte of memory has a unique location number, or address, and the pc uses registers to specify the next address it wants. Thus, if your pc has 128K of internal memory, then the memory location numbers begin at 0 and go up to 131,071 (2^{17} −1).

If you wonder how a sixteen-bit register, which can hold a quantity up to 65,535, can find addresses like 131,071, the answer is offset addressing, a technique that uses two sixteen-bit words to form an address. The first word holds the address of a segment, a section of 64K of memory. When the pc's main processor encounters a segment address, it multiplies the address by sixteen to get the true address value. The second word holds the offset address, which, when added to the true segment address, gives the desired memory location.

An analogy to decimal numbers might make this idea clearer. Suppose you needed to count to 9,999 but could only write three digits. You could use one three-digit number, say 257, as the first portion of your number, deciding that the real meaning of 257 would be 257 multiplied by 10, or 2,570. A second three-digit number, say 743, would be the offset portion of your number. Add 743 to the segment value 257 (which really means 2,570), and you get 3,313, a four-digit number represented by two three-digit numbers.

In assembly language, you can usually abbreviate your addresses. The main processor keeps the address of an area of memory, called the current data segment, in a special register. For information in the data segment, this address acts like the phone company's area codes. Referring to an address within the data segment is like making a local call; you don't need to specify the segment address.

Conventional shorthand for memory addresses is SSSS:RRRR, where S represents the segment portion of the address, and R represents the relative, or offset, portion. Both portions are in hexadecimal notation. An example would be 0040:0050, which is the memory location where the cursor position is stored. (More about that in a moment.)

Proper Forms of Address. Now let's look at IBM Pascal address pointers. There are two types: relative machine address, called *adr*, and segmented machine address, called *ads*.

An *adr* address corresponds to the sixteen-bit offset portion of the pc's addressing scheme, the local telephone number in our analogy. If you're unfamiliar with the assembly language for the pc's Intel 8088 microprocessor, you might not know whether you need the segment portion of the address, the "area code," as well. A good rule of thumb is that when the address refers to data in your program, use *adr*. When the address refers to an area outside your program, such as the DOS data area, use *ads*.

Ads is two *words* long and includes both the segment portion and the offset portion of an address. You can refer to the segment

HI TECH COMPUTER SERVICES

IBM PASCAL USERS

TWO UNIQUE PACKAGES THAT WILL IMPROVE YOUR PRODUCTIVITY

THE PASCAL TOOLKIT

- Console control including KEYPRESS, INKEY, LOCATE, 40/80 col screen set/clear, read from screen, SOUND.
- Turtlegraphics including PALLETTE & VIEWPORT.
- Serial Comm for up to 4 ports (you control parameters).
- Printer control, can be configured for any printer.
- Examples including menu selection, graph drawing, full screen input, communication, and more.

THE PASCAL SSP (Scientific Support Package)

- Complex Math including trig functions.
- Vector & Matrix Math (inversion included).
- Spline and Polynomial Regression for curve fitting.
- Integral, Derivative, & 6 statistical distributions.
- Source code provided with most units.

AND MORE

Both packages come with full documentation including a tutorial on how to construct your own units. Batch programs are provided to help you compile and run your programs. To order send $150 for TOOLKIT, $95 for SSP, or $25 each for doc + demo disk to:

HI TECH COMPUTER SERVICES

17 Mein Drive/New City, NY 10956/or call (203) 333-6034

NY Residents add appropriate sales tax

PROFESSIONAL PASCAL TOOLS

portion alone by using Pascal record notation and adding the suffix .S to your *ads* variable name. You can refer to the offset, or relative, portion by adding the suffix .R to the variable name.

For example, to refer to the beginning address of the memory on the color/graphics monitor adapter, we would use the *ads* form because the 16K of memory on the adapter would not normally be part of our program. We could define the address variable as

VAR SCREEN: ADS OF WORD;

Then we could load the correct address into *screen*, using the assignment statements:

SCREEN.S := 16#B800;
SCREEN.R := 16#0;

The 16# notation means that the following number is in hexadecimal form. The first assignment statement places the hexadecimal value B800 into the segment portion of the address variable *screen*. The pc's processor will understand that number to be shorthand for B8000, or 753,664 in decimal. The second assignment statement puts 0 into *screen*'s relative address portion, because we don't want any further offset; B8000 is the address we want.

To look at the *contents* of the *word* at location B8000, we use the pointer referent variation of the variable *screen*, as in:

WORD_VARIABLE := SCREEN∧;

For an example of the practical use of address variables, see figure 3, a program with two routines for designing video screens. *Locate*, like IBM Basic's statement of the same name, places the cursor at the row and column coordinates you specify. *Clear*, as you'd expect, clears the screen.

Let's look first at *locate*. We define *col_position* and *row_position* as variables of type *ads*. There's a special memory area that holds cursor information. Page A-3 of the IBM *Technical Reference* manual defines the area in assembly language. The row cursor position is stored in a byte of memory at address 0040:0050. The next byte, at address 0040:0051, holds the column cursor position.

To communicate with this operating system area, which is outside our program, we use *ads*. Note that we define the variables as *static*. This IBM Pascal attribute designation gives a local variable a fixed location in memory, as if it were a global variable. To avoid cluttering up the executable code with assignment statements, we use another IBM Pascal feature, the *value* section, to initialize the variable. In this case we use the *value* section to load the addresses into our *ads* variables.

Now composed of only two statements, the executable portion is simplicity itself:

ROW_POSITION∧:= CHR (ROW −1);
COL_POSITION∧:= CHR (COL −1);

We use the *chr* function because the operating system needs the cursor position in binary rather than integer form. We subtract one from the incoming row parameter because DOS sees the screen coordinates as starting at (0,0) in the upper-left corner and ending at (24,79) in the lower-right corner.

As mentioned, Pascal's *locate* uses the same conventions as Basic's procedure of the same name. If you prefer a different form, such as the Cartesian coordinates (x,y), you can simply reverse the parameters in the procedure declaration, placing *col* before *row*.

Array Addresses. The *clear* procedure illustrates additional techniques for using address pointers. To combine address pointers with arrays, for example, we use the IBM Pascal address subtype *adsmem*. It is the segmented address of an array, defined as:

ADSMEM = ADS OF ARRAY [0..32765] OF BYTE;

It has a cousin in relative address form, defined as:

ADRMEM = ADR OF ARRAY [0..32765] OF BYTE;

These forms allow us to use pointer referent array notation to specify the addresses of individual bytes in the array, as with *super array*. For example, we can define a variable such as:

VAR SCREEN: ADSMEM;

After we assign an address to *screen*, we can move a value into the second byte of the array with the statement

SCREEN∧[1] := 32;

IBM Pascal uses *adsmem* and *adrmem* in parameter definitions for several built-in routines using address variables. This gives the routines added flexibility, because they can accept any address type as actual parameters. That is, when you see *adrmem* in a parameter definition, you can send the routine an *adr* type instead. All relative address types are compatible with each other, as are all segmented address types. But don't mix a segmented type with a relative type.

Video Adapter Memory. Now let's use this idea in the *clear* procedure, which relies on the pc's memory-mapped video feature. That means that the pc can treat the memory on your video adapter card as if it were ordinary read/write memory. This memory, which is 4K on the monochrome display adapter and 16K on the color/graphics adapter, is the reservoir of information for the display screen. The electron beam that scans the screen many times each second transfers the information from the video adapter memory to your screen. If you change the contents of that memory, you change the screen.

The memory, or buffer, on the monochrome display adapter begins at location B000:0000. On the color/graphics adapter it begins at B800:0000. The color/graphics adapter can store up to four screens of text information, but we have designed *clear* to work only with the first screen. Thus we define the *crt_buffer* to be 4K (4,096 bytes) long, which will work equally well with both adapters.

We define a *crt_buffer* type as

TYPE CRT_BUFFER = ARRAY[0..CRT_BUFFER_SIZE −1] OF CHAR;

and then use that to define the variable *screen*:

VAR SCREEN: ADS OF CRT_BUFFER;

This makes *screen* similar to an *adsmem* variable, except that it is 4K

SimSoft™

"Simplified Software" for IBM PC's

Diet Analyzer™

Diet Analyzer was designed to allow you to monitor daily food consumption for vitamin, mineral, calorie, fat, sodium, carbohydrate, and protein content.

Features

- Data base contains information on over 500 foods and is expandable to 800 foods.
- Routines which allow you to add, delete, change, and display all information on each food.
- Prints a listing of all foods in the data base.
- Foods consumed for the day are analyzed & a printed report shows the nutritional value of the diet.

Includes 1 diskette & documentation manual. $50.00

Program requires DOS, BASICA, 64K (or more) of memory, 1 diskette drive, & printer. Add $2.50 shipping for each Diet Analyzer. Send for our software brochure.

Order your Diet Analyzer today!

MasterCard Dealer Inquiries Invited VISA

SimSoft, Inc.

1258 17th. St., Marysville, MI 48040 • (313) 364-7241

Monte Carlo Card

The distinguishable card for the discerning user

The only true FIVE function card
for the IBM Personal Computer

- 64K to 1 Megabyte of Memory
- ONE IBM Compatible Centronics Parallel Port
- ONE IBM Compatible Asynchronous Communications Port
- Clock/Calendar (Battery Backed) with Alarm Features
- Dual-Port Joystick Interface
- **Future Upgrade Option:**
  Direct Connect Plug-On Modem

Monte Carlo
MICROCOMPUTER
BUSINESS
INDUSTRIES
CORPORATION

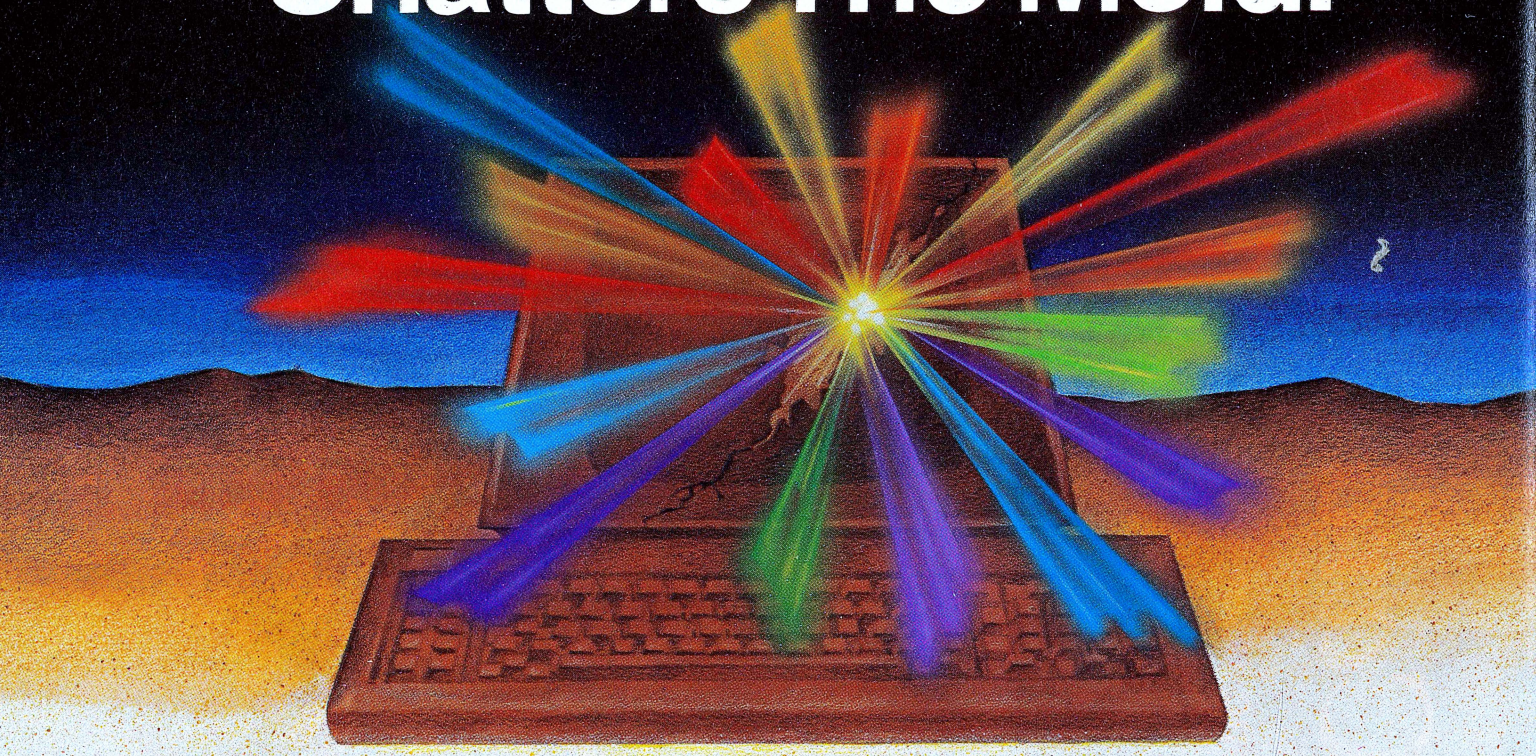
ADMINISTRATIVE OFFICES: 1019 8TH STREET
TELEPHONE: (303) 279-8438

MBI

GOLDEN, COLORADO 80401 (U.S.A.)
TWX: 910-934-0191

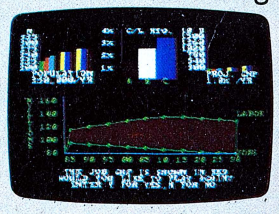
COLORPLUS™

Shatters The Mold.



A vibrant, varied new world of color is now at your fingertips.

We've shattered the mold for color graphics adapters with COLORPLUS, a high resolution, full color breakthrough fully compatible with IBM Personal Computer hardware and software.

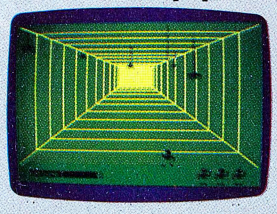


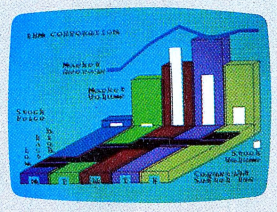
COLORPLUS produces incredibly sharp, detailed multicolor graphics of professional quality at a low PC price. Its state of the art biplanar technology enables high resolution 4 color 80 character graphics or medium resolution 16 color 40 character graphics.

The current IBM PC capabilities of high resolution 1 color 80 character graphics and medium resolution 4 color 40 character graphics simply pale in comparison, now that the era of COLORPLUS has arrived.

Using only a single expansion slot, COLORPLUS includes an integrated parallel port, thereby saving you an expansion slot for future needs. No modification is required to existing software in the IBM modes. Enhanced software supporting COLORPLUS Graphics capabilities is currently available from major software suppliers.

For over 31 years, Frederick Electronics Corporation has developed high quality electronic equipment world-wide. The key to our success is our international reputation for customer support. PC+ products will continue in this tradition. Frederick Electronics Corporation is a subsidiary of Plantronics, Inc., a publicly owned company listed on the NYSE as PLX.





The goal of PC+ products is to expand your options, to make your personal computer more valuable and productive. COLORPLUS is just one example of our commitment to that objective.

Contact us for the name of your nearest COLORPLUS dealer.

PC+™ PRODUCTS

PLANTRONICS™
Frederick Electronics
7630 Hayward Road, P.O. Box 502
Frederick, Maryland 21701
Telephone: 1-800-638-6211
(301) 662-5901, TELEX: 893438

PC+ and COLORPLUS are trademarks of Plantronics/Frederick Electronics Corp. IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corp.

```
Program VIDEO (Input,Output);
        (* This program illustrates the use of utility
           procedures LOCATE and CLEAR. The main
           routine clears the screen, moves the cursor to home
           (1,1) position, and then writes an 'X' at the
           coordinates requested by the operator.*)
VAR
        MAIN_COL,
        MAIN_ROW: INTEGER;
PROCEDURE LOCATE (ROW,COL: INTEGER);
        (* Places cursor at indicated column and row. Upper
           left is (1,1); lower right is (25,80) *)
TYPE
        COORDINATE=    CHAR;
VAR     [STATIC]
        COL_POSITION,
        ROW_POSITION:  ADS OF COORDINATE;
VALUE
        COL_POSITION.S :=16#40;
        COL_POSITION.R :=16#50;
        ROW_POSITION.S :=16#40;
        ROW_POSITION.R :=16#51;
BEGIN (*LOCATE*)
        ROW_POSITION^ :=CHR (ROW -1);
        COL_POSITION^ := CHR (COL -1);
END;  (*LOCATE*)
PROCEDURE CLEAR;
        (* Clears display screen to blanks with normal
           attribute. *)
CONST
        BLANK = ' ';
        NORMAL_ATTRIBUTE = CHR(7);
        CRT_BUFFER_SIZE = 4096;
        COLOR_DISPLAY = 16#03D4;
        DISABLE_DISPLAY = 16#21;
TYPE
        CRT_BUFFER=     ARRAY[0..CRT_BUFFER_SIZE
                        =1] OF CHAR;
VAR
        SCREEN:         ADS OF CRT_BUFFER;
        CRT_TYPE [STATIC]:      ADS OF WORD;
        CRT_MODE [STATIC]:      ADS OF BYTE;
        SAVED_MODE:             BYTE;
VALUE
        CRT_TYPE.S := 16#40;
        CRT_TYPE.R := 16#63;
        CRT_MODE.S := 16#40;
        CRT_MODE.R := 16#65;
BEGIN (*CLEAR*)
        (* Load screen address for color or monochrome
           display *)
        IF CRT_TYPE^  = COLOR_DISPLAY THEN
                BEGIN
                SCREEN.S :=16#B800;
                SCREEN.R := 16#0
                END
        ELSE
                BEGIN
                SCREEN.S := 16#B000;
                SCREEN.R :=16#0
                END;
        (* Save current crt_mode *)
        SAVED_MODE := CRT_MODE^;
        (*Disable display*)
        CRT_MODE^ := DISABLE_DISPLAY;
        (* Move cursor and force scroll *)
        LOCATE (25,1);
        WRITELN;
        (* Move blank and normal attribute to first two bytes
           of screen. *)
        SCREEN^[0] := BLANK;
        SCREEN^[1] := NORMAL_ATTRIBUTE;
        (* Duplicate the first two bytes in the rest of the
           screen *)
        MOVESL (SCREEN,ADS
          SCREEN^[2],CRT_BUFFER_SIZE=2);
        (*Restore old crt mode *)
        CRT_MODE^ := SAVED_MODE;
        LOCATE (25,1);
        WRITELN;
END;  (* Procedure CLEAR *)
BEGIN (*PROGRAM VIDEO*)
        CLEAR;
        LOCATE (1,1);
        WRITELN ('enter row, col');
        READLN (MAIN_ROW,MAIN_COL);
        LOCATE (MAIN_ROW,MAIN_COL);
        WRITE ('X');
END.    (* PROGRAM VIDEO *)
```

Figure 3.

25:01 TIME ORGANIZER
and Scheduler, Appointment Diary, Memory Jogger, and Daily, Weekly or Periodical Events with Tickler System. Never miss any event EVER. $99.00

25:02 MAGAZINE ABSTRACTOR, Document Filing and Retrieval System, Cataloging of any items or information. Never misfile any document EVER. $89.00

25:03 ASSET MANAGER
The Most Comprehensive Fixed Asset Locator/Depreciation Manager Available. Unlimited Classification, 23 different schedules; Tracks books and tax for each asset. $150.00

SPECIAL OFFER

Special Offer:
Purchase any program before July 1, 1983 and receive this attractive $25.00 digital watch/alarm/key chain **ABSOLUTELY FREE!**

SOFTREND, INC.
A Division of Information Solutions
P.O. Box 1462
Charlottesville, VA 22902
(804) 979-8194

long instead of 32K. Also, because most of us are more familiar with characters than with hexadecimal codes, we define the array's components as characters instead of bytes. Now we can use array notation to refer to individual characters on the screen, just as we did in our *adsmem* example.

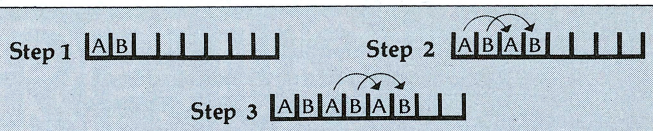
To load the correct screen memory address into *screen*, *clear* peeks into the contents of address 0040:0063, where DOS stores information on which adapter you have. We call this location *crt_type* and assign it the correct address in the *value* section. We know from the *Technical Reference* manual that if a color/graphics monitor is attached, that location will hold the hexadecimal value 03D4, which we have defined as the constant *color_display*.

When we begin the routine, we test to see if *crt_type* holds that value. If so, we load the address of the color/graphics memory buffer into the variable *screen*; if not, we load *screen* with the addresss of the monochrome-display memory buffer.

To Be Perfectly Clear. Before clearing the buffer, we have one more bit of housekeeping. The *Technical Reference* manual warns against moving characters into the color/graphics buffer while in eighty-column text mode, except during the vertical retrace interval. That means we need to turn off the electron beam while we're fiddling with the memory buffer, or we will get a flash of garbage on the screen. To do this, we move the hexadecimal value 21, which we have defined as the constant *disable_display*, into memory location 0040:65, which we call *crt_mode*.

The processor on the video adapter recognizes hex 21 as the bit pattern that turns off the electron beam. If we were writing in assembly language, we could send the bit pattern to the video adapter with an *out* instruction to the proper port. Since IBM Pascal doesn't talk directly to machine ports, we have to resort to a trick.

The trick is that DOS sends the bit pattern in *crt_mode* to the video processor when it scrolls the screen. So we use the *locate* procedure to move the cursor to the bottom of the screen and write a line to force a scroll. Voila! The electron beam goes off.



Step 1 shows a string before movesl is invoked. In step 2, movesl moves the A in the first byte to the third byte, and the B in the second byte to the fourth byte. Step 3 repeats this leapfrog action, moving the A in the third byte to the fifth byte, and the B in the fourth byte to the sixth byte. Movesl will continue this process for the number of bytes specified in the length parameter L.

Figure 4.

In the Clear. Now we're ready to clear the screen. First, *clear* loads the first two bytes of information into the screen buffer. Video adapters require two bytes to define each character. The first byte contains the ASCII character code. The second contains an attribute code, which can be normal white (or green) on black or can specify such things as high intensity or reverse video. For *clear*, we use the normal attribute, *chr(7)*, which we stored in the constant *normal_attribute*.

To move these characters to the buffer, we use the pointer referent array notation:

```
SCREEN^[0] := BLANK;
SCREEN^[1] := NORMAL_ATTRIBUTE;
```

Now we use the IBM Pascal *movesl* to fill the buffer with these two characters. *Movesl* moves a string of bytes from one area of memory to another, beginning at the left side of the source string and moving it byte by byte to the target string. It can also leapfrog part of a string to itself, as illustrated in figure 4. We use this leapfrog feature to fill the *screen* buffer.

The IBM Pascal manual defines *movesl* as

```
PROCEDURE MOVESL (S,D: ADSMEM; L: WORD);
```

where S is the address of the source string, D is the address of the destination string, and L is the number of bytes to be moved. Note that S and D are *adsmem* types. Since all segmented address types are compatible, we can use any segmented address variable as our actual parameters. And that's what we do in our call to *movesl*:

```
MOVESL (SCREEN, ADS SCREEN ^ [2],
CRT_BUFFER_SIZE=2);
```

Here *screen* is an *ads* type specifying the beginning of the source string. *Ads screen^[2]* is an *ads* type referring to the beginning of the destination string. And *crt_buffer_size=2*, or 4,094, is the number of bytes to be moved. We aren't filling the entire buffer, because we've already moved the necessary characters into the first two bytes.

We're done, except for a little cleaning up. We turn the electron-scan beam back on by restoring the previous contents of *crt_mode*, once again forcing the screen to scroll and sending that value to the video adapter. Finally, the screen is clear.

You May Need Assembler. Address pointers permit access to some of the machine-level functions that usually require assembly language. However, address pointers by themselves often cannot achieve desired results, such as disabling the video processor's electron beam. Currently, IBM Pascal falls short of the goal, stated in the manual, that "operations that are done easily in assembly language should be easy to do in IBM Pascal." For some machine-level functions, you still need assembly language subroutines.

Nevertheless, *address pointers* do give IBM Pascal the same capabilities as Basic's *peek* and *poke* statements, and *super arrays* offer enhanced control of memory allocation. Both can make your programs more powerful and easier to write, and are welcome extensions of Standard Pascal. ▲

Reliable Business Software

DATASMITH software requires no previous computer experience, so it can be used effectively by your present office staff. The menu-driven systems feature extensive error detection and correction facilities, so they are "friendly" to the user.

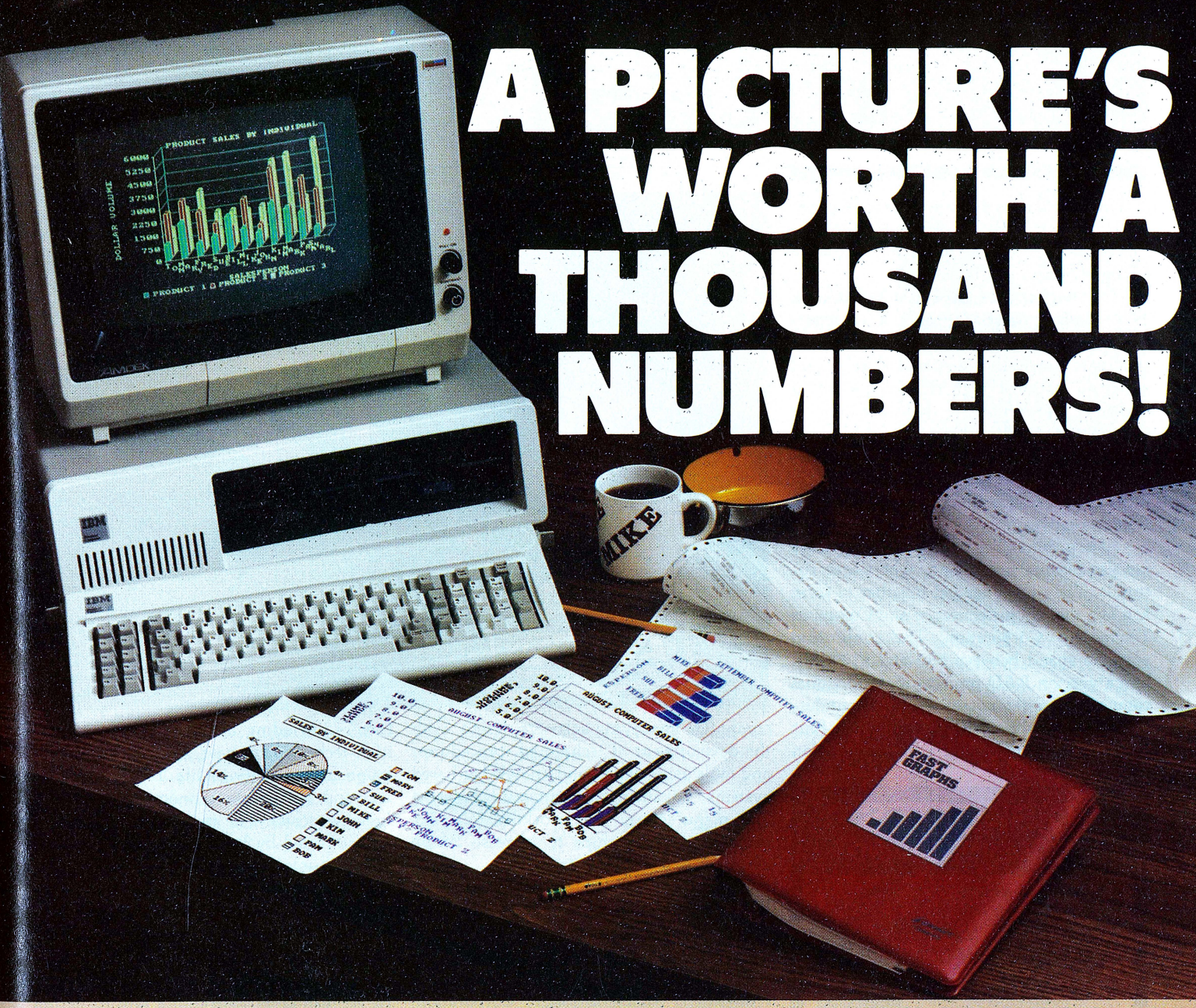
- GENERAL LEDGER. Everything you need to keep the books. Features easy-to-use data entry and error correction, trial balance, fast post, and a variety of comprehensive reports. Automatic error detection keeps the books in balance. Writes checks and makes journal entries in one operation.
- PAYROLL. A very flexible system that adapts to a wide variety of needs. Features Federal, state, and local tax calculations, EI credit, and special pay and deduction amounts. Prints all necessary reports, paychecks, and W-2 forms.
- DATA MANAGER. A powerful generalized data management system that lets you define, enter, update, sort, select, and print reports from a database of your own design. Applicable to almost any job where records must be kept, this system can replace literally hundreds of programs.

Put your computer to work with these sophisticated systems now. Programs are available for 48K or larger two-disk systems in your choice of code for Microsoft BASIC-80® under CP/M®, IBM® Personal Computer BASIC, or Micropolis® BASIC.

DATASMITH

Box 8036, Shawnee Mission, KS 66208, (913) 381-9118

A PICTURE'S WORTH A THOUSAND NUMBERS!



The IBM Personal Computer and Printed Reports

Everyone knows that the IBM Personal Computer does a terrific job of storing and manipulating facts and figures. Unfortunately, drawing conclusions from this information requires printed reports often running into the thousands of numbers. Now, however, you can use **FAST GRAPHS**™ to replace all those numbers with one simple to understand, pleasing to the eye, graphic report.

FAST GRAPHS™ and the "Graphic Report

FAST GRAPHS™ is the most recent addition to Innovative Software's **EXECUTIVE SERIES**.™ It converts the numbers from Visicalc® DIF™ files, manual entry, or our **EXECUTIVE SERIES**™ packages, including **T.I.M. III**® into "graphic reports". Graphic reports may be viewed on your color monitor or sent to any popular graphics printer or plotter. A graphic report can have scatter or line charts, pie charts, and two or three-dimensional bar charts, etc., all of which may be customized by the full graphic editor. This same editor may also be used to paint and draw characters or shapes to be overlayed on a graph.

Your Data Never Looked So Good

If your meetings seem to be "bored meetings" rather than Board Meetings, then **FAST GRAPHS**™ is for you. **FAST GRAPHS**™ turns dull, boring, printed reports into exciting, colorful "graphic reports". Visit your local IBM dealer today for more information about **FAST GRAPHS**™ and our other products. Or call us directly. Either way, you'll be drawing colorful conclusions in no time.

Innovative Software®

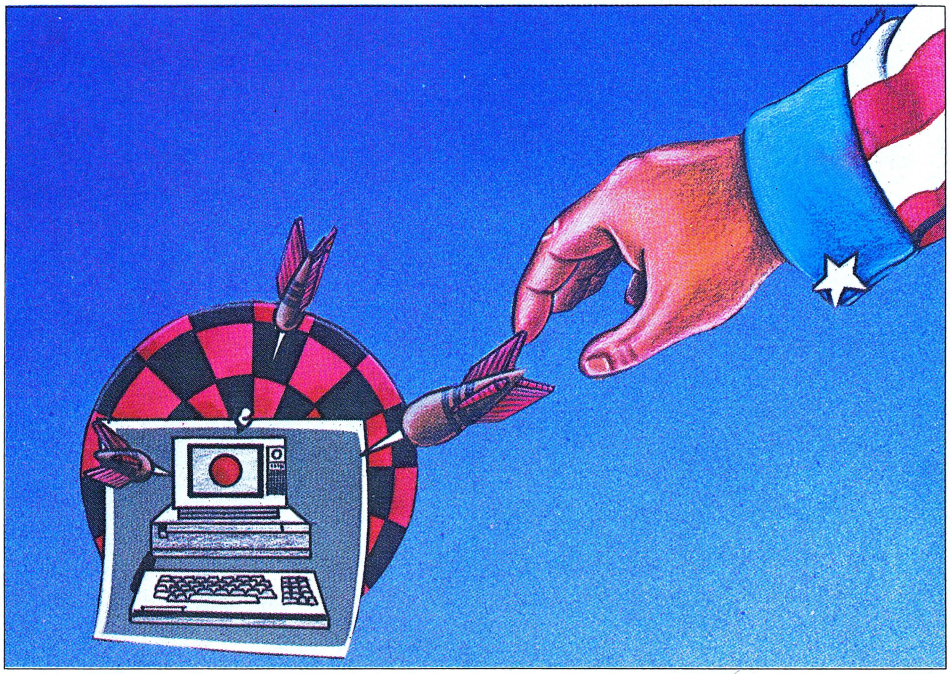
9300 W. 110th St., Suite 380
Overland Park, KS 66210 USA
913/383-1089
Telex: 209542

newspeak

Δ **The U.S. Strikes Back.** It appears the U.S. government and the electronics industry are finally getting serious about the FCC—the Foreign Computer Challenge.

The Reagan administration's proposed 1984 budget, which earmarks a whopping $45.8 billion to military and civilian R&D programs, includes one major computer goody—a national high-technology lab at Berkeley, California. At the same time, a Congressional bill asking for upward of $400 million for upgrading math and science education, in United States secondary schools, is gaining favor in the House of Representatives.

Fifteen blue-chip computer companies are also putting their money where their future is. They have banded together to form MCTC, the Microelectronics and Computer Technology Corporation. The consortium plans to spend between $50 and $100 million a year on R&D projects that individual companies would not or could not undertake by themselves. MCTC will initiate four R&D projects: designing a fifth-generation computer; improving software design, with the development of techniques, procedures, and tools using expert and knowledge-based systems; advancing computer-aided design and manufacture; and working out new ways to package chips to increase design efficiencies.



Founding shareholders of MCTC read like a *Who's Who* in computers and electronics. They are Advanced Micro Devices, Control Data Corporation, Digital Equipment Corporation, Harris Corporation, Honeywell, Motorola, NCR Corporation, National Semiconductor, RCA, Sperry, Mostek Corporation, Xerox, Signetics, and Westinghouse Electronics.

"Most journalists tend to view this as our response to the Japanese threat," says William Shaffer of Control Data, an MCTC interim spokesman. "But there's an MCTC-like organization within the European Common Market called Esprit. They're coming from the back of the pack, the Europeans, but they're moving very rapidly." Apparently the Far East is not the only competitor worth keeping an eye on.

The MCTC, which will be headed by retired admiral Bobby R. Inman, hopes to be up and running by 1984. It is currently evaluating thirty-six sites for the organization's facilities. "There could be as many as five sites and as few as one," says Shaffer. "With four programs and headquarters personnel, it may make sense to colocate one or more at a single location."

Site reviewers are weighing a number of factors, including an area's university and high-tech industry base, vendor/supplier relationships, quality of life, ready access by air, and boilerplate economics (taxes and housing costs). The review process should be completed by late spring, Shaffer says.

Site selection may be the least of MCTC's problems, however. "A cloud of uncertainty" hangs over the project, according to Control Data president Robert M. Price, because of confusion over federal antitrust policy. MCTC shareholders would like to see Congress amend the law to permit R&D ventures such as theirs. The U.S. Justice Department did not block the formation of the company but has said it reserves the option to file an antitrust action in the future, a position that has led some twenty-five companies reportedly interested in joining MCTC to balk at committing themselves.

The size of the administration's proposed R&D budget and the relative lack of Congressional opposition to it suggest that MCTC supporters may find Capitol Hill receptive to special legislation. In Washington these days, high-tech is in. "Whether you agree or disagree with the President's view of the world," Caltech economist Roger G. Noll told the *Los Angeles Times*, "the fact is that this budget document—unlike his first two—is a national pursuit of rational objectives."

The rational objective that has emerged reflects a growing national commitment to high technology. Government and industry have worked together before—to build the

DISKETTES
3M Scotch BRAND

AT SUPER LOW PRICES
FOR YOUR IBM COMPUTER
Scotch DISKETTES
ARE TESTED AND GUARANTEED
ERROR FREE
CALL TOLL FREE TODAY
IBM CLUB MEMBERS WELCOME
WE SHIP WITHIN 24 HOURS

HOME COMPUTER FURNITURE

NOT LOW PRICED COMPUTER FURNITURE, BUT . . . QUALITY COMPUTER FURNITURE AT LOW PRICES
SEND FOR FREE CATALOG

MASTERCARD • VISA • C.O.D.
WE PAY SHIPPING CHARGES

CALL TOLL FREE
800-922-8193
IN CA 800-468-1068

Tayco Business Forms
Computer Supplies
P.O. Box 605
Newbury Park, CA 91320

railroads and put a man on the moon—and such cooperation is demanded now to match similar efforts by the Japanese and the Europeans, many experts believe.

Eugene Haller of the Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory notes that the United States hasn't been as quick as other countries to recognize the close connection between basic research and industrial applications. "We've tended to make breakthroughs in the laboratory and then left it up to industry to make use of it," he told the *Los Angeles Times*. "And what we've noticed is that the Japanese and Germans have been a lot quicker to jump on things than our fellow Americans."

Jumping on things in the future is going to take more than a garage in Silicon Valley. It will require prodigious commitments in money and personnel and call for creative and efficient means of organizing research efforts.

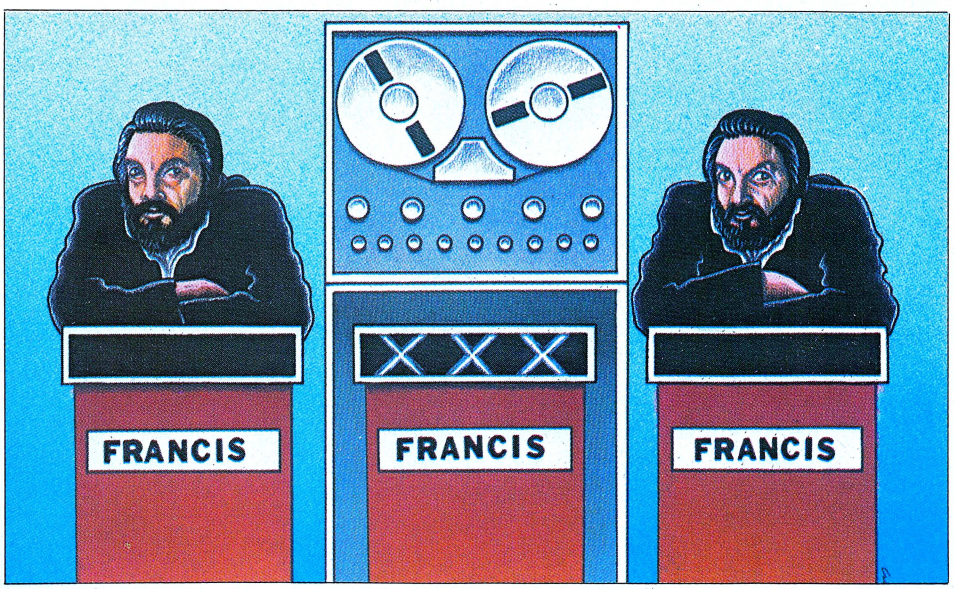
"The United States has tough antitrust laws that in the past have served to stifle cooperation between companies in research," observes Philip H. Abelson, the editor of *Science*. "In consequence, there is a tremendous waste of scarce resources of people and excessive duplication of effort in our industrial research. Companies often must rediscover the same phenomena.

"The Bell System and IBM are sufficiently big and entrenched that they are secure for at least a while. But smaller companies such as those in MCTC are unlikely to prosper in the longer term if they must go it alone."

Δ **Computer Minds.** There are two schools of thought on the development of thinking machines. The artificial intelligence *engineers* ask, why not develop mental tools, just as we develop physical tools, to help us accomplish things? The artificial intelligence *scientists* ask, why don't we try to understand what intelligence is about? Not just to make thinking machines, but to develop programs that behave intelligently, to understand better how the mind of man works.

The more popular engineering school wants to replace the mind with a machine that does the job better. The scientific school, in the minority, wants to explore the mind with a machine. So the scientific school is breaking down the mental process of discovery into programming attempts at re-creating the logic of the mind.

One of these programs is *Wok*, developed as part of a research project at Yale University. *Wok* works much the way an enterprising chef would. When a dish requires an ingredient not on hand, such as chicken, *Wok* juggles ingredients and spices to come up with an alternative, such as pork. Researchers say some of *Wok*'s concoctions "don't taste too bad."

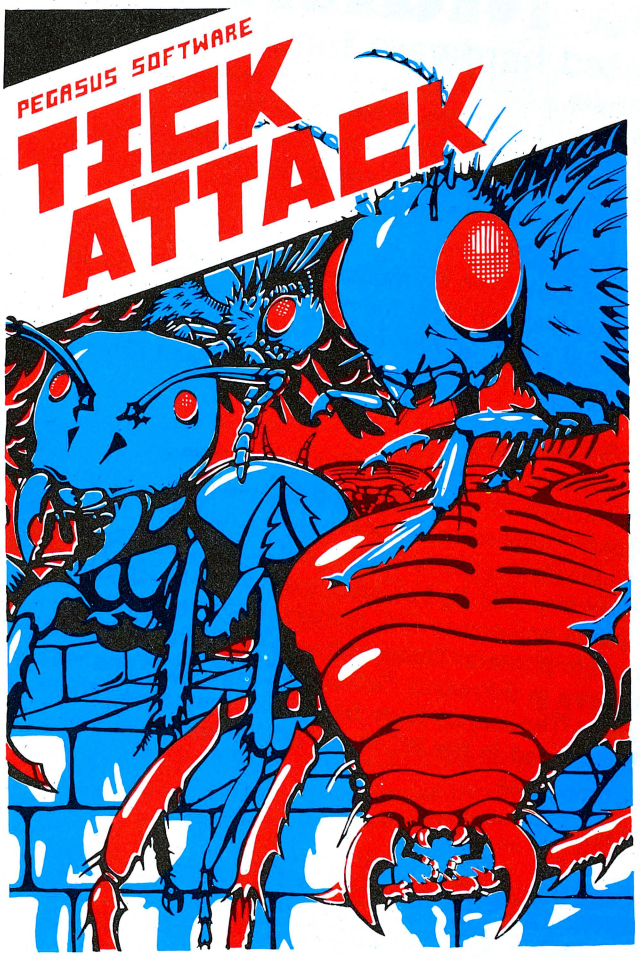


Another program, called *Bacon*, is a time-sharing mainframe project at Carnegie-Mellon University in Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania, under the supervision of Herbert Simon, a pioneer in artificial intelligence research. Simon contends that we don't know enough yet to replicate the human thinking process.

"We're still very far from having any single program that has the range of knowledge that a normal human being would carry around," he says.

Bacon demonstrates human-style creativity and problem-solving. If given the basic information available to the astronomer Johannes Kepler, *Bacon* can come up with Kepler's Third Law, which relates the distance between a planet and a sun to the time it takes the planet to orbit that sun. It can also sift through data and discover Ohm's law, which defines the relationship between resistance, voltage, and current in a circuit.

Bacon, which is programmed in Lisp,



"TICK ATTACK"
an
Arcade Style
Machine Language
Game

Featuring Superior
Graphics
Animation
Sound

4 Skill Levels
25 Frames per Skill Level

Minimum Requirements
IBM-PC*
1 Disk Drive
Color Graphics Card

Optional Joystick

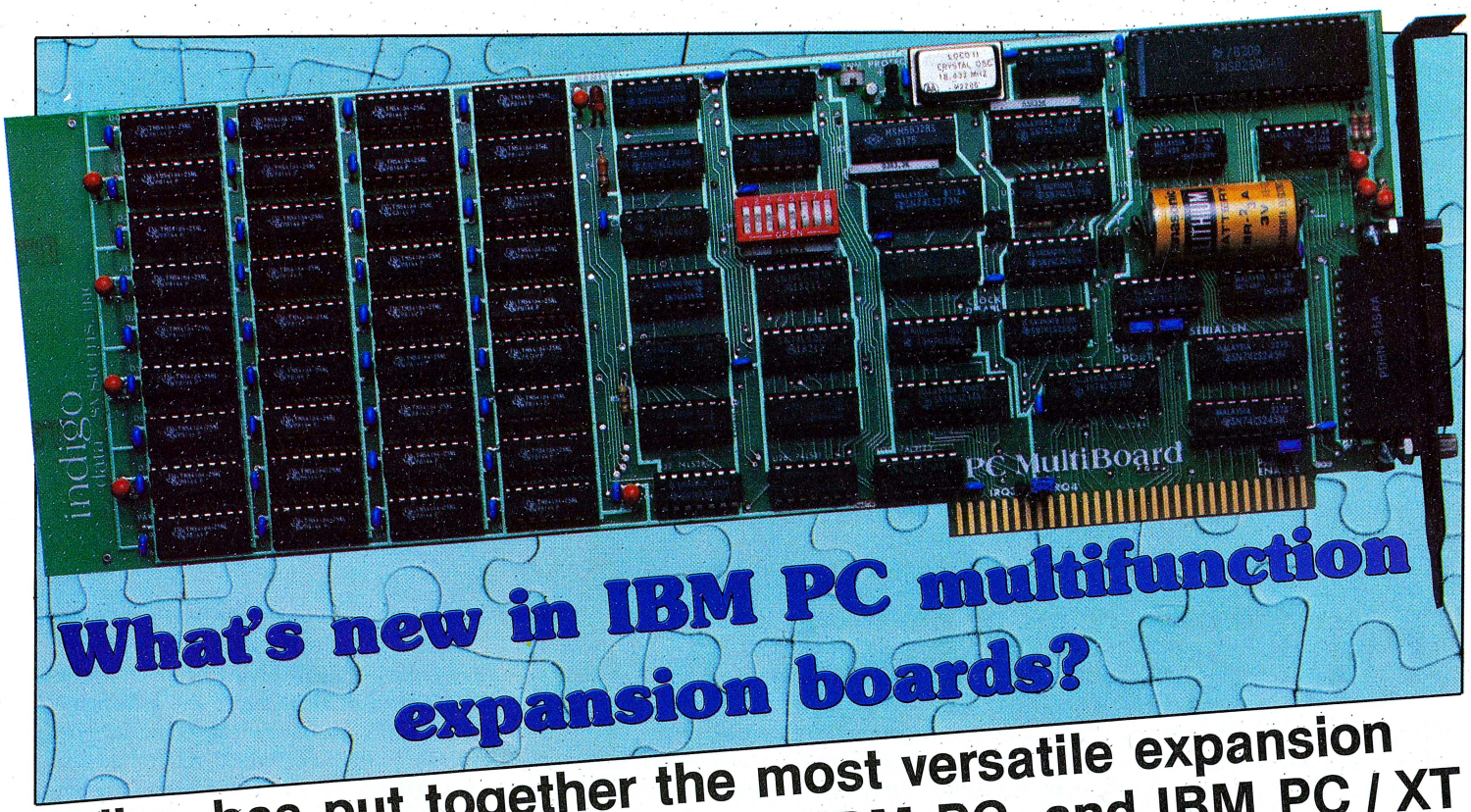
$19.95

At your local computer store or order direct from:

Pegasus Software
8525 N. Lamar Suite 254
Austin, TX 78753

Add $1.50 for shipping and handling.

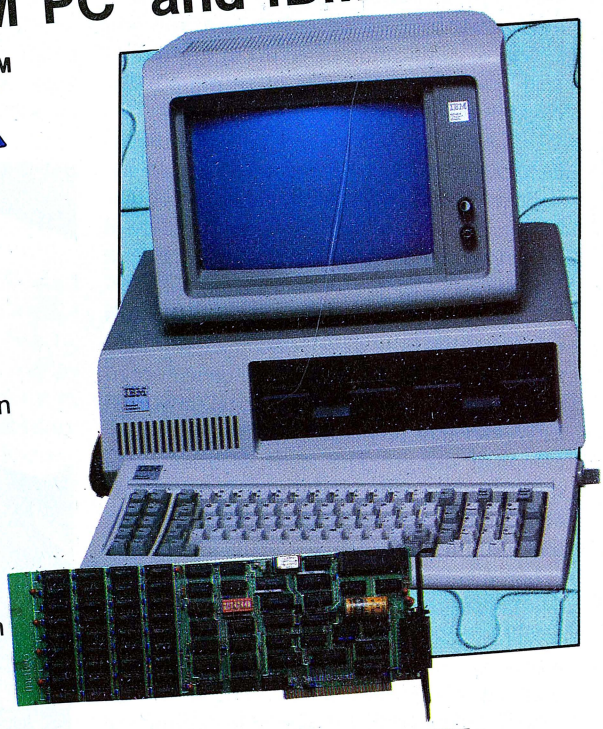
*IBM is a trademark of International Business Machines.



What's new in IBM PC multifunction expansion boards?

Indigo has put together the most versatile expansion product available for the new IBM PC and IBM PC / XT

the PC MultiPak™



- **4 most requested hardware functions**
  The PC MultiPak™ includes a serial communications port, a real time clock calendar with a 10 year lithium battery, 0 to 256K memory and optional parallel printer port. The PC MultiPak™ without the parallel printer port is ideal for users with the IBM monochrome/parallel printer adapter installed.
- **Zero memory option**
  The PC MultiPak™ is available with no memory installed so you can fill your I / O needs today and still have memory expansion capability to an additional 256K for your future needs. This makes the PC MultiPak™ the perfect mate for the new IBM PC and IBM PC / XT.
- **4 software packages**
  The PC MultiPak™ includes our four most popular software packages. **Drive-It™** converts 32K to 320K of extra memory into an ultra-fast drive. **Spool-It™** utilizes up to 64K of extra memory as a printer buffer and eliminates valuable time spent waiting on the printer. **Print-It™** prints any IBM text or graphics screen to Epson printers. **Color-It™** prints screens to IDS printers. Color images can be printed on IDS prism printers. These software programs have received critical acclaim in Infoworld, Softalk, PC Age and Creative Computing magazines. Thousands have been sold separately. This $200 retail value is included in the PC MultiPak™ at no additional charge. DOS 2.0 Compatible.
- **5 year warranty**

$297

- ALL SOFTWARE INCLUDED
- NO INSTALLED MEMORY

64K-$365, 128K-$432, 192K-$499, 256K-$565
PARALLEL PORT OPTION ADD $30
64K MEMORY EXPANSION KIT $87
SOFTWARE AVAILABLE SEPARATELY
DRIVE-IT $59.95, **SPOOL-IT** $44.95
PRINT-IT $44.95, **COLOR-IT** $49.95

Indigo products may be found at **ComputerLand** and other fine stores.
Dealer And Customer Inquiries call TOLL FREE 1-800-231-9480
In Texas Call Collect (713) 488-8186

indigo data systems, inc.
100 E. NASA Rd. 1, Suite 106, Webster, Texas 77598

isn't intended merely to replicate what people have already discovered. Researchers use it to look for heuristics—rules of thumb in the relationships between numeric variables.

"*Bacon* doesn't have a picture in its mind," says Patrick Langeley, a grad student on the project. "But it can come up with a concept." Langeley did his thesis on the program. "We want to find the law that summarizes the given data, and we direct the search down specific paths," until a total comprehension of the input is reached by the program.

Another program, also developed at Yale, mimics the knowledge of former secretary of state Cyrus Vance. When *Cyrus* was asked, "When did your wife meet Begin's wife?" it replied, "At a state dinner in Israel in January 1980."

Cyrus's answer is historically correct. What makes it significant is that *Cyrus* was not programmed with information on wives, only on state dinners. According to Dr. Janet Kolodner, who developed it, the program went through a multistep reasoning process to come up with the answer. First it determined that the women would have met at a social event, then it decided that the event would have to have been of a political nature.

"Since it knows about state dinners, it narrowed in on that," says Kolodner, who hopes to develop a world affairs expert program capable of offering political advice.

Computers can manipulate artificial structures just as people can. No problem. The challenge in artificial intelligence projects like *Wok*, *Bacon*, and *Cyrus* is in designing a system of common sense that both computers and human beings can use.

Δ **Psychology Today.** For the past two to three years, psychologists and patients alike have reaped the benefits of the automated cotherapist. In our rapidly evolving information society, some psychologists think that patients are less inhibited giving information to a computer than to the psychologist.

Dr. J. Fred Hurst of Boise, Idaho, has been using the Psychometer 3000 for a year now. Hurst says he chose this system mainly for its versatility, adding that the computer saves the clinician and the patient both time and money.

A variety of psychological tests come on disk with the Psychometer 3000. The computer administers, scores, and interprets the tests. It also prints out test results, including case interpretations.

The patient interacts directly with the computer. Since the computer's keyboard is designed for very simple patient responses such as yes, no, don't know, and help (in case the patient needs further instruction), the confusion and complexity of the usual computer keyboard is eliminated.

The Psychometer compares the patient's answers to those given in thousands of other cases before making its analysis. There is less chance of biased results, according to Hurst.

"However," Hurst admits, "whenever a human interpretation is made, even of numbers, we still have some subjective input. We want to minimize that subjective input so that our interpretation is as objective as humanly possible.

"Reliability is the most expensive thing we have to deal with, and that's what we strive for," Hurst explains. "A computer helps us achieve that more rapidly and in a much more objective way."

Although the Psychometer 3000 is doing some of the same work formerly done by the psychologist, Hurst stresses that the machine in no way lessens the importance of the clinician. By relieving the psychologist of the tedious, time-consuming tasks of administering tests and generating attendant paperwork, the computer allows more time for creative human interaction with the patient. According to Hurst, before the computer was available, the preparation of test results alone took about four hours. Now, with the aid of the Psychometer 3000, test results are analyzed and ready for use in about ten minutes.

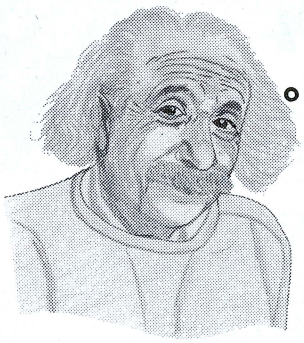
Included with Hurst's Psychometer 3000 system are a printer, psychological-testing software, and software for word processing and billing. His package also includes an optional keyboard for programming and a remote portable assessment terminal (PAT).

The PAT 100, about the size of a backgammon game and weighing around two pounds, is easily transported, thereby enabling Hurst to make "house calls." The portable unit holds from five to ten tests. Test data can then easily be transferred by modem into the main computer for processing.

Hurst says that the computerized testing through the portable terminal is also helpful in preparing for court cases. It enables him to conduct tests immediately prior to giving courtroom testimony, thereby presenting the most recent data possible.

In reference to the use of computers in psychology, Hurst says, "There are new tests being programmed for this particular unit, and I think we're going to see that this whole computerized psychological-testing approach is going to expand. How far is limited only by the imagination."

Dr. Thomas McDonald, a psychologist at Transition Associates in San Diego, California, agrees that computers are playing an important role in the behavioral sciences. However, McDonald feels that they could



Hmmm...Now let me see... On which diskette did I put that theory on relativity?

Unfortunately, Professor Einstein didn't have the advantage of owning an IBM† Personal Computer. Too bad, because he could have used LIBBY to quickly locate the diskette that contained his famous theory.

LIBBY is a program developed by Advanced PC Systems which organizes your ever-growing collection of diskettes.

When you first use LIBBY, it will quickly scan the directory on each of your diskettes and construct a sorted master list of all directory filenames. This master list can then be saved on a diskette and presented on the display or output to your printer.

LIBBY'S most *useful* feature, however, is its ability to find what you want. You can direct LIBBY to perform a high-speed search of the master list to locate the diskette that contains the file or program you want. But, what if you forgot the *exact* filename? No problem! LIBBY will use any part of the filename you do remember to help you find what you want.

Minimum System Requirements for LIBBY:
- IBM-PC DOS or MS-DOS
- 48K-byte RAM
- 80-column video display

Price: $49.95 Includes User's Guide and shipping in USA. California residents add 6.5% sales tax.

To Order: Send check to Advanced PC Systems, 608 Lisa Way, Campbell, CA 95008

VISA or MasterCard customers call free information number: (408) 243-1925

VISA

Advanced PC Systems

MasterCard

†IBM is a trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

play a much bigger part, given the opportunity.

"We need to get more accustomed to using them instead of being threatened by them," says McDonald. "Working with computers is a partnership, and we professionals are the ones who are falling short, not the computers. Once we realize that they are only tools, I think they will be used on a much wider scale in the field of psychology."

Δ **Coming Attractions.** Last summer, moviegoers were treated to several Hollywood films that either were produced with the aid of computers or featured computers in the story.

Star Trek II: The Wrath of Khan featured gorgeous computer-generated graphics created by George Lucas's special effects firm Industrial Light and Magic. *Blade Runner* also had fantastically intricate beautiful effects, and its high-tech subject matter made the film thought-provoking on a number of levels.

Tron tried harder than any other film to bring computers into films and the filmmaking process. Unfortunately, *Tron*'s failure to perform at the box office as predicted created some doubt in the minds of Hollywood producers about the true drawing power of the subject matter and the method. With its weak script and weak or nonexistent characters, *Tron* was simply a special effects showpiece, and it's not surprising that audiences stayed away. Up against such tough competition as *E.T.* and *Rocky III*, *Tron* needed more than just great special effects to be a success.

In the summer of 1983 expect to see a number of computer-generated and computer-related films. None of them will help you relocate DOS or, for that matter, tell you the difference between a Cray-1 and an Otrona Attache. But if you're into the summer movie scene, here are some films to be on the lookout for.

Blue Thunder, from Columbia, stars Roy Scheider as a Vietnam vet and helicopter ace hired by the Los Angeles Police Department to thwart terrorism during the 1984 Olympics. A secret government agency equips Scheider with Blue Thunder, a supercopter equipped with the latest in computer surveillance technology. Scheider can eavesdrop electronically or use a thermographic scope to look through walls. If necessary, the helicopter can fire four thousand rounds per minute or resort to its six 20mm cannons. Not surprisingly, Scheider ends up battling the government, not terrorists.

Superman III, from Warner's, once again finds Christopher Reeve portraying the Man of Steel. This time around he falls for Lana Lang (Annette O'Toole) and battles a master criminal (Robert Vaughn, who else?) who has enlisted computer genius Richard Pryor in a plot to acquire immeasurable wealth and power. Much of the film's action occurs in Vaughn's hideout, dubbed the Computer Cave. Superman eventually comes up against the Ultimate Computer, which tries to trap him with an energy web, among other things.

Android is a low-budget effort starring Klaus Kinski as a slightly loony scientist. Kinski's experiments with sophisticated robots attract the nefarious attention of intergalactic convicts. It's played mainly for laughs.

Tin Man stars Timothy Bottoms, Deana Jurgens, and "Osgood" the computer. The ad line for this one reads, "His world was silent. His love was computers. . . . Until he met her."

Crosstalk is an Australian film focusing on a man who develops a supercomputer when confined to his apartment by an accident. Mysteriously, his work leads him into a vortex of murder and technological horror.

Films that will most likely include computer-generated effects are *Return of the Jedi* (Fox), *Something Wicked This Way Comes* (Disney), *Twilight Zone* (Warner's), and *Space Hunter: Adventures in the Forbidden Zone* (Columbia), the latter in 3-D. There's a good chance that both James Bond films, *Octopussy* (MGM-UA) and *Never Say Never Again* (Warner's), will have computers involved in the action.

Network TV is also getting into the computer scene. Look for an as-yet-untitled pilot from Paramount about a couple of guys in the computer biz. One of them is a nerd who creates new concepts. Paramount Television president Gary Nardino says, "It's like a Martin and Lewis relationship, but much warmer."

Also, CBS is planning a pilot and hoping to do a series called *Whiz Kids*. The pilot centers on "young computer geniuses," one of whom finds out how to use his personal computer to gain access to a large computer containing the transactions of an influential land developer. Something looks suspicious to the young hacker and the game is afoot.

Δ **Bowie and the Clash Headline Fest.** The 1983 Us Festival returns to Glen Helen Regional Park in San Bernardino, California, on May 28-30 and June 4.

Once again music is taking the media spotlight; Steve Wozniak's Unuson organization has announced a strong lineup of new wave and heavy metal/rock bands for the first three days, and a solid day of country-western music acts is scheduled for June 4. Nonetheless, Unuson and Wozniak have made clear that this year's technology fair

PODLASERIUM™

NEW VERSION 2.0

We are pleased to announce the release of the most exciting and challenging arcade game ever written for the IBM PC, PODLASERIUM Version 2.0.

The ideas for the improvements are not our own, but those of the purchasers and reviewers of versions 1.0, 1.1, and 1.2. We called and listened to a large number of users, took the best ideas, and created a game that even the programmer who wrote it can't beat!

In fact.....

If you are the first person to obtain a FINAL SCORE greater than 49,999 **we'll send you a cashiers check worth $50.00** (fifty U.S. dollars).

If you are the first person to obtain a FINAL SCORE greater than 99,999 **we'll send you a cashier's check worth $100.00** (one hundred U.S. dollars).

VERSION 2.0 FEATURES....

- Aliens deposit PODs at a rate ten times faster than in Version 1.2.
- The POD MISSLE so easily avoided before, is a deadly menace that must constantly be reckoned with.
- Squadrons of Alien Raider Ships attempt to steal your fuel as they cross hemispheric zones in varying numbers, differing directions, and changing speeds.
- You can fire up to five shots at the same time.
- More sounds, more color (on color monitors), more action.

Will your name be added to the permanent list of Top Ten Combatants? The universe must be saved!

DOES NOT REQUIRE COLOR GRAPHICS MONITOR ADAPTER INTERFACE

IBM PC DOS, 1 Drive, 80 Col. Display

NOTE: Purchasers of earlier versions, send your original diskette along with $1.50 for postage and handling and we'll send you PODLASERIUM Version 2.0 FREE!

SOUND ON/OFF, GAME FREEZE Commands, True Auto-Play Mode

SEND TO: DP COMPUTER SERVICES CO. • 5019 N. Washington Blvd.
Arlington, Virginia 22205 • (703) 276-1333

Please send me _____ diskette(s) containing PODLASERIUM

☐ I have enclosed a check or money order for $_____ . _____ for _____ diskette(s) at $34.95 each.

☐ Please send shipment C.O.D. ☐ Charge my Mastercard/Visa (circle) MC VISA

_____ Exp. Date _____

NAME _____ STREET _____

CITY _____ STATE _____ COUNTRY _____ ZIP _____

PHONE _____ SIGNATURE _____

PODLASERIUM is a trademark of DP Computer Services Co.

will be bigger than last year's.

Plans call for an expanded technology expo that includes information on career opportunities in technological fields. Wozniak himself is in charge of this portion of the '83 Us Festival; he's lining up representatives from different corporations to speak at the three-day fest.

This year's technology fair will feature a tent devoted to organizations embodying the Us Decade philosophies of "teamwork and pulling together." Neighborhood Watch and similar community-minded groups are good examples.

Unuson is hoping to have another two-way television transmission between the United States and the Soviet Union. "We're talking with them and they're interested, but nothing has been solidified," said a Unuson official. A two-way transmission with the People's Republic of China is also possible but has not yet been confirmed.

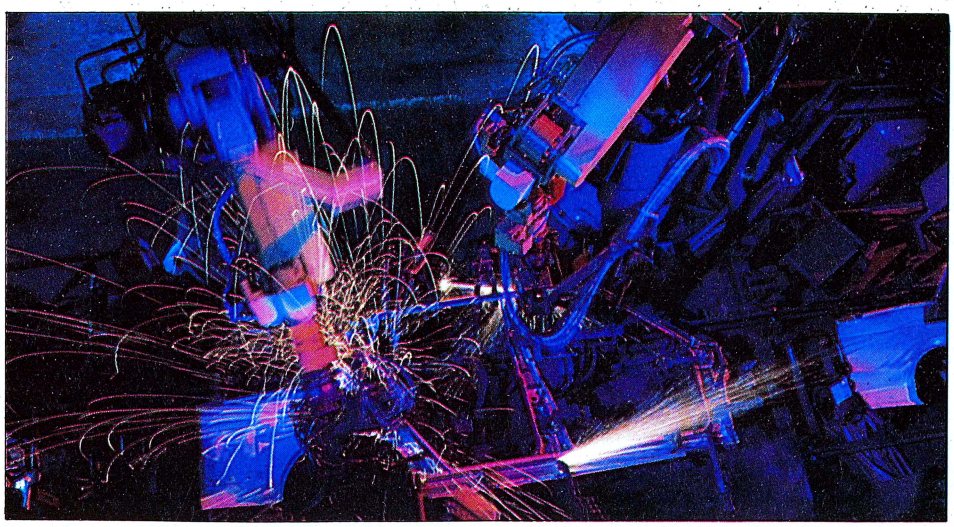
Those attending more than one day and using the adjoining campsites will be charged a nominal parking fee. The camping area will open at 8:00 p.m. on Friday, May 27. The next three days the schedule will be the same, the festival area gates opening at 8:00 a.m., with the career and technology expo opening at 10:00 a.m. The music on all three days will start at noon.

Δ **Roll Over, Tchaikovsky.** The makers of *Ballet Robotique* say their film is a short, space-age fantasy, "strictly a work of entertainment," as opposed to just another "industrial film." Directed by Bob Rogers, photographed by Reed Smoot, and made possible by a grant from GM, *Ballet Robotique* is a tasty gem, a zesty romp through a half dozen assembly plants across the country. It's eight minutes of graceful spray painting, dynamic die-casting, and warlike welding, starring the big boys, heavyweight industrial robots.

Nominated for an Academy Award in the Live Action Short Film category, *Ballet Robotique* is a well-crafted film that attempts to present industrial robots as something more than dumb machines and something less than R2D2 and C3P0. The film-makers have used evocative lighting and clever editing to endow the robots with personalities of a sort, in much the same way cartoons and animated films treat animals as almost human.

Ballet Robotique features more than a dozen different industrial robots performing their normal tasks; no special reprogramming was done for the film. Shooting in real auto plants, the film-makers had some control over the atmosphere, but interrupting normal operations on an assembly line was out of the question—too expensive (around six thousand dollars per minute).

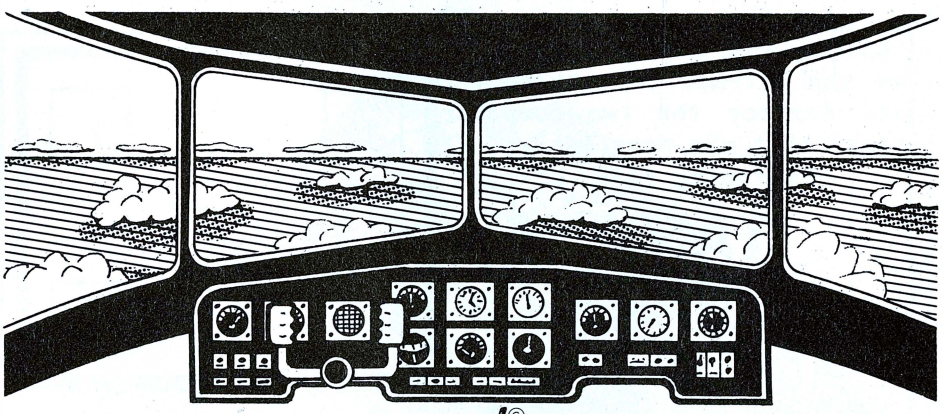
Still, the precise movements of the robots are tailor-made for synchronized editing to classical music, in this case that of Bizet, Delibes, and Tchaikovsky. When you watch the film, it seems as though the robots had to have been controlled by the film-makers, but such is the magic of the cinema. The subtle color schemes and murky atmosphere of the film were often manipulated by Rogers and Smoot for a desired effect—cinema magic of a different kind.



The result is great fun. "In the dark abyss, deep blue swirls of smoke curl up from the depths below," said Rogers in a recent *American Cinematographer* article on the making of *Ballet Robotique*. "An eerie red glow emanates from within the blackness. Suddenly the gleaming silver arms of the robots rear up and plunge forward, shooting sparks that leap and pirouette in arcs of fire. Spitting sparks, breathing smoke, they crackle as they plunge again and again to attack."

Ballet Robotique climaxes with huge welding robots sending showers of sparks flying in time with Tchaikovsky's *1812* Overture. Rogers and Smoot tried to make it look like a laser battle in outer space.

Your chances of seeing this film in a local



Flight-Command© puts YOU in the cockpit!

A Software Program for IBM-PC*

Experience a whole family of flight simulators in one package:

- Cessna 150
- Pitts Special
- P-51 Mustang
- F-14 Tomcat
- Boeing 747
- Concorde

Flight-Command© requires 80 column display and 64K RAM, PC DOS, BASICA

$49.95 including instructions

Lighthouse distributing

P.O. Box 10938 Bainbridge Island, WA 98110
206-842-5557

*IBM-PC is a reg. T.M. of IBM Corp.

As pilot in command you will:

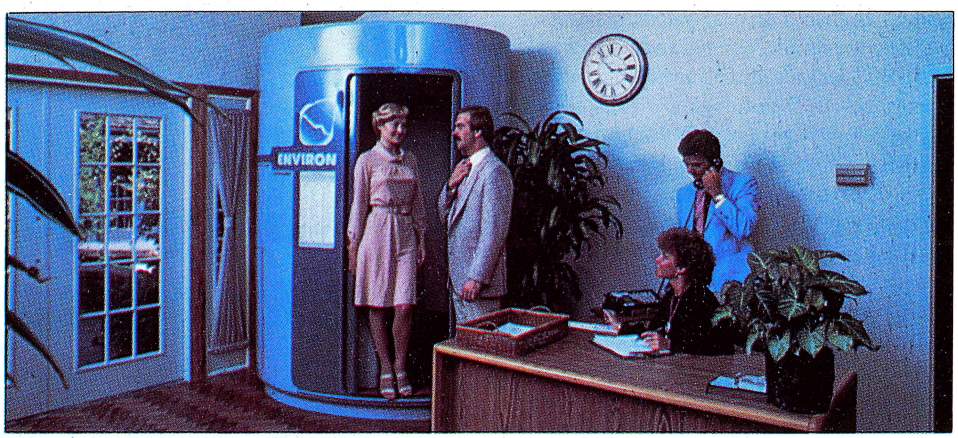
- taxi around airport
- get weather and tower information on the radio
- watch yourself on airport radar
- practice aerobatic skills
- use Autopilot to navigate the globe in a few minutes of real time
- use all controls: throttle, elevator, rudder, ailerons, flaps and brakes
- analyze your performance with flight recorder data from your printer

Washington residents add 6.5% sales tax

Name _____
Address _____
City, State, Zip _____
Amount enclosed _____
☐ MC ☐ VISA # _____ Exp. date ____

theater are slim at best. Even with an Academy Award nomination, *Ballet Robotique* is one of countless short films you always hear about and never see. It deserves wider exposure. Currently, *Ballet Robotique* is being distributed by Pyramid Film & Video of Santa Monica, California. You can purchase or rent a 16mm print or videocassette of the film at a reasonable price.

Those interested in robots, whether their jobs are threatened by one or not, will discover that *Ballet Robotique* is definitely not a "typical industrial film."



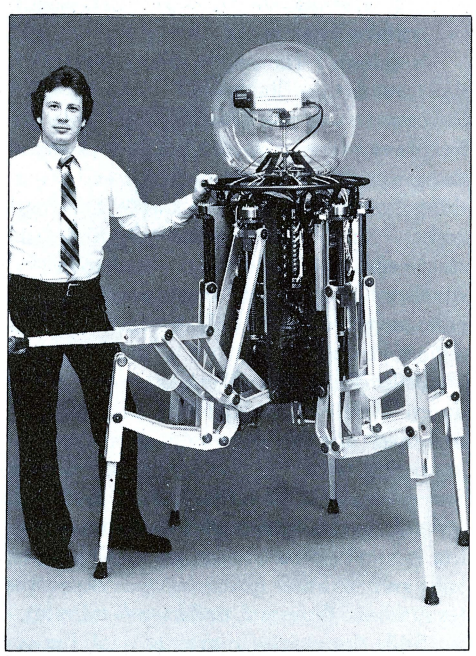
Δ Step in, Close Your Eyes, Kick Back, and Unwind. Stress in the working environment, particularly the modern office environment, is a problem that Environ of El Toro, California, is attempting to alleviate with a microprocessor-controlled, telephone-boothlike contraption. Called an Environ Personal Retreat, the pale, smokestack-shaped, soundproof enclosure is ninety-two inches high, seventy-seven inches long, and forty-eight inches wide. The retreat is equipped with a low-friction sliding door, exterior and interior graphics (no video or CRT screen, though) with optional color treatments, a ceiling-mounted color-generating unit, an air-purification system with multidirectional flow, atmospheric ionization, orthopedically designed body lounge, a digital pulse meter, and sound imaging. When the job gets to be too much, you simply enter the Environ Retreat, close the door, and play one of the many different programs. Users can listen to music, perform relaxation exercises, receive training, and concentrate on motivation and personal development. The lights, audio, and air quality can be controlled to provide the most relaxing and stress-reducing atmosphere. Environ believes that athletes preparing for a race or game could benefit from this product. The old psyching up could become the old hiding-out-till-the-last-minute. The company plans to start shipping product by midyear.

Δ But Can It Chew Gum at the Same Time? A month and a half ago, a small Anaheim, California-based company revealed a spectacular robot called the Odex I. Odetics spent two years developing what it calls a "functionoid," a six-legged, walking robot.

The idea was conceived eight years ago, and indeed the challenge of building a walking robot has beckoned roboticists for longer than that. Odex I is a truly revolutionary breakthrough in robot development, and it's not surprising that in the still-young robotics industry a small company like Odetics was the one to realize it.

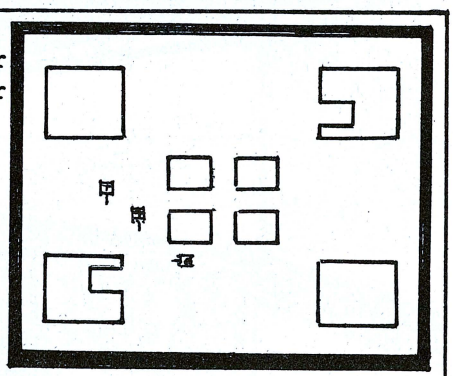
With its six "articulators," Odex I can traverse any terrain, maneuver through environments designed for human movement, climb up and over obstacles, support weights far greater than its own, and assume a number of different "profiles." Odex I is capable of six basic positions: tucked, tall, squat, normal, low profile, and narrow. The accompanying photo shows the Odex I in the normal, wide articulated position.

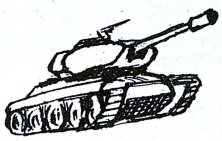
The Odex I weighs three hundred seventy pounds and can carry a maximum of one thousand pounds at its fastest speed and



Unique Free Moving Action as you attempt to outmaneuver and destroy the two computer tanks that are constantly pursuing you.

TANK ATTACK





$29.95

* Arcade Style Action
* Keyboard or Joystick
* Retains High Score
* Monochrome or Color
* Sound Efects
* Optional Quiet-Mode

Programmed especially for the PC. Compiled to Machine Language for fast interactive action and sound effects for enjoyment by all age levels. Display on Monochrome or in vivid color with an 80 column display monitor. Requires 64K, diskdrive, 80 column display.

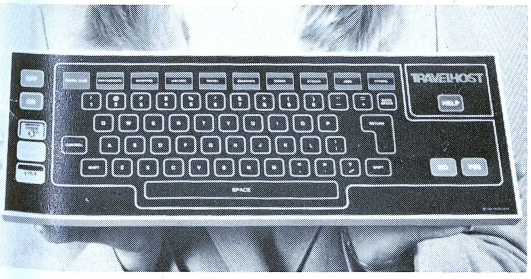
Send check or Money Order for $29.95 to:
GORE ENTERPRISES
104 Pine St., Suite 610, Abilene TX. 79601

eighteen hundred pounds at its slow speed. In its initial showing, Odex I climbed into the back of a pickup truck, climbed out again, and then picked up the back end of the truck and dragged it across the room.

The robot can be adapted for specific industrial applications which, according to Odetics, include mining, agriculture, space and sea exploration, security, surveillance, forestry, construction, material handling, nuclear-power-plant maintenance and repair, and military applications.

Δ **How To Avoid the Can't-Find-the-Movie-Section Blues.** A free videotex service called Buy-Phone has started up in West Los Angeles, California. Using standard 300-baud ASCII communications, personal computer users can access over ten thousand listings covering all kinds of consumer products, services, and entertainment. A user wanting to see a particular motion picture, for example, calls up Buy-Phone and the various theater locations are displayed in order of their distance from the user. Within Buy-Phone's database are over sixteen hundred restaurants, indexed by their nationality, ambiance, entertainment, and other features. Currently operational only in West Los Angeles, Buy-Phone has plans to expand into other areas soon. Buy-Phone can be reached by modem at (213) 474-0270.

Δ **Welcome to the Hotel Videotex.** Travelhost, based in Dallas, Texas, is bringing videotex technology to hotels around the country. Using a Travelhost terminal and a television set, hotel guests can send and receive electronic mail, shop, call up news and stock quotations, check airline schedules, and—you guessed it—play video games. The terminal has a membrane touch-panel keyboard and a built-in 300-baud modem, and is



capable of creating a forty-character-by-twenty-four-line color or black-and-white display on a VHF channel. Selected Hiltons, Sheratons, Holiday Inns, Howard Johnson's, and Ramada Inns have signed contracts with Travelhost.

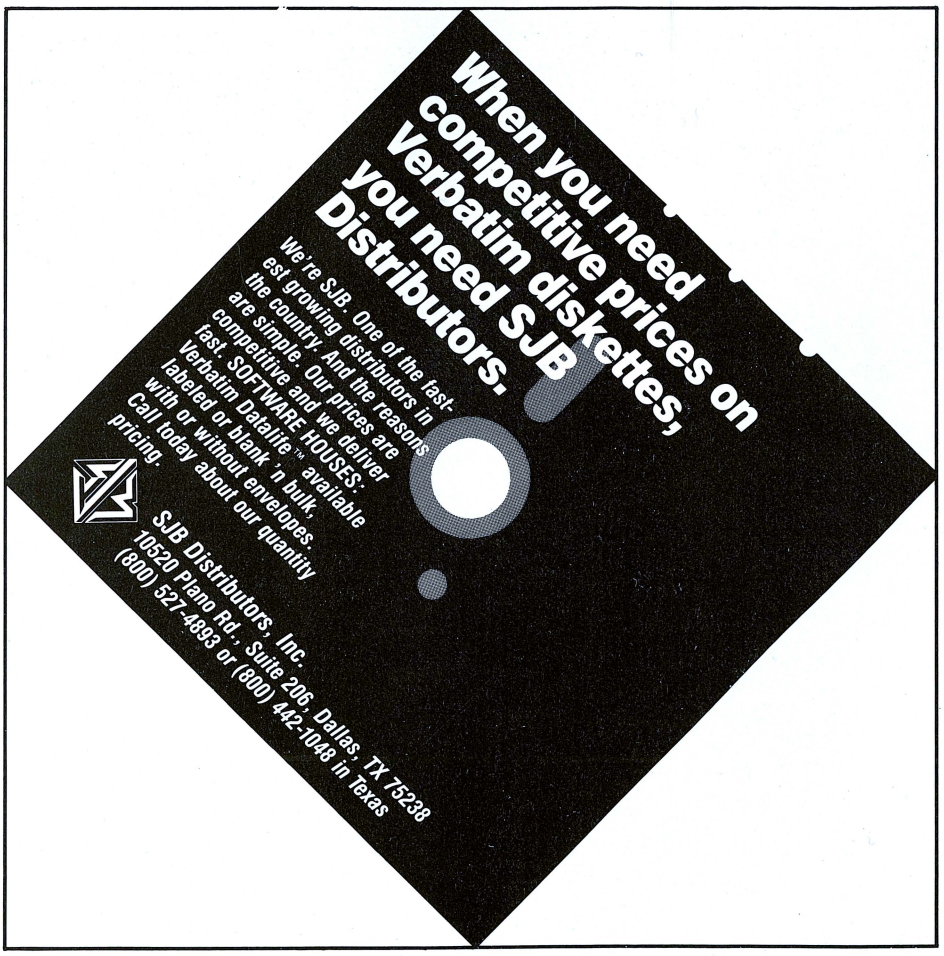
Δ **New Mag for Computers on the Move.** Miller Freeman Publications (San Francisco, CA) is offering a new computer magazine, *Portable Computer*. The name says it all. The premier issue had a listing of all the known portable computers currently available (about forty), as well as an interview with Adam Osborne, an article on how to make your Apple even more portable than it already is, and the usual news, tips, and advertising. The April/May issue of *Portable Computer* features articles on portables in the school, networking with portables, and portable terminals.

Δ **The Rumormonger Ruminates.** Does Luke Skywalker die? Is Princess Leia the "other"? Will the Jedi really fail to get their revenge on the evil empire? These and other questions will finally be answered on May 25, when *The Return of the Jedi* opens nationwide. The details are sketchy, but informed sources have it that the upcoming Pete Shelley album, *XXI*, is coded in computer language so that lyrics will appear when listeners play the record hooked up to a video screen. . . . The list of IBM's rumored upcoming products, including "Peanuts" and "Popcorn," has grown by one more. "Bon Bons" is the project name for a high-speed, chocolate-covered modem capable of transmitting data from a pc to a host computer before the ice cream melts. Company officials denied reports of an upcoming product called "Nachos"—a three-inch disk drive with salty triangular disks and optional melted cheese software. Post-April Fool.

Δ **NCC, Not Just a Mickey Mouse Affair.** The annual National Computer Conference (NCC) will be held in Anaheim May 16–19 at the Anaheim and Disneyland Hotel convention centers. This massive show features exhibits of computer products and services, technical sessions, and seminars.

The keynote address will be given at 9:30 a.m. on May 16 by John P. Imlay of Management Science America. Admission: $40 per day or $100 for all four days. The exhibits will be open from 10:00 a.m. to 6:00 p.m. the first three days and on the final day from 10:00 a.m. to 4:00 p.m.

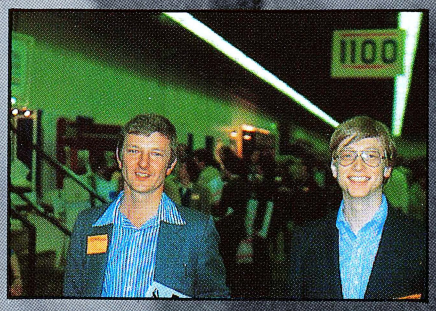
Δ **Tubular Computer Shopping Malls.** The computer industry will soon have its own version of the merchandise marts—industry markets, found in cities like Chicago and Dallas. Both the Pacific High Technology Trade Center and the California DataMart will be located in the San Francisco Bay Area. The Pacific center will be a four-hundred-thousand-square-foot computer "shopping mall," according to developer Ron Kaufman. The California DataMart will be located next to Showplace Square, a merchandise mart in San Francisco, and will start out occupying one hundred fifty thousand square feet with the option to expand to about five hundred thousand square feet. DataMart's developers, Bay West Development Company and Metropolitan Properties, project the cost for the small business computer mart to be $19 million. ▲



MICRO MADHOUSE

The Eighth West Coast Computer Faire

Above: An unidentified promoter hawked his new Commodore game. Below: Nancy Erickson (left) and Becky Rhines, of Persyst, enjoyed a moment of levity; Microsoft had no booth, but Jim Towne and Bill Gates assured the company's presence at the show; Softalk/IBM readers chose VisiCalc as their favorite program, and the award was accepted by Lisa Underkoffler of Software Arts and Dan Eylstra of VisiCorp.



The most interesting new pc product at the West Coast Computer Faire (March 18–20, San Francisco) was not actually on display at the Faire. Quadram wasn't quite ready for an official announcement of its Apple II emulation board, but it ferried a good many of the press and other industry "insiders" to a nearby hotel suite for a quick peek. And what was shown looked pretty interesting.

The board, which will carry a suggested retail tag of $680, combines a 6502 with 64K of memory, an Apple DOS 3.3 disk controller, a game port, and all the other circuitry required to make your pc behave like an Apple II. Quadram vice president Leland Strange says the only compatibility problems the firm has encountered have been with certain (not all) copy-protected Apple programs—and that some of the publishers of those programs are considering unprotecting their wares in return for an entree into the IBM market.

On the show floor itself there wasn't a lot that was exciting. Amdek had a new color/graphics adapter and a four-pen plotter; Quadram showed an RGB monitor in the $700 range that it hopes will compete effectively against IBM's new monitor; Lifetree demoed its international version of *Volkswriter*, and Continental Software previewed an appealingly designed file-management system called *Megafile*. IBM had upstaged itself by announcing the XT two weeks earlier, but the Faire gave many a first look at the company's hard disk and at DOS 2.0.

Attendance, of course, was up; is there any other direction in this industry? Faire promoter Jim Warren reported just under fifty thousand registrations. The hobbyist character of this show has diminished considerably over the last couple of years (although you can still buy chips and kits at some booths), but this is still the preeminent end-user exhibition of the year. More than ever, 1983's crowd seemed to include computer nonusers who were getting ready to take the big plunge.

There was also, compared to last year's show, an enormously swollen contingent of the pc faithful. No surprises there. One entire room on the upper level was devoted to IBM-related exhibits (a similar room down the hall was set aside for the Apple flock). But, of course, there was also plenty of pc stuff amongst the hoi polloi downstairs.

IBM itself dominated the IBM room. But Corona and Colby were there too, a couple of booths away. Expect to see a horde of pc-compatibles there next March. ▲

Clockwise from top: Fred Savoia represented Heigen Corporation's IBM PC Reference Encyclopedia; *a family from India were captivated by a new light pen; Kathie Hart (Plantronics/Frederick Electronics), Ted Gillam (TG Products), and Mike Farmer (Continental Software) entertained visitors to their respective booths; IBM's XT and new color monitor dominated a room reserved for pc-related products.*

This man uses the Data Factory.

The DATA FACTORY . . . will free you up, at the office or at home, *to do more important things.* The DATA FACTORY's sophisticated design allows you to save your information and make reports from your computer more easily, conveniently, reliably and flexibly. The DATA FACTORY's custom feature allows you to set up inputs and outputs any way or in any form you desire. Available in floppy disc or hard disc configurations on the Apple™, IBM™, Olivetti™ and CP/M™ systems.

Let the DATA FACTORY, the great time-saver from MicroLab, start simplifying your life, today.

micro lab

systems that work

Apple is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc.
IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.
Olivetti is a registered trademark of Docutel/Olivetti Corporation.
CP/M is a registered trademark of Digital Research,Inc.

softalk presents the bestsellers

The lesson about sales in March is taken from the first book of Apple, 1978: "Yea though you be but a single person, given determination and a good program, you can build a business writing software for microcomputers."

Everybody thought that lesson had been outdated when IBM entered the microcomputer marketplace. Sales in the early months were dominated by such relatively heavyweight software producers as VisiCorp, MicroPro, Microsoft, Sorcim, BPI, Peachtree, and Information Unlimited Software. Cottage software producers appeared to have about as much chance for survival in the IBM pc market as an Iowa farm boy in Boston's Combat Zone.

As it turns out, Horatio Alger is alive and well, living in Carmel Valley under the nom de plume of Camilo Wilson. The name stops you right away. Camilo invokes a Latin imagery of dashing derring-do, while Wilson has a stodgy English ring to it. When your own names seem to clash, what chance is there to beat the odds?

Even worse, the name of his company is Lifetree, a play on the names of Lifeboat and Peachtree. Again there's the internal personality clash. Lifeboat is a distributor while Peachtree is a publisher. So what you have here is a dashing, stodgy distributor-publisher. Is that a combination destined for failure? Are his chances even worse than the Goldwater-Miller ticket? Should he take up fandango dancing or stick to playing *Pong*?

None of the above, as it turns out. Wilson has parlayed his *Volkswriter* word processor into one of the top ten programs in the IBM market. In March it leapfrogged the *EasyWriters* to become *WordStar*'s main challenger.

That's no mean feat, considering *Volkswriter*'s modest beginnings and the nature of the competition. Last year, *Volkswriter* was that funny little program you could buy in isolated software stores that didn't have access to the main contenders. *WordStar* had 75 percent of the word processing market and the *EasyWriters* had the rest. The program had all the chances of a claimer in the Kentucky Derby.

But once in a blue moon, the 100-1 shot comes in. The National Weather Service has not announced a change in the color of Earth's satellite, but it must be imminent, because there in ninth place in March sits *Volkswriter*.

Other than *Volkswriter*'s surge, polling sales for March was monotonous. Everyone answered "1-2-3" to the question of what was selling best. The Lotus Development integrated software package has creamed the entire market, dominating in every area of the country.

What's surprising is that *1-2-3* hasn't had a truly adverse impact on any of the programs that looked vulnerable after its announcement. *VisiCalc* remains strong. *SuperCalc* and *Multiplan* actually gained some ground, so the spreadsheets weren't suffering.

Database programs weren't affected either. Ashton-Tate's *dBase II* remains a strong fifth in the market. *TIM III* took a slight slide while *VisiFile* gained some ground. Outside of the Top Thirty, *EasyFiler* showed signs of renewed life after being moribund since the first of the year. *Condor* and *Personal Data Base* are gaining some adherents.

MBA, the most direct competitor of *1-2-3*, continues to hold its own, although the initiative is clearly with Lotus's newer product.

Ironically, only *VisiTrend/VisiPlot* seems to have been victimized by *1-2-3*. It's dropped totally from view, but the continued strength of *VisiCalc* would seem to imply that it'll make a comeback. *Trend/Plot* was *1-2-3* designer Mitch Kapor's first microcomputer hit.

INVENTORY MANAGERS

DOES YOUR PRESENT SYSTEM PROVIDE YOU WITH THE INFORMATION YOU WANT WHEN YOU WANT IT AND IN THE FORMAT YOU WANT IT?

S.S.R.'s provided computerized business solutions for 13 yrs. We've learned what you need and we'll satisfy those needs with **INFOTORY™**. Our software utilizes all the flexibility and potential of the **IBM PC. INFOTORY™** provides you with a system that's **easy to learn and use,** that satisfies the requirements of **inventory accounting,** and most importantly, provides you with **information reporting capability** that **can't be provided manually** and isn't provided in any other computerized inventory system.

We accomplished this with **ANYREPORT™**, our unique reporting feature that **sets INFOTORY™ apart from any other system.** Using it, you can get:

- Quantities, amount sold, cost of sales by vendor, by product type, or even by key words like "green" or "5/8 inch" within the description (sect. green sofa or fitting 5/8 inch copper).
- Any data you want—in alphabetical, description, p/n, location, descending sales order, or in whatever order and with whatever data your purchasing function, accountant, warehouse or sales people need to perform their jobs better.
- Summarized sales and cost of sales information by product category, by vendor or by each item—MTD and YTD.

How long would it take you to sort through and list, in whatever order, your inventory items costing between $13.00 & $21.00, purchased from XYZ company, that have a gross profit of between 25% & 32%, that you have more than 10 of in stock? Use **ANYREPORT™**, walk away and the report's ready when you return. **This is only one of the many benefits of ANYREPORT™.**

To learn more about the many benefits that **INFOTORY™** can bring to your business, **give us a call or stop in at your nearest dealer.**

S.S.R. Corp.
1600 Lyell Avenue
Rochester, NY 14606
[716] 254-3200

Anytime Support

The winter doldrums continue to plague entertainment software. Most titles dropped a few notches and *Microsoft Decathlon* sank out of sight. *Microsoft Flight Simulator* remains the premier entertainment title. FriendlySoft's *PC Introductory Set* jumped over *PC Man*, while Infocom's three entries, *Zork I*, *Zork II*, and *Deadline*, dipped but remained on the list. FriendlySoft's new *PC Arcade* was arriving in stores in the middle of April and drawing raves. Infocom's new *Suspended* should follow shortly.

Biggest jumps among the Top Thirty were *Asynchronous Communications Support 2.0*, going from twenty-fourth to tenth, and Microsoft's *Typing Tutor*, going from thirtieth to twelfth.

New entries included *The Word Plus*, the first spelling program to crack the bestsellers, *PFS:Report*, and *The Instructor*.

March was the first month in which the number of titles mentioned by retailers remained stable. Whether that reflects a lull before a raft of new introductions or a stagnancy in the IBM pc market remains to be discovered.

But the example of Camilo Wilson should strike responsive chords in the hearts of software entrepreneurs everywhere, eventually leading to a wider choice for pc owners. ▲

IBM Personal Computer sales outlets representing approximately 4.1 percent of all sales of pc and pc-related products volunteered to participate in the poll.

Respondents were contacted early in April to ascertain their sales for the month of March.

The only criterion for inclusion on the list was the number of units sold—such other criteria as quality of product, profitability to the computer store, and personal preference of the individual respondents were not considered.

Respondents in April represented every geographical area of the continental United States.

Results of the responses were tabulated using a formula that resulted in the index number to the left of the program name in the Top Thirty listing. The index number is an arbitrary measure of relative strength of the programs listed. Index numbers are correlative only to the month in which they are printed; readers cannot assume that an index rating of 50 in one month represents equivalent sales to an index number of 50 in another month.

Probability of statistical error is plus or minus 5.2 percent, which translates roughly into the theoretical possibility of a change of 5.21 points, plus or minus, in any index number.

PC WIZARDS . . .

CAN BE YOURS, ORDER TODAY!

1) MATH TUTOR (48 K, 1 Drive) $39 ☐
- Musical, Colorful, Animated Math Games and Drills
- Many Skill Levels, Motivational Scoring (Age 6 and Up)

2) EZ CONVERTER (48 K, 1 Drive) $29 ☐
- US - English - Metric Systems
- Conversion For All Possible Uses

3) MAIL MASTER* (48 K, 2 Drives) $59 ☐
- Up To 1000 Names. Easy To Add, Change, Delete, Display (Fast!)
- Show/Print Mail Labels By Zip, Name Or Company

4) RECORD KEEPER* (48 K, 1 Drive) $59 ☐
- Track Personal and Financial Records (Documents, Properties, Taxes, Investments...)
- Helpful Screen Formats and Useful Print Reports

5) MONEY PLANNER* (48 K, 1 Drive) $59 ☐
- Net Worth Reporting, Family Budgeting
- Financing, Investing
- Easy To Use and To Update
- No Knowledge Required

SAVE $100.00 NOW!

ALL 5 WIZARDS FOR ONLY $155.00

SEND CHECK OR MONEY ORDER TO:

SYSTECH

*ACCESS PROTECTED BY YOUR PERSONAL CODE

5410 Baylor Drive
Bartlesville, OK 74003
Or Call
(918) 333-9693

master charge VISA

NO CREDIT CARD SURCHARGE

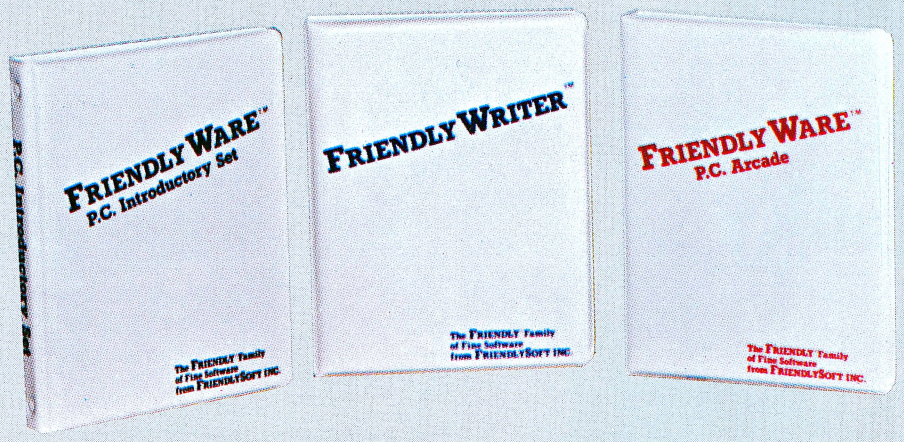
● DEALER INQUIRIES WELCOME ● DEMO AVAILABLE $10/EACH OR $30/ALL ●

SYSTECH

the top thirty

This Month	Last Month	Index	
1.	1.	288.15	**1-2-3,** Mitch Kapor and Jonathan Sachs; Lotus Development
2.	2.	124.38	**WordStar;** MicroPro
3.	3.	98.47	**VisiCalc,** Software Arts/Dan Bricklin and Robert Frankston; VisiCorp, IBM
4.	4.	92.25	**Microsoft Flight Simulator,** Bruce Artwick; Microsoft
5.	5.	76.70	**dBase II,** Wayne Ratcliff; Ashton-Tate
6.	11.	73.59	**Multiplan,** Microsoft; IBM
7.	9.	61.15	**Home Accountant Plus,** Mike Farmer, Bob Schoenburg, Larry Grodin, and Steve Pollack; Continental Software
8.	7.	59.08	**SuperCalc;** Sorcim
9.	19.	49.75	**Volkswriter,** Camilo Wilson; Lifetree
10.	24.	43.53	**Asynchronous Communications Support 2.0;** IBM
11.	6.	40.42	**EasyWriter II,** Basic Software Group; Information Unlimited Software
12.	30.	37.31	**Typing Tutor,** Michael Sierchio (Dick Ainsworth and Al Baker); IBM (Microsoft)
13.	11.	36.28	**FriendlyWare PC Introductory Set,** Michael D. Yaw, James J. Davis, Frank Smith, Alan Vanchura, John Leatherwood, and Bruce W. Moore; FriendlySoft
14.	13.	33.17	**PFS:File,** John Page and D. D. Roberts; IBM (Software Publishing Corporation)
15.	10.	32.13	**PC Man,** Greg Kuperberg; Orion
16.	18.	26.95	**General Ledger,** George Shackelford; State of the Art
17.	14.	25.91	**General Accounting,** John Moss and Ken Debower; IBM (BPI)
18.	14.	23.84	**Zork I;** Infocom
19.	7.	21.77	**EasyWriter 1.1,** John Draper; IBM (Information Unlimited Software)
20.	28.	20.73	**VisiFile,** Creative Computer Applications/ Colin Jameson and Ben Herman; VisiCorp
21.	—	19.69	**The Word Plus,** Wayne Holder; Oasis Systems
	—	19.69	**Basic Compiler,** Microsoft; IBM
23.	19.	17.62	**Deadline;** Infocom
	26.	17.62	**MBA;** Context Management Systems
25.	19.	16.58	**Norton Utilities,** Peter Norton; Peter Norton Inc.
	23.	16.58	**Zork II;** Infocom
	16.	16.58	**TIM III;** Innovative Software
28.	24.	15.55	**General Ledger,** Peachtree; IBM (Peachtree)
29.	26.	12.44	**PC Tutor,** Lora Meise and Rick Lane; Comprehensive Software Support
	—	12.44	**PFS:Report,** John Page; IBM (Software Publishing Corporation)
	—	12.44	**The Instructor,** Jo-L Hendrickson; Individual Software

There are three good reasons why we're called "one of the fastest growing software companies in the business"



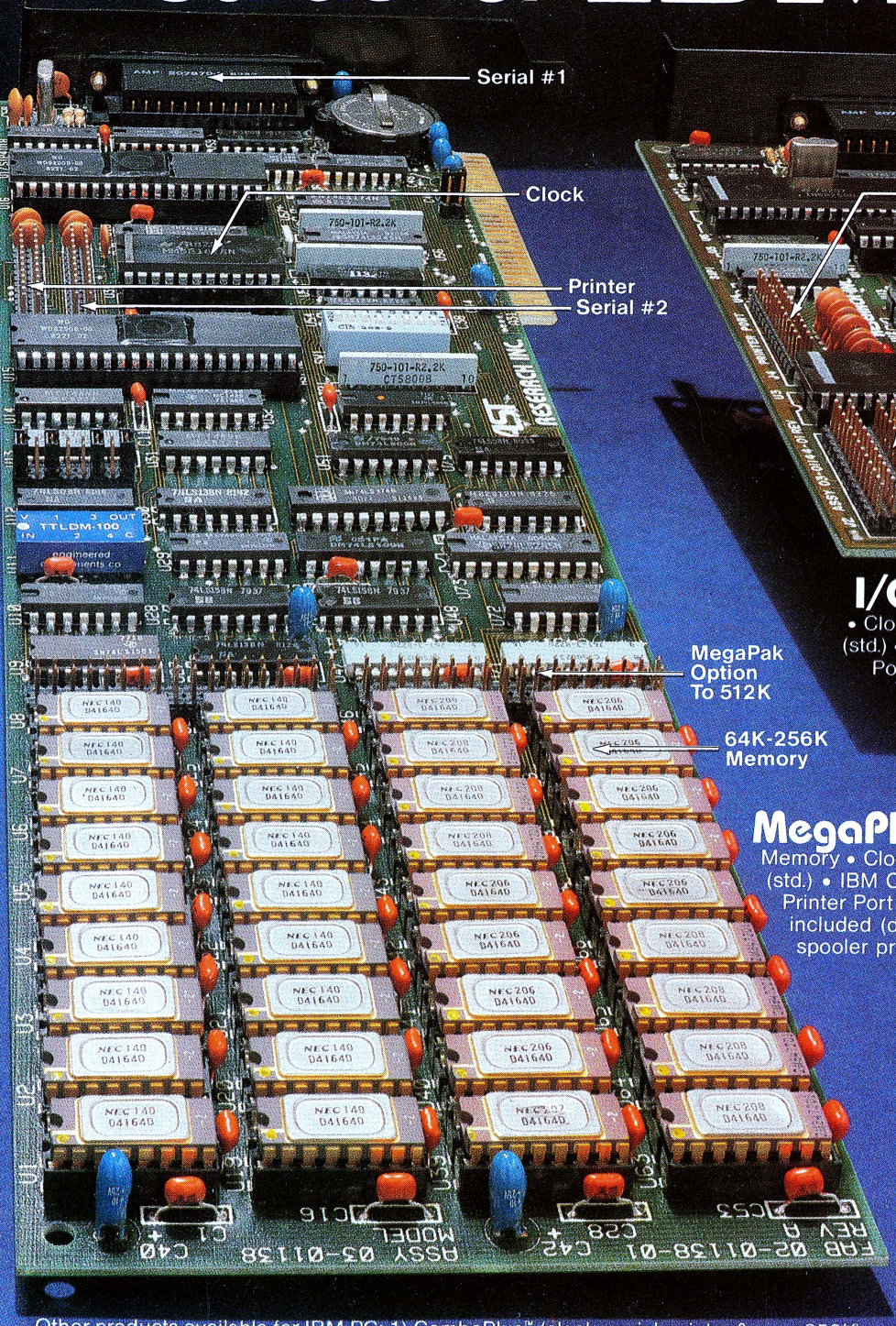
FRIENDLYSOFT, INC.

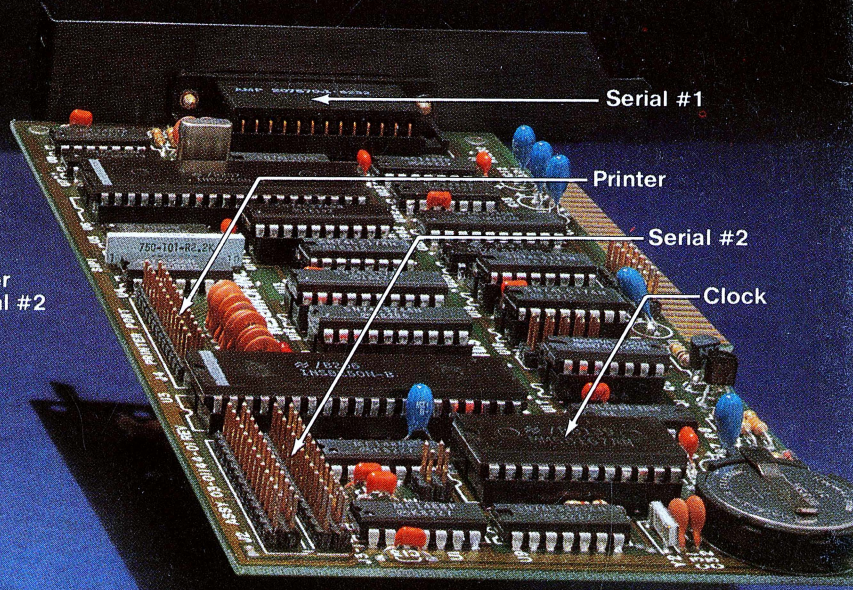
ARLINGTON, TEXAS

Producers of innovative, quality software products
EXCLUSIVELY for the IBM Personal Computer

All FriendlySoft products are available through an international network of dealers including COMPUTERLAND STORES, IBM PRODUCT CENTERS, COMPU-SHOPS, ENTRE COMPUTER CENTERS and a growing list of independent software dealers.

The Ultimate Add-On Cards for IBM® PC.





I/O Plus™ *Maximum 6 Functions (no memory)* • Clock Calendar (std.) • IBM Compatible Async Port #1 (std.) • IBM Compatible Async Port #2 (opt.) • IBM Printer Port • SuperDrive (disk emulator prog.) • SuperSpool (print spooler prog.)

MegaPlus™ *Maximum 8 Functions* • 64K-512K* Parity Memory • Clock Calendar (std.) • IBM Compatible Async Port #1 (std.) • IBM Compatible Async Port #2 (opt.) • IBM Compatible Printer Port (opt.) • *512K with MegaPak™ option • SuperDrive included (disk emulator prog.) • SuperSpool included (print spooler prog.) • Split memory addressing • Patent Pending.

NOW WITH SuperDrive and SuperSpool

Other products available for IBM PC: 1) ComboPlus™ (clock, serial, printer & max. 256K); 2) 2780/3780 Bisync Emulation Package; 3) Advance Communication Card (Async, Bisnyc, SDLC, HDLC); 4) Expansion Parity Memory (64K-256K now with SuperDrive™); 5) Disk++ (memory, Async & disk host adaptor); 6) Original Memory Combo; 7) Async Communication Card (1 or 2 ports); 8) Wire Wrap Card (13.1" x 4"); 9) Extender Card; 10) 327X Emulation. AST products are now available from your local Computerland stores and selected dealers throughout the U.S.

IBM is the registered trademark of International Business Machines.

AST RESEARCH INC.
2372 Morse Ave.
Irvine, California 92714
Telephone: (714) 540-1333
Dealer inquiries welcome.